

IELTS SPEAKING

Actual Tests With
Suggested Answers

AUGUST - NOVEMBER 2021



Published by

IELTSMaterial.com

This publication is in copyright. All rights are reserved, including resale rights. This e-book is sold subject to the condition that no part of this e-book may also be copied, duplicated, stored, distributed, reproduced or transmitted for any purpose in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, or by any information storage and retrieval system without written permission from the author.

erial.com

Preface

As far as you know, IELTS candidates will have only 11-14 minutes for IELTS Speaking and it comprises of Part 1, Part 2 and Part 3. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary that you invest time in practicing the real IELTS Speaking questions.

Beside Cambridge IELTS Practice Tests series published by Oxford University Press, IELTS Speaking Recent Actual Tests with Suggested Answers aims to develop speaking and test-taking skills along with language proficiency to help you achieve a high IELTS Speaking score. It contains IELTS Speaking questions that were asked and would be asked in IELTS Speaking tests in 2021. The questions are divided into part 1, part 2 and part 3. Each of the questions have answers provided by our certified IELTS trainer along with the vocabulary that is specifically used for that question/topic. When using this e-book, you can be aware of the kinds of questions that you would face in a real exam, and how the answers are framed accordingly. Moreover, these tests are extracted from an authentic IELTS bank source; therefore, you are in all probability to encounter these questions in your real examinations.

The authors are convinced that you will find IELTS Speaking Recent Actual Tests with Suggested Answers extremely helpful on your path to success with the International English Language Testing System.

Don't just trust to luck in your IELTS exam – the key is practice!

IELTSMaterial

<https://ieltsmaterial.com> | admin@ieltsmaterial.com

Table of Contents

Introduction	1
IELTS Speaking – Part 1	2
1. Going out	2
2. Happiness	4
3. Hobbies	6
4. Internet	8
5. Leisure Time	10
6. Pets	12
7. Sport	14
8. Television	16
9. Change	18
10. New Year	20
11. Birthdays	22
12. Childhood	24
13. Clothes	26
14. Computers	28
15. Daily Routines	30
16. Dictionaries	32
17. Evenings	34
18. Family & Friends	36
19. Flowers	38
20. Food	40
21. Plants	42
22. The Countryside	44
23. Photos	46
24. Public transport	48
25. Staying up late	50
26. Celebrities and stars	52
27. Water	54
28. Cooking & Baking	56
29. Colours	58

30.	Tidiness	60
31.	Movies	61
32.	Plans	63
33.	Running	65
34.	Parks	67
35.	Neighbourhood/Local Area	69
36.	Walking	71
37.	Languages	73
38.	Public Holidays	75
39.	Music	77
40.	Age	79
41.	Travel	81
42.	Breaks	83
43.	Pens and Pencils	85
44.	Spending time by yourself	87
45.	Wild Animals	88
46.	Laughter	90
47.	Cakes and Desserts	92
48.	Concentration	94
49.	Beautiful Scenario	96
50.	History	98
51.	Coffee or Tea	100
52.	Sleep	102
53.	Friends	104
54.	Home/Accommodation	106
55.	Study	110
56.	Work	113
57.	Hometown	116
58.	Jeans	119
59.	Concentration	121
60.	Voice	123
61.	Walking	125
62.	Movies	127

63.	Languages	129
64.	Friends	132
65.	Rubbish	135
66.	Perfume	137
67.	Social Network	140
68.	Maths	142
69.	Travelling	145
70.	Borrowing/Lending	147
71.	Reading	150
72.	Smile	152
73.	Plan	155
74.	Visit Relatives	158
75.	Street Market	160
76.	Outdoor Activities	162
77.	Weather	165
78.	Patience	167
79.	Animals	170
80.	Tea or Coffee	173
81.	Sleep	175
82.	Sky	178
83.	Sharing	181
84.	Handwriting	183
85.	Photos/ Pictures	185
86.	Music	187
87.	Teacher	190
88.	Transportation	193
89.	The area where you live in	196
90.	Holiday	198
91.	Numbers	199
92.	Pen or Pencil	201
93.	Sweets	203
94.	Scenery	205
95.	Museum	207

96.	Art	209
97.	Cake	211
98.	Laugh	213
99.	Water Sports	215
100.	Running	216
101.	Science	218
102.	Opinions/Ideas	220
103.	Alone	222
104.	News and Newspapers	224
105.	Fish	226
106.	Insects	228
107.	Discussions	230
108.	Shopping	232
109.	Gifts	234
110.	Meeting new people/ Making friends	236
IELTS Speaking – Part 2 & 3		238
1.	Describe Your First Day At School	238
2.	Describe a Time You Made a Promise to someone	239
3.	Describe an art exhibition that you visited	239
4.	Describe a bag you want to own	239
5.	Describe an experience you had as a member of a team	239
6.	Describe a time when you feel bored	239
7.	Describe a person who you think is very open	239
8.	Describe an energetic person you know	239
9.	Describe an old friend you got in contact with again	239
10.	Describe a line that you remember from a poem or song	239
11.	Describe a tradition in your country	239
12.	Describe a family that you like, but it's not your own	239
13.	Describe a time you saw children behave badly in public	239
14.	Describe an area of science that you are interested in	239
15.	Describe an ambition you have for a long time	239
16.	Describe an event you attended in which you didn't like the music played	239
17.	Describe a clever decision someone made	239

18.	Describe an intelligent person you know	239
19.	Describe a photo that you remember well	239
20.	Describe a time when you received good news	239
21.	Describe an exciting book that you recently read	239
22.	Describe a volunteering experience you have had	239
23.	Describe a programme or an app on your laptop	239
24.	Describe a time when you invited someone for a dinner at home or restaurant	239
25.	Describe a programme or an app that you think is useful	239
26.	Describe a recent goal you set yourself	239
27.	Describe a large company that you are interested in	239
28.	Describe an article you read about healthy living	239
29.	Describe an interesting animal you have seen	239
30.	Describe a (school or company) uniform you have worn	239
31.	Describe an important text message you received	239
32.	Describe a successful small company	239
33.	Describe an ideal house or apartment you would like to live in	239
34.	Describe a job you would not like to do in the future	239
35.	Describe a practical skill you learned	239
36.	Describe a road trip you went on	239
37.	Describe a city you have visited and want to go back to in the future	239
38.	Describe a place you visited that has been affected by pollution	239
39.	Describe a crowded place you have been to	239
40.	Describe a school you went to in your childhood	239
41.	Describe a place where you read and write (not your home)	239
42.	Describe an interesting place you remember well that was full of colours	239
43.	Describe a historical building you have visited	239
44.	Describe a friend who is a good leader	239
45.	Describe the person you spend the most time with	239
46.	Describe a person who taught you something important	239
47.	Describe a friend who is good at his or her job	239
48.	Describe a performance you watched recently	239
49.	Describe something you bought but difficult to use at first	239
50.	Describe a difficult challenge you met	239

51.	Describe an interesting animal you have ever seen	239
52.	Describe a family member who spend the most time with	239
53.	Describe a crowded place you have been to	239
54.	Describe a time when someone apologized to you	239
55.	Describe an important journey that has been delayed	239
56.	Describe a change that can improve your local area	239
57.	Describe an occasion when weather prevented your activity	239
58.	Describe a time when you couldn't use the mobile phone	239
59.	Describe an ideal house or apartment you would like to live in the future	239
60.	Describe a successful small company that you know	239
61.	Describe a place you remember well that full of colour	239
62.	Describe a time you do not tell your friend the truth	239
63.	Describe a leisure activity you do with your family	239
64.	Describe a time you were sleepy but had to stay awake	239
65.	Describe clothes you wear on special occasions	239
66.	Describe a time when you missed an appointment	239
67.	Describe a meal (or dinner) that you especially enjoyed	239
68.	Describe a foreign country or culture you would like to know more about	239
69.	Describe an occasion when you wore your best clothes (or clothing)	239
70.	Describe an educational trip you went on in your school days	239
71.	Describe a talk or speech that you attended	239
72.	Describe something special you brought home from a holiday	239
73.	Describe a sport that you have watched others play and would like to try (or play) yourself.	239
74.	Describe a person (you know) who (you think) has an important job.	239
75.	Describe an occasion when you wanted to (or, tried to) impress others (or another person)	239
76.	Describe a situation when you received some useful advice	239
77.	Describe a bicycle tour that you would like to take	239
78.	Describe a band or singer who you like	239
79.	Describe a small business you would like to start	239
80.	Describe something you would like to stop eating	239
81.	Describe an exhibition that you visited	239

82.	Describe a time when you got lost	239
83.	Describe a time when you took a risk but were successful	239
84.	Describe a noisy place you went to	239
85.	Describe a film that made you think a lot	239
86.	Describe an enjoyable time when you spent time with a lot of people	239
87.	Describe a place (other than your home) where you sometimes go to relax	239
88.	Describe a time when you were surprised to meet someone you know, such as a friend	239
89.	Describe a time when you made a mistake and you learnt from it	239
90.	Describe an elderly person who you find interesting to be with	239
91.	Describe a person you are happy to know	239
92.	Describe an occasion when you wasted your time	239



Introduction

The Speaking test comprises of 3 parts and is conducted by an examiner for 11-14 minutes. This test is similar to an interview and thus the emotions attached to the test is also similar – jitters, scary, anxiety. This is where IELTS Speaking e-book comes in.

This e-book helps you to know the unfamiliar.

Part – 1

Most of the part one questions are personal questions that the examiner will ask you to bring you into a comfort zone. These questions are sorted in terms of different topics.

Part – 2 & 3

Part – 2 consists of a cue card for which you will be given 1 minute to prepare and 2 minutes to talk. The questions in the cue card are addressed and a sample answer is given for the cue-card. Following the cue-card are part 3 questions. Part 3 of the speaking e-book consists of questions related to the cue card you will receive. And so, these questions are found with sample answers below the related cue-cards.

Vocabulary

Lexical resources is a factor of assessment during the speaking tests. So, below each of these topics, you will find a vocabulary section that contains words related to that particular topic along with examples.

Happy practising!



IELTS Speaking – Part 1

1. Going out

Questions

- 1 Do you often go out in the evenings?
- 2 What do you like to do when you go out?
- 3 Do you prefer going out on your own with friends?
- 4 How often do you go out in a week?
- 5 Where do most young people like to go out in your country?

Sample Answers

1 Do you often go out in the evenings?

Since I work, I'm not free to go out in the evenings. But I make sure to take a short break in the evening and stroll in the office corridors with my colleagues.

2 What do you like to do when you go out?

I mostly like to watch movies with my friends and hang out with them in coffee shops. I also like to engage myself in various activities like paintball, blowing, and so on. Often when I am alone, I like to go to nearby parks and enjoy playing with kids.

3 Do you prefer going out on your own with friends?

I usually prefer to go out with friends. I like being in the company of my friends. We do various activities together and gain new experiences as a group. However, there are certain activities like going to painting workshops, where I normally go alone since none of my friends are interested in painting.

4 How often do you go out in a week?

During weekdays, I don't go out often. But when I do, it is usually with my office colleagues or my family members, particularly when there is a special occasion in the family, like birthdays or anniversaries.

5 Where do most young people like to go out in your country?



Most young people like to go to the cinema to watch new movies or hang out with each other in coffee shops. They also enjoy participating in adventurous games such as bungee jumping, wall climbing, ice skating, etc.

Vocabulary

Stroll (noun) - a short leisurely walk.

Eg: I was feeling tired, so I took a stroll around the building.

Workshops (noun) - a meeting at which a group of people engage in intensive discussion and activity on a particular subject or project.

Eg: Painting workshop will be held on 27th July.

Occasion (noun) - a particular event, or the time at which it takes place.

Eg: This is a happy occasion.

Engage (verb) - participate or become involved in.

Eg: "Please engage yourself in some activity".

Hang out (verb) - to spend a lot of time in a place or with someone.

Eg: I don't hang out with Erica anymore.





2. Happiness

Questions

- 1 Are you a happy person?
- 2 What usually makes you happy?
- 3 Does the weather ever affect how you feel?
- 4 What makes you feel unhappy?
- 5 Do you think people in your country are genuinely happy people?

Sample Answers

1 Are you a happy person?

Yes. I am a happy-go-lucky person. I don't like to stress myself with uncomfortable thoughts, and I also like to maintain a positive attitude towards everything in my life. I also encourage others to adopt the same practice

2 What usually makes you happy?

Little details bring me joy. For example sleeping a few minutes longer, enjoying time with friends and family, going on adventurous journeys, listening to music, and so on. Helping people also makes me happy.

3 Does the weather ever affect how you feel?

Well, not really. Rain, on the other hand, manages to lift my mood. The slow drumming of rain helps me relax. Moreover, strolling in the rain brings happiness to me.

4 What makes you feel unhappy?

I think I am an empathic person. Seeing people in pain makes me feel unhappy. I have a tendency to internalize other people's suffering, particularly that of people I care about. Moreover, not getting adequate sleep tends to make me feel unhappy.

5 Do you think people in your country are genuinely happy people?

Indians are generally happy, as people often smile. People in India are very kind and thoughtful, and they try to create a happy and friendly atmosphere around them. Moreover,



people easily burst into guffaws at the slightest things. People in my country are truly happy people.

Vocabulary

Adequate (adj) - satisfactory or acceptable in quality or quantity.

Eg: This flat is perfectly adequate for my needs.

Adopt (verb) - choose to take up, follow, or use.

Eg: Meera has adopted a positive attitude towards life after her injury.

Drumming noun) - a continuous rhythmic noise.

Eg: The mosquitos are drumming around me.

Empathetic (adj) - showing empathy for others, and recognizing their feelings.

Eg: Harry Potter is an empathetic character.

Guffaw (noun) - a loud and hearty laugh.

Eg: Sneha bursted into a loud guffaw and she heard the joke.





3. Hobbies

Questions

- 1 Do you have a hobby?
- 2 What equipment do you need for it?
- 3 Do you think hobbies should be shared with people?
- 4 Did you have a hobby as a child?
- 5 What hobbies are popular in your country?
- 6 Why do you think people have hobbies?

Sample Answers

1 Do you have a hobby?

Yes, I do. I have many hobbies. My favourite hobby is photography, and I developed an interest in photography by a sheer accident during my parent's anniversary. I had no idea about the correct angles, flash or viewfinder, and was asked to take photos of the guests and decorations at the party. I enjoyed it so much that I added it to my hobby list.

2 What equipment do you need for it?

There are many advanced attachments available in the market for a camera, but few are necessary to purchase. Obviously, you have to start by buying a camera and a good lens. While there are many lenses available today that can improve your photography experience, I believe that a moderately priced lens can achieve the same results.

3 Do you think hobbies should be shared with people?

Well, I think it is not necessary to have similar interests. However, if you already have someone who enjoys your hobby, the practice becomes more interesting. At the same time, no one should be compelled to partake in the same hobby as someone else.

4 Did you have a hobby as a child?

Yes, I have had a few hobbies in my childhood which I no longer continue. In my teens, I used to collect stickers and practised a lot of science experiments. I still have some stickers and experiment models, but I began singing later. I became more enthusiastic about it and invested more time in it.



5 What hobbies are popular in your country?

Hobby is something that is entirely up to the person. However, I've noticed that teenagers are spending more time on social media sites in recent years. However, I see certain people who are devoted to their interests and participate in them as well. Some people enjoy drawing, art, music, reading, swimming and so on.

6 Why do you think people have hobbies?

Hobbies, in my opinion, provide people with a way to unwind. People nowadays live such a hectic lifestyle that it is important that they take some time to unwind from their daily routine and engage in relaxing and enjoyable activities.

Vocabulary

Sheer (adj) - nothing other than.

Eg: She smiled with sheer delight.

Enthusiastic (adj) - having or showing intense and eager enjoyment, interest, or approval.

Eg: He is a very enthusiastic person.

Devoted (adj) - very loving or loyal.

Eg: He is devoted to his work.

Hectic (adj) - full of incessant or frantic activity.

Eg: It was a hectic day.

Unwind (verb) - relax after a period of work or tension.

Eg: This resort is a fantastic place to unwind.



4. Internet

Questions

- 1 How often do you go online?
- 2 What do you use the internet for?
- 3 How do you get online?
- 4 Do you have your own computer?
- 5 What's your favourite website?
- 6 Do you think children should be allowed unsupervised access to the internet?

Sample Answers

1 How often do you go online?

When I am occupied with some work, I use the internet at least 7 to 8 hours a day. But when I am free and not doing anything, I frequently use the internet to check my emails, listen to music, chat with friends, check social media, and read news articles.

2 What do you use the internet for?

I use the internet to stay in touch with people I care about. I also use the internet to update myself on various news issues and trends, scan social media, do my work, check emails, watch movies and series, and do some online shopping.

3 How do you get online?

I have wi-fi installed in my home. So, everybody in my family uses it to access the internet. Moreover, I travel often. I rely on my internet dongle or smartphone for internet connection in such situations.

4 Do you have your own computer?

No, I don't own a computer, but I do own a laptop. I do all of my work on the laptop, including writing notes, paying bills, reading papers, and playing games. I find that a laptop is more convenient and easier to use than a computer and that it does the same tasks.

5 What's your favourite website?



Google.com is my favourite website because it is the largest and most famous internet search engine, providing information about everything in just a fraction of a second. Another reason I like google is that it helps me get a plethora of information on the topics which interest me.

6 Do you think children should be allowed unsupervised access to the internet?

No, I think children should be allowed to access the internet only under an adult's supervision because there is dangerous content online. Besides, one can never rely on the internet as there are so many wicked people around who take undue advantage of children.

Vocabulary

Trend (noun) - a general direction in which something is developing or changing.

Eg: I can observe a new trend here.

Convenient (adj) - fitting in well with a person's needs, activities, and plans.

Eg: It's convenient to live close to the market.

Plethora (noun) - a large or excessive amount of something.

Eg: There is a plethora of information available on the internet.

Supervision (noun) - the action of supervising someone or something.

Eg: The baby needs constant supervision.

Wicked (adj) - evil or morally wrong.

Eg: You are a wicked person.



5. Leisure Time

Questions

- 1 What's your favourite leisure activity?
- 2 What did you enjoy doing in your free time as a child?
- 3 Do you prefer to spend your free time with other people or alone?
- 4 What's a common leisure activity in your country?
- 5 Do most people in your country get two days off a week?
- 6 Do you think leisure time is important?

Sample Answers

1 What's your favourite leisure activity?

It actually depends on how much free time I have. I would normally spend time reading a light novel or watch movies on television. If I have more free time, I catch up with my friends and ask about their well-being.

2 What did you enjoy doing in your free time as a child?

I used to enjoy playing table tennis as a kid, and I even took part in school tournaments. There were also other things that I loved doing in my spare time, such as playing basketball, skipping, swimming, and bicycle riding.

3 Do you prefer to spend your free time with other people or alone?

Earlier, I spent my spare time with friends, but now that I am growing old, I like to spend my leisure time alone at home. I enjoy being on my own and use this opportunity to read books.

4 What's a common leisure activity in your country?

Well, In my country, some popular leisure activities include going out to coffee shops with friends and family, and eating lunch or dinner at restaurants. Few people love going to the cinemas to see new releases or watch comedy shows.



5 Do most people in your country get two days off a week?

No, not everyone is given two days off a week. Most businesses allow Sundays off. However, whatever time they get, they choose to spend their free time with their families and friends.

6 Do you think leisure time is important?

Yes, I believe that leisure time helps you to relax and de-stress your mind and body. Additionally, engaging in leisure activity helps you to withdraw from the outside world and prepares you to deal with challenging circumstances in a less stressful manner.

Vocabulary

Leisure (noun) - use of free time for enjoyment.

Eg: Maria prefers to spend all her leisure time dancing.

Opportunity (noun) - a time or set of circumstances that makes it possible to do something.

Eg: I took the opportunity to visit the NGO.

Withdraw (verb) - remove or take away (something) from a particular place or position.

Eg: I had to withdraw from the competition.

Circumstances (noun) - a fact or condition connected with or relevant to an event or action.

Eg: Due to unavoidable circumstances, he couldn't attend the meeting.

Challenging (adj) - testing one's abilities; demanding.

Eg: Current scenario is quite challenging.



6. Pets

Questions

- 1 Do you have a pet?
- 2 Do you like animals?
- 3 What's your favourite animal?
- 4 What is a popular pet to have in your country?
- 5 Did you have a pet as a child?
- 6 Why do people have pets?

Sample Answers

1 Do you have a pet?

Yes, when I was a child, my aunt got me a puppy. My aunt got me one when he was really young. He didn't recognise us at first and kept hiding under the bed or sofa. However, as he grew older, he began to recognise our faces and became more comfortable and friendly in our surroundings. Now, my pet and I share a very special bond.

2 Do you like animals?

Yes, I am a huge animal lover. Animals have always had a special place in my heart, and I've animals like dogs, fishes, and cats since I was a child.

3 What's your favourite animal?

I would say dolphins. They've intrigued me since I first saw them in a dolphin show when I was a child. They are such fun-loving creatures, and they are intelligent and friendly too.

4 What is a popular pet to have in your country?

The majority of people own cats and dogs as pets in their homes. Like any other country, cats and dogs are favoured over all other animals because they are gentle, intelligent, and faithful to their owners. Also, they serve as stress relievers in the family.

5 Did you have a pet as a child?



Yes, a dog. In fact, I still have it. As I said before, my aunt gave it to me when I was 15 years old. My parents did not encourage me to have a pet before that, so I didn't have any. Having a pet, they reasoned, is a significant responsibility for an infant.

6 Why do people have pets?

I believe there are many reasons, but the most important is finding a comfortable friend in the form of a pet. Pets help owners cope with stress and sadness by bringing joy to their lives. It is one of the reasons why they are regarded as family members.

Vocabulary

Recognise (verb) identify (someone or something) from having encountered them before; know again.

Eg: You look so different today. I'm not able to recognise you.

Intrigued (verb) - arouse the curiosity or interest of; fascinate.

Eg: I am intrigued by this movie.

Significant (adj) - sufficiently great or important to be worthy of attention; noteworthy.

Eg: This is a significant change.

Cope (verb) - deal effectively with something difficult.

Eg: He is unable to cope up with this news.

Infant (noun) - a very young child or baby

Eg: The young man was carrying an infant in his arms.



7. Sport

Questions

- 1 Do you like sports?
- 2 What's your favourite sport?
- 3 Do you often watch sports on TV?
- 4 Did you play sports as a child?
- 5 What is the most popular sport in your country?
- 6 How do most people in your country keep fit?

Sample Answers

1 Do you like sports?

Absolutely yes. There are many sports that I find fascinating and enjoyable. This is because it contributes to good health and keeps us healthy and active. They also encourage us to compete in a safe and healthy manner.

2 What's your favourite sport?

My favourite sport is basketball, and it is a fun game to watch and play. This sport appeals to me because it encourages friendly competition, assists in the development of high stamina, and shows us the value of teamwork.

3 Do you often watch sports on TV?

No, unfortunately not. To be honest, I love watching live sports like basketball and badminton because it makes me feel like I'm a part of the game. On the other hand, the number of commercials seen in between the games on television outweighs the amount of action and enjoyment.

4 Did you play sports as a child?

Yes, I used to play a lot of sports when I was younger. I used to participate in both indoor and outdoor activities. We were a group of seven kids who used to love playing games like cycling, table tennis, badminton, and hide and seek together. I was even interested in swimming lessons because I was fond of swimming in those days.

5 What is the most popular sport in your country?



Though there are so many popular games in my country, I believe that it's only cricket that is really famous. That's simply because it is a very simple sport. All you need is a bat and a ball. Of course, a team of players is required to play the game, but two individuals can also enjoy a short game of cricket.

6 How do most people in your country keep fit?

Well, people in my country do yoga, go to the gym or go for a walk to keep themselves fit. A large number of people can be seen jogging on the side of the road early in the morning. Some people like to stay healthy by cycling or playing a sport.

Vocabulary

Fascinating (adj) - extremely interesting.

Eg: That's a fascinating book.

Stamina (noun) - the ability to sustain prolonged physical or mental effort.

Eg: He has a lot of stamina.

Outweigh (verb) - be heavier, greater, or more significant than.

Eg: The scheme's advantage outweighs the disadvantage.

Fond (adj) - having an affection or liking for.

Eg: I am very fond of my dog.

Commercials (noun) - a television or radio advertisement.

Eg: This TV commercial is very interesting.



8. Television

Questions

- 1 Do you often watch TV?
- 2 What sorts of things do you watch on TV?
- 3 Do you ever watch foreign programs or films?
- 4 What did you watch on TV when you were a child?
- 5 Do you think children should watch TV?

Sample Answers

1 Do you often watch TV?

Television has played an important role in my life. However, my interests in life have changed over time, and I no longer have much time to watch television. In addition, my priorities have changed in life. Now I prefer reading a book over watching television.

2 What sorts of things do you watch on TV?

I like watching documentaries, detective stories, and reality shows on television. My favourite is BBC's Sherlock Holmes, which is by far their most intriguing mystery show. I also like watching comedy shows like The Marvellous Mrs. Maisel.

3 Do you ever watch foreign programs or films?

Yes, I do. I mostly watch foreign English series and movies. There are many series and movies I have watched to date. For example, I have seen Friends, How I Met Your Mother, Avengers, Notebook, No Strings Attached, The Marvellous Mrs. Maisel, and many more.

4 What did you watch on TV when you were a child?

As a child, I recall watching cartoons. Cartoons like Looney Toons, Tom and Jerry, Pokemon, and Powerpuff Girls were among my favourites. As I grew older, my interest shifted towards music, reality, and comedy shows. I still enjoy watching comedy shows.

5 Do you think children should watch TV?



Yes, I believe television has a lot to offer kids. However, I suggest that a child lock can be implemented on a few television networks so that parents can ensure that their children are not exposed to inappropriate content. Furthermore, to prevent any detrimental impact on children's eyes and general growth, parents should set a screen time limit for their children.

Vocabulary

Intriguing (adj) - arousing one's curiosity or interest; fascinating.

Eg: This book was intriguing.

Implemented (verb) - put (a decision, plan, agreement, etc.) into effect.

Eg: The plan was not implemented correctly.

Exposed (adj) - not covered or hidden; visible.

Eg: "You will be exposed to heat, if you don't carry an umbrella".

Inappropriate (adj) - not suitable or proper in the circumstances.

Eg: "That was an inappropriate behaviour."

Detrimental (adj) - tending to cause harm.

Eg: Smoking is detrimental to your health.

IELTSMaterial.com



9. Change

Questions

- 1 Do you like the changes? Why?
- 2 What do you plan to change next year?
- 3 Have you changed a lot since your childhood?
- 4 Are there any positive changes in your country these days?

Sample Answers

1 Do you like the changes? Why?

Honestly, I'm not too fond of changes. But I am not averse to them. There are certain shifts in life that happen on their own and of which you have no control. However, I like small changes in my life that do not significantly impact my life.

2 What do you plan to change next year?

I don't have anything specific in mind, but I want to renovate my room by the end of this year. Moreover, I am also planning to change my wardrobe.

3 Have you changed a lot since your childhood?

Yes, I have. I used to be very naughty and mischievous as a child, and as a result, I was often scolded by my parents. But now, I'm more conscious of my decisions and am more considerate of others.

4 Are there any positive changes in your country these days?

Yes, there are a lot of positive changes taking place in India. There was a new campaign to combat corruption and the movement of black money. A growing number of multinational corporations are expressing interest in investing in the Indian market. Furthermore, a slow optimistic shift in people's minds from orthodox to openness has begun.



Vocabulary

Averse (adj) - having a strong dislike of or opposition to something.

Eg: "I am averse to such noisy surroundings."

Mischievous (adj) - causing or showing a fondness for causing trouble in a playful way.

Eg: My niece is very mischievous.

Combat (verb) - action to reduce or prevent (something bad or undesirable).

Eg: Police are planning to take strict measures to combat crime.

Orthodox (adj) - following or conforming to the traditional or generally accepted rules or beliefs of a religion, philosophy, or practice.

Eg: Tom is an orthodox person

Optimistic (adj) - hopeful and confident about the future.

Eg: Jiya is optimistic about her future.





10. New Year

Questions

- 1 How do you celebrate New Year?
- 2 How did you celebrate the last new year?
- 3 What was your best New Year's party so far?
- 4 Do you have any ceremonies to celebrate the New Year in your country?
- 5 How do most people celebrate New Year in your country?

Sample Answers

1 How do you celebrate New Year?

Well, nothing extraordinary. I enjoy spending time with my family and friends, eating delectable meals, singing karaoke, watching fireworks shows at midnight. New Year holidays are special because the whole family is gathered at one place to celebrate.

2 How did you celebrate the last new year?

Well, last year's new year celebration is still etched in my mind. Each new year, my family has an unspoken ritual of gathering in one location to celebrate the holidays. However, due to the many limitations imposed by the pandemic, many of them were unable to come together last year.

3 What was your best New Year's party so far?

My best new year's party so far was the one we celebrated when I got my first job. I still remember every single activity that we did. My family was most happy for me, and we celebrated it by inviting all our friends and neighbours. It was fabulous. Everybody enjoyed themselves to their fullest.

4 Do you have any ceremonies to celebrate the New Year in your country?

No, we don't have any ceremonies to celebrate New year in my country. It is generally regarded as an occasion to come together, celebrate and spend time together. But there is one thing in common with other countries. It is the New Year's countdown that takes place every year.



5 How do most people celebrate New Year in your country?

Well, most people in my country like to spend their new year holidays with their families. It is the only time they get to be around their entire family because otherwise, everyone is working or living in different cities. New Year becomes a perfect excuse to be together.

Vocabulary

Extraordinary (noun) - very unusual or remarkable.

Eg: Sophia is an extraordinary woman.

Delectable (adj) - delicious

Eg: Martha makes delectable handmade cakes.

Etched (adj) - made by or subjected to etching.

Eg: It is etched on my mind.

Imposed (verb) -force (an unwelcome decision or ruling) on someone.

Eg: New tax slab is imposed on high income earners.

Gathered (verb) - come together; assemble or accumulate.

Eg: Whole class was requested to gather in the assembly hall.



11. Birthdays

Questions

- 1 Do you enjoy your birthdays?
- 2 Do you usually celebrate your birthday?
- 3 What did you do on your last birthday?
- 4 Can you remember a birthday you enjoyed as a child?
- 5 Do most people celebrate their birthdays with a party in your country?
- 6 Which birthdays are considered important in your country?

Sample Answers

1 Do you enjoy your birthdays?

Yes, I do. Though I've crossed my twenties, birthday celebrations are a lot of fun. You meet your near and dear ones, play games, cut cakes, and sing birthday songs. Birthdays bring a lot of happiness.

2 Do you usually celebrate your birthday?

Yes, I do. I am not a party person, but I ensure that I invite all my loved ones on my birthday. I also enjoy celebrating my birthday by visiting new places.

3 What did you do on your last birthday?

My last birthday was a great one. I went to Bali with my family and had lots of fun there. We went to the local beaches and saw the sunset on the beach. It was a magical experience.

4 Can you remember a birthday you enjoyed as a child?

My 15th birthday is still fresh in my mind. It started without a plan. We just wanted to have a private gathering, but my friends had already planned for something big. I was surprised by the rooftop birthday party celebrations. Also, I was pleased to meet so many guests.

5 Do most people celebrate their birthdays with a party in your country?



Yes, most people throw a party for their closest friends and family because it is more enjoyable. However, I would like to mention that it would be better to celebrate birthdays during the day rather than at night.

6 Which birthdays are considered important in your country?

Honestly, every stage in a person's life is considered important in my country. However, if I had to choose, it would be 19 because it is a watershed moment in one's life, signalling maturity and parting away from teenage life.

Vocabulary

Watershed (noun) - A turning point, or historic moment.

Eg: This is one of those watershed moments.

Magical (adj) - beautiful or delightful in a way that seems removed from everyday life.

Eg: Her teacher's words had a magical effect on him.

Gathering (noun) - an assembly or meeting, especially one held for a specific purpose.

Eg: The social gathering was the reason for the traffic jam.

Ensure (verb) - make certain that something will happen.

Eg: The secretary must ensure that records are kept safe.

Parting (noun) - a place or point where separation occurs.

Eg: Aliza remained silent until her final parting.



12. Childhood

Questions

- 1 Did you enjoy your childhood?
- 2 What is your first memory of your childhood?
- 3 Did you have a lot of friends when you were a child?
- 4 What did you enjoy doing as a child?
- 5 Do you think it is better for children to grow up in the city or in the countryside?

Sample Answers

1 Did you enjoy your childhood?

Yes, Indeed. I had a good time growing up and lots of fun-filled experiences. For example, I had a lot of fun playing games, and going on trips with my friends. We also joked and fought at times.

2 What is your first memory of your childhood?

The first recollection I have is about my grandfather. I was really small, probably three or four years old. He was tall. So I leaned on one of his legs, reached up with my arms, and clung to his leg. I'd then laugh heartily. It was my favourite game.

3 Did you have a lot of friends when you were a child?

I had many friends during my childhood, but only a handful of them were close. I recall meeting my first best friend, Paul when I was 10 years old, and we remained close friends until he shifted house when I was 14 years old.

4 What did you enjoy doing as a child?

I enjoyed hanging out with my brother and friends. We would have lots of fun together, learn and discover new things in our locality. We also used to play musical chairs in my friend's verandah each alternative day. I also enjoyed the bedtime stories narrated by my mother.

5 Do you think it is better for children to grow up in the city or in the countryside?

I think the countryside and city life have their charms. Living in the countryside has its perks such as a nice and healthy atmosphere. In my opinion, the health benefits of living in the countryside far outweighs the range of opportunities available in cities.



Vocabulary

Recollect (verb) - To remember something

Eg: I've been trying to recollect what happened in class, last friday.

Clung (verb) - hold on tightly too.

Eg: The baby clung to her mother's arm like a monkey.

Perks (noun) - an additional benefit award for something

Eg: One of the perks of our job is that we get to travel to different countries every alternate year.

Heartily (adverb) - In a hearty manner

Eg: He laughed heartily.

Discover (verb) - find unexpectedly or during a search.

Eg: I am trying to discover new ways to answer this question.





13. Clothes

Questions

- 1 Are clothes important to you?
- 2 What kind of clothes do you usually wear?
- 3 Do you ever wear the traditional clothes of your country?
- 4 Where do you usually buy your clothes?
- 5 Have you ever worn a uniform?
- 6 Do most people in your country follow fashion?

Sample Answers

1 Are clothes important to you?

Clothes are, without a doubt, necessary for me. I believe clothes help me express my personality. At the same time, I don't follow any particular fashion or pattern. I prefer to wear clothes that compliment my personality and are comfortable and easy to carry.

2 What kind of clothes do you usually wear?

I typically wear casual clothes like pyjamas, T-shirts, shirts because they are most comfortable for me. Even when I have to go out, I prefer to wear casual outfits like jeans and a t-shirt. Though I like wearing comfortable clothing, I like to dress up formally if I have to attend an event or a function.

3 Do you ever wear the traditional clothes of your country?

Yes, I do. Living in a country with varied cultures and customs, I have worn several traditional clothes. For example, sari. Sari is a traditional Indian attire worn by women in different ways throughout the country. Since I am a Punjabi, wearing a sari or suit to a family gathering is very common. Moreover, in my country, some women prefer to wear saris regularly.

4 Where do you usually buy your clothes?

I always prefer to purchase clothes from different shops. It does matter if I buy it from the mall, online, or a local vendor. The quality and the price of the clothes is more important to me. Some people don't prefer to buy clothes online, but I enjoy it because I always read the reviews before making a purchase.



5 Have you ever worn a uniform?

Yes, I have in my school days. In India, students are required to wear uniforms. Moreover, some companies in India also follow a strict dress code policy. Uniform, in my opinion, helps to reinforce the sense of belongingness and solidarity.

6 Do most people in your country follow fashion?

I don't think everybody follows fashion. Teenagers and adults in their 20s are more interested in fashion. Many people, especially adults, prefer to dress comfortably. The majority of people like to choose comfort over fashion. Whereas, people like to dress up when they have to attend a function or party.

Vocabulary

Vendor (noun) - A person who offers something to sell.

Eg: The local vendors are forbidden to sell any item during the lockdown.

Solidarity (noun) - a unity that occurs between people with similar interests.

Eg: Many people, who are exploited by the factory owners voiced their solidarity with the worker union.

Policy (noun) - a course or principle of action adopted or proposed by an organization or individual.

Eg: The company has a dress code policy.

Reinforce (verb) - To strengthen or increase by fresh additions.

Eg: Extra police will be deployed in the area to reinforce the law.

Attire (noun) - Clothes, especially fine and formal ones.

Eg: I am sure it would be an appropriate attire for the event.



14. Computers

Questions

- 1 Do you often use a computer?
- 2 How do you usually get online?
- 3 Do you prefer desktops or laptops?
- 4 What do you use your computer for?
- 5 Do you think it's important to learn how to use a computer?

Sample Answers

1 Do you often use a computer?

Yes, I use a computer regularly. I have a laptop that I use for my work. I also use it to keep in touch with my distant friends and family. I also use it to do research on various subjects and amplify my knowledge. Moreover, I often use it to entertain myself by watching movies and playing games.

2 How do you usually get online?

I have wi-fi installed in my home. So, everybody in my family uses it to access the internet. Whenever I travel, I rely on my internet dongle or smartphone for internet connection.

3 Do you prefer desktops or laptops?

I would prefer a laptop over desktops. They are easy to carry, easy to step up. As a student, I need to be able to carry my laptop everywhere I travel. On the other hand, desktops require you to sit in one place and are not portable.

4 What do you use a computer for?

I use it to study and do my research for assignments, check my emails, check social media updates, and sometimes use it to watch movies and games. Apart from that, I also use it for online shopping.

5 Do you think it's important to learn how to use a computer?



Yes, it is necessary. We are heading towards the digital era, and everything is going online. Moreover, there is a plethora of information available online to enhance one's expertise in any area. Some jobs such as paying bills, researching, shopping, etc., are done online.

Vocabulary

Amplify (verb) - Increase the volume of something.

Eg: This device amplifies the sound

Era (noun) - A long period of time.

Eg: PM Kennedy's death marked the end of the era.

Plethora (noun) - A large excessive amount of something.

Eg: I have a plethora of clothes, so I will donate some.

Portable (adj) - able to be easily carried or moved, especially because being of a lighter and smaller version than usual.

Eg: I am planning to buy a portable television.

Rely (verb) - depend on with full trust or confidence.

Eg: You can rely completely on other people.





15. Daily Routines

Questions

- 1 When do you usually get up in the morning?
- 2 Do you usually have the same routine everyday?
- 3 What's your daily routine?
- 4 Do you ever change your routine?
- 5 Is your routine the same today's as it was when you were a child?
- 6 Do you think it's important to have a daily routine?

Sample Answers

1 When do you usually get up in the morning?

Mostly, I get up around 7 a.m. - a little earlier in summer, a little later in the winter. Getting up early in the morning helps me feel fresh and energetic and helps to plan my day in a systematic manner.

2 Do you usually have the same routine every day?

Yes, except Sunday. I usually get up early in the morning, but on Sundays, I wake up late and prefer to start my day with a cup of coffee. Somehow, I like lying in my bed during the weekend.

3 What is your daily routine?

I get up early, drink a cup of coffee, and do some yoga at home before 8 a.m. After that, I take a shower, eat breakfast and get ready for work. I leave for work at 9 a.m. to be at the office by 9.30 a.m., as it takes me 30 minutes to get there.

4 Do you ever change your routine?

Unless there are unavoidable circumstances, I like to stick to my everyday routine. I believe it is critical to do so because human beings have a biological clock that operates on a set schedule.

5 Is your routine the same today as it was when you were a child?



Well, there is a lot of difference. When I was younger and focused solely on my studies, I had plenty of free time to engage in various things such as playing basketball, watching movies, and listening to music. Now my schedule has been more rigid, which is the polar opposite to my childhood days. Since I started working, I spend most of my time at work or organising my home, and I hardly have any free time.

6 Do you think it's important to have a daily routine?

Yes. A proper routine will assist you in organizing your tasks more efficiently. People who do not have a daily routine schedule usually do things in a disorganized manner which could limit productivity.

Vocabulary

Unavoidable - (adj) not able to be avoided, prevented, or ignored; inevitable.

Eg: Some mistakes are unavoidable.

Solely - (adverb) not involving anyone or anything else; only.

Eg: We depend solely upon volunteers

Polar - (noun) relating to the North or South Pole.

Eg: Velvet can be thought of as Rose's polar opposite.

Productivity - (noun) the state or quality of being productive.

Eg: We need to enhance our productivity.

Rigid - (adj) unable to bend or be forced out of shape; not flexible.

Eg: Riya's face became rigid with distress.



16. Dictionaries

Questions

- 1 Do you often use a dictionary?
- 2 What do you use dictionaries for?
- 3 What kinds of dictionaries do you think are most useful?
- 4 Do you think dictionaries are useful for learning a language?
- 5 What kind of information can you find in a dictionary?

Sample Answers

1 Do you often use a dictionary?

Yes, I often use a dictionary as part of my English language learning and determine the meaning of certain unfamiliar words.

2 What do you use dictionaries for?

Well, I usually refer to a dictionary to determine the meaning of unfamiliar words which I come across when reading a book/newspaper or a movie. Besides that, I use a dictionary to learn the meanings of certain English words in my spare time. Moreover, I look up the dictionary whenever I need to find a synonym or antonym for a phrase.

3 What kinds of dictionaries do you think are most useful?

Well, I believe it depends on the individual's personal preference. As for me, I find those dictionaries which, along with the detailed meaning, also provides example scenarios as to how to use them. Moreover, I also find those dictionaries, which provide synonyms and antonyms list for the words, to be helpful.

4 Do you think dictionaries are useful for learning a language?

Yes, I believe dictionaries are very helpful for learning a new language, and there is no other simpler or easier way to explain the meaning of words. It helps to understand the meaning of the words and provides a list of synonyms that can be used as a substitute to that word, which greatly enhances our command of the language.



5 What kind of information can you find in a dictionary?

Dictionaries provide a wide range of information. But the main information is the meaning of the word and its history. It also provides information on how to use the word and its list of synonyms and antonyms. Moreover, it also includes information on how to pronounce a particular word.

Vocabulary

Determine - (verb) cause (something) to occur in a particular way or to have a particular nature.

Eg: I tried to determine the reasons for his actions.

Scenarios - (noun) a postulated sequence or development of events.

Eg: "You need to write test cases for the worst case scenarios as well"

Substitute - (noun) a person or thing acting or serving in place of another.

Eg: Powder milk can be used as a substitute for dairy milk.

Spare - (adj) additional to what is required for ordinary use.

Eg: In her spare time she likes to cook.

Preference - (noun) a greater liking for one alternative over another or others.

Eg: It's a matter of personal preference.



17. Evenings

Questions

- 1 What do you often do in the evenings?
- 2 Do you do the same thing every evening?
- 3 Do you prefer to spend your evenings with friends or family?
- 4 Do you ever work or study in the evenings?
- 5 What is a popular activity for young people in your country in the evenings?
- 6 Do you do the same thing in the evenings as you did when you were a child?

Sample Answers

1 What do you often do in the evenings?

I mostly like to listen to music or read a novel by my favourite author in the evening. It just helps me soothe my mind and take me away from the stress.

2 Do you do the same thing every evening?

I don't always follow the same schedule, but I like listening to my favourite tune unless I have some pending work. However, if I have free time in the evening, I enjoy spending it with my friends over evening tea and snacks.

3 Do you prefer to spend your evenings with friends or family?

I enjoy spending time with my friends and family. So, if I am not working in the evenings, I usually spend time with my family. For that matter, I also like to spend some time with my friends when they are available.

4 Do you ever work or study in the evenings?

Mostly I try to take a break in the evenings as it allows me to clear my mind and concentrate on my job, allowing me to be more productive. If I have a priority task at hand, I strive to complete it first before taking a break.

5 What is a popular activity for young people in your country in the evenings?



Well, people in my country, both young and older, enjoy going for walks in the park and performing some outdoor activities. During the weekends, families always go to the theatre.

6 Do you do the same thing in the evenings as you did when you were a child?

Absolutely no. There is a huge difference. Since I am working now and mostly occupied with work, I don't get enough time to do fun activities. When I was young, I always used to engage in activities like playing a game with my friends and was less stressed than I am now.

Vocabulary

Soothe - (verb) gently calm (a person or their feelings)

Eg: Rain helps to soothe my mind.

Pending - (adj) awaiting decision or settlement.

Eg: Ten assignments are still pending.

Concentrate - (verb) focus all one's attention on a particular object or activity.

Eg: She couldn't concentrate on her studies.

Occupied - (adj) busy and active.

Eg: I am currently occupied with some other activities.

Strive - (verb) make great efforts to achieve or obtain something.

Eg: I will strive to overcome the problems.



18. Family & Friends

Questions

- 1 Do you spend much time with your family?
- 2 Who are you closest to in your family?
- 3 Do you prefer spending time with your family or friends?
- 4 Who is your best friend?
- 5 Are you still friends with people from your childhood?
- 6 Is family important in your country?

Sample Answers

1 Do you spend much time with your family?

Yes, I do. Though everyone is busy, my family and I have made it a point to have at least one meal together. It allows us to communicate with one another and share our experiences.

2 Who are you closest to in your family?

Well, I am close to every member of my family. However, If I have to choose one, it'll be my mother. I can share my personal secrets and thoughts without any fear. Moreover, I have a close relationship with my brother, who considers me his best friend.

3 Do you prefer spending time with your family or friends?

To be honest, I love spending time with my family and my friends. I get along with all of them. We have a close relationship that has brought us together as a happy family. Since I am now living in a different city from my family, I spend much of my time with my friends.

4 Who is your best friend?

Rita Oberoi has been my best friend since my school days. She has always been there for me anytime I needed help. Now that she works in a corporate, we get together on weekends to gossip about our daily lives.

5 Are you still friends with people from your childhood?

I have had many amazing friends during my childhood. I can recall many such friends who are still close to me, despite having relocated to many different places around the world. We



don't speak to each other as much as we used to, but when we do, we make it a point to discuss anything like we used to.

6 Is family important in your country?

Well, in my country, family comes first. People in India recognise and respect maintaining a healthy bond between family members. And, I am proud of such deep bonds.

Vocabulary

Experiences - (noun) practical contact with and observation of facts or events.

Eg: It was a delightful experience.

Gossip - (noun) casual or unconstrained conversation or reports about other people, typically involving details that are not confirmed as being true.

Eg: He likes to gossip about his co-workers.

Recognise - (verb) identify (someone or something) from having encountered them before; know again.

Eg: "What a pity, she did not recognise you!"

Bond - (noun) A condition of being held together

Eg: My mother and I share a very special bond.

Relocated - (verb) move to a new place and establish one's home or business there.

Eg: The office building has been relocated to Gurgaon.



19. Flowers

Questions

- 1 Do you like flowers?
- 2 What's your favorite flower?
- 3 When was the last time you gave someone flowers?
- 4 Do any flowers have a special meaning in your country?
- 5 Why do you think women like flowers more than men?

Sample Answers

1 Do you like flowers?

Yes, I do like flowers. Some types of flowers appeal to me, especially those with attractive shapes and scents. Being surrounded by flowers can make me feel calm and happy, particularly as an introvert. I still enjoy admiring its majesty through the lens of my camera.

2 What's your favorite flower?

The colour and shape of red roses, as well as the scents of jasmine and lavender, are appealing to me. I also like the shape of orchids.

3 When was the last time you gave someone flowers?

I purchased an orchid and rose flower bouquet as a gift for my parents' anniversary a few months ago, knowing how much they like orchids. They were overjoyed when they got it. They placed the exquisite flowers in a vase in their room, where they would be able to enjoy them every day.

4 Do any flowers have a special meaning in your country?

Yes, they do. Even though the meaning of flowers vary according to culture, marigolds and roses are common wedding flowers in Indian culture. They are red and orange in colour and reflect pleasure and love. However, marigolds are also used for funerals, where the flowers are placed on the deceased person's body.

5 Why do you think women like flowers more than men?



Well, it is commonly believed that flowers represent a more feminine trait. The beauty of flowers are often associated with the beauty of women. In comparison, men don't associate that to their masculinity, just as they don't want to buy scented floral perfumes.

Vocabulary

Appeal - (verb) make a serious, urgent, or heartfelt request.

Eg: Her decor has a strong visual appeal.

Majesty - (noun) impressive beauty, scale, or stateliness.

Eg: The majesty of the paragliders awed me.

Exquisite - (adj) extremely beautiful and delicate.

Eg: Alex wore an exquisite dress for the party.

Trait - (noun) a distinguishing quality or characteristic, typically one belonging to a person.

Eg: Determination is a much needed trait.

Associate - (verb) connect (someone or something) with something else in one's mind.

Eg: I associate white with purity.





20. Food

Questions

- 1 What's your favourite food?
- 2 Have you always liked the same foods?
- 3 Is there any food you dislike?
- 4 What is a common meal in your country?
- 5 Do you have a healthy diet?
- 6 What do you think of fast food?

Sample Answers

1 What's your favourite food?

I enjoy eating a wide variety of foods, but my personal favourite is Indian cuisine. I like Indian cuisine because it is full of flavour and spices. What I like best about it is its distinct flavour, incredible taste, and huge variety. Furthermore, traditional Indian food is extremely nutritious due to its flawless use of wheat, legumes, local and seasonal vegetables, a range of spices, ghee, and cooking oils.

2 Have you always liked the same foods?

Not really. I am quite picky about food. As I said, I like Indian food. I have always liked Indian food because it does not follow a set preparation pattern, which allows every individual to make the dishes in their unique way. I really enjoy eating nutritious foods such as fruit salads and vegetable salads. When I was in my teens, I preferred Italian food to Indian food, much like any other teenager.

3 Is there any food you dislike?

Yes, I am not a fan of seafood. In 2016, I visited Malaysia and tried prawns and lobster. To my surprise, the aftertaste and heavy odour did not appeal to me. I took one bite of each and gave the rest to a friend because I couldn't finish them.

4 What is a common meal in your country?



Food in my country is very rich in its spices and taste. My country offers diverse food choices. There are so many, and I've tried them all. Rice is the staple food eaten with lentils, stew, and spicy curries.

5 Do you have a healthy diet?

No, I enjoy eating a wide range of foods, but they are not essentially healthy. Occasionally, I enjoy eating fast food such as pizza and burger. Furthermore, I like eating fried foods, so I wouldn't call myself health conscious. However, I ensure that I drink enough water to keep my body hydrated.

6 What do you think of fast food?

Well, fast food is not good for health, but I like its taste. There are no healthy items in it, such as fruits and vegetables. Moreover, it contains preservatives that can harm the body if consumed regularly. Though I like fast food, I consume it only when I have a craving.

Vocabulary

Cuisine - (noun) a style or method of cooking, especially as characteristic of a particular country, region, or establishment.

Eg: Italian cuisine has rich garlic flavour.

Odour - (noun) a distinctive smell, especially an unpleasant one.

Eg: The odor of cigarette smoke is so strong in this room.

Staple - (noun) a piece of thin wire with two short right-angled end pieces which are driven by a stapler through sheets of paper to fasten them together.

Eg: Rice is the staple crop in South India

Craving - (noun) a powerful desire for something.

Eg: I have been craving for chocolate since morning.

Consume - (verb) eat or drink something

Eg: Nowadays people consume a lot of junk food.



21. Plants

Questions

- 1 Do you know anything about growing plants?
- 2 Do you keep plants at home?
- 3 Did you grow any plants when you were young?

Sample Answers

1 Do you know anything about growing plants?

Well, people call me green-fingered. My granny maintained a big garden in her backyard, and I had a whale of time there during my holidays. I learnt the art of gardening from her. From planting seedlings, watering, and nurturing them with organic manure to pruning them, I learnt a great deal from her, and I'm on my own now. I have a big garden, and sometimes I help my friends to make one too.

2 Do you keep plants at home?

Yes, I've got some indoors and outdoors. One interesting plant I grow indoors is the Desert cacti. Though many abhor it, I decided to try my hands on. It required some research and little effort. I grew it in a pot and watered it whenever the soil began to dry. It did pay me off by blooming after three years. It was such a pleasure!

3 Did you grow any plants when you were young?

Yes. I helped my mum raise a bougainvillea. I enjoyed watering it, and we celebrated when it was in full bloom.

Vocabulary

Green fingered (adj) - Having a seemingly natural gardening ability

Eg: Your Ixora is doing good. You must be green fingered.

Whale of time (noun phrase) - A very enjoyable experience

Eg: We had a whale of time in Mauritius.

Pruning (verb) - trim (a tree, shrub, or bush) by cutting away dead or overgrown branches or stems, especially to encourage growth.

Eg: It is time to prune the roses.



Abhor (verb) - regard with disgust and hatred
Eg: He abhorred killing of animals.





22. The Countryside

Questions

- 1 What do you usually do in the countryside?
- 2 Have you ever lived in the countryside?
- 3 Would you enjoy living in the countryside?
- 4 Will you live in the countryside in the future?

Sample Answers

1 What do you usually do in the countryside?

I often go to Shimoga, which is a 6-hour drive from Bangalore, where I live. Well, I have got plenty of things to do there. I go to the Jog falls, which is such stunning scenery. I take long walks, breathe in the fresh air, and enjoy the tranquility.

2 Have you ever lived in the countryside?

I have not lived in one, but I did spend a good deal of time in Tanjore, where my aunt lived. We used to visit her during summer vacations. She owned some acres of growing rice fields, and we enjoyed getting drenched in the water pump on the farm. I miss those days!

3 Would you enjoy living in the countryside?

I work for an IT company, and many companies have plans to move to the countryside to escape the traffic. That way, I might get a chance to live in the countryside. I would thoroughly enjoy it.

4 Will you live in the countryside in the future?

I would, when I retire. I think it is the right time. So, I might end up spending my old age in the countryside. I would be able to enjoy the lovely, friendly, and beautiful countryside to the fullest.



Vocabulary

Tranquility (noun) - the quality or state of being tranquil; calm.

Eg: I enjoy the tranquility of rural areas.

Drenched (verb) - wet thoroughly; soak

Eg: Since it rained in the park, I got drenched.

Acres (noun) - a unit of land area equal to 4,840 square yards (0.405 hectare).

Eg: He owns some acres of land, in the northern part of the village

Retirement (noun) - the action or fact of leaving one's job and ceasing to work.

Eg: The retirement age in India is 58.





23. Photos

Questions

- 1 Do you like to take photos?
- 2 In which situation do you take photos?
- 3 How do you store your photos?
- 4 Do you prefer to take photos of yourself or have other people take photos?

Sample Answers

1 Do you like to take photos?

Yes, I love it. I started by taking photos on my mobile camera at weddings and parties. Slowly, I became interested in nature. I started taking snaps of birds and flowers. Then I bought a digital cam. Photography is my hobby now!

2 In which situation do you take photos?

I carry my camera with me wherever I go. You never know when a special moment occurs. It could just be rain in the hillside, the laughter of your kid, a monkey jumping with its newborn, a roaring lion in the wild. It could be any small moment of awe that you would want to treasure for the future.

3 How do you store your photos?

I store them in the cloud, and it could be anything from a dropbox, google photos, or google drive. I don't save them on the phone because I run out of space. When I find something interesting, I don't hesitate to make an album out of them.

4 Do you like posing for pictures?

I love selfies! But I also like to pose for photos. But I don't restrict myself to weddings and parties. It could be anything from a picnic with friends, trekking in the wild, or simply loving moments with my family.



Vocabulary

snap (noun) - An informal photograph that is not very skillful or artistic

Eg: I took some snaps of a monkey in the zoo.

Camera (noun) - a device for recording visual images in the form of photographs, film, or video signals

Eg: The little girl did not like to face the camera.

Awe (noun) - a feeling of reverential respect mixed with fear or wonder.

Eg: She gazed in awe at the golden bangles.

Selfies (noun) - a photograph that one has taken of oneself, typically one taken with a smartphone or webcam and shared via social media.

Eg : She posted her selfie on Facebook.





24. Public transport

Questions

- 1 Do you travel by public transport?
- 2 When was the last time you travelled by public transport?
- 3 What you don't like about public transport?
- 4 Would you prefer to use public transport in the future?

Sample Answers

1 Do you travel by public transport?

Yes, I do. Every morning I take a bus to my office. There are air-conditioned and non-air conditioned buses plying in the city. I prefer to take the air-conditioned bus, though it is costlier.

2 When was the last time you travelled by public transport?

It was last Friday when I had to go to the office. Like I said before, I took the air-conditioned bus, and the ride was comfortable.

3 What don't you like about public transport?

The AC buses are less frequent. If you miss one, you have to wait nearly 10 minutes for the next one to arrive. In the evenings, when you are worn out and want to go home soon, it tests your temper.

4 Would you prefer to use public transport in the future?

No. I want to use my vehicle. Considering the traffic in the city, I would prefer a two-wheeler rather than a four-wheeler.

Vocabulary

Ply (verb) - travel regularly over a route, typically for commercial purposes.

Eg: These buses ply across the bridge.

Ride (noun) - a journey made on a horse, bicycle, or motorcycle, or in a vehicle.

Eg: Her uncle took her for a ride on the bike.



Worn out (adj) - extremely tired; exhausted.

Eg: She looked worn out.

temper (noun) - tendency to become angry very quickly.

Eg: She has a real temper.





25. Staying up late

Questions

- 1 Do you sometimes go to bed late?
- 2 What do you do when you stay up late?
- 3 How do you feel when you have stayed up late the night before?

Sample Answers

- 1 Do you sometimes go to bed late?

Well, it depends on whether I have met my deadlines at work. If not, I stay late to finish it and go to bed around 1:00 PM or 2:00 PM.

- 2 What do you do when you stay up late?

I would do many things. I would finish pending office work, read a book that I find irresistible, or talk to a friend over the phone.

- 3 How do you feel when you have stayed up late the night before?

It doesn't feel nice to sleep late and wake up early. I get a headache, the next morning and it spoils my whole day.

Vocabulary

Meet a deadline (noun phrase) - to finish work on time, by the agreed date.

Eg: We are hoping to meet the July deadline

Irresistible(adj) - too attractive and tempting to be resisted.

Eg: The chocolates were irresistible.

Over the phone (noun phrase) - hat something is done using the phone as a way to do it.

Eg: She conveyed the news over the phone

Spoil (verb) - diminish or destroy the value or quality of.



Eg: Don't spoil the fun.





26. Celebrities and stars

Questions

- 1 Have you ever met a celebrity in real life?
- 2 Who is your favourite movie star?
- 3 Are international superstars popular in your country?

Sample Answers

1 Have you ever met a celebrity in real life?

Yes. I have seen Amitabh Bachan in the airport. But I didn't make any effort to get an autograph from him. Sometimes I happen to sit next to film stars when I travel by air when they take the economy class. But I have not volunteered to talk to them.

2 Who is your favourite movie star?

Well, I'm a fan of Aishwarya Rai. She is a versatile actress, and I admired her from the very first movie. She is worth the Miss Universe title. My admiration increased after I watched her performance in the movie 'Taal'.

3 Are international superstars popular in your country?

Yes, they are. The youth of our country adore them. International superstars like Chris Hemsworth, Chris Evan, Robert Downey Jr, Gal Gadot are extremely popular in our country. From the music world the superstars Taylor Swift, Alan Walker, Selena Gomes, Ed Sheeran, Justin Bieber, and many more have their tracks on trending.

Vocabulary

Autograph (noun) - a signature, especially that of a celebrity written as a memento for an admirer.

Eg: The actor was surrounded by fans asking for an autograph

Versatile (adj) - able to adapt or be adapted to many different functions or activities.

Eg: Sarah was a versatile poetess of her times.

Adore (verb) - love and respect (someone) deeply.

Eg: Children adore their mothers.



Superstar (noun) - an extremely famous and successful performer or sports player.
Eg: She became a superstar without much effort.





27. Water

Questions

- 1 Do you ever drink bottled water? Why?
- 2 What kind of water do you like to drink?
- 3 How often do you drink water?
- 4 Do you think water is an important resource?

Sample Answers

1 Do you ever drink bottled water? Why?

Yes, I do. I prefer bottled water when going on a long drive to new places because there is no guarantee for the purity of water in the new place. So bottled water is the convenient and best source of water at such times.

2 What kind of water do you like to drink?

I am happy with the water that I get out of my aqua water purifier. I believe it is pure and has all the essential minerals to keep me healthy.

3 How often do you drink water?

I drink a glass of water every hour. That makes 12-15 glasses of water per day. It helps me to keep myself hydrated and stay fit.

4 Do you think water is a vital resource?

Yes, of course. Water is an elixir of life. Since ancient times, civilizations were created near sources of water. It plays a vital role in sustaining life on earth.

Vocabulary

Guarantee (noun) - a formal assurance (typically in writing) that certain conditions will be fulfilled, especially that a product will be repaired or replaced if not of a specified quality.

Eg: The shop offered a guarantee against rusting

Hydrated (verb) - cause to absorb water.

Eg: The skin doctor prescribed a moisturizer that would keep the skin hydrated



Fit (adj) - in good health, especially because of regular physical exercise.

Eg: You must learn to keep yourself fit

Sustaining (verb) - strengthen or support physically or mentally.

Eg: You must use protein drinks to sustain your energy.





28. Cooking & Baking

Questions

- 1 Do you like to cook?
- 2 Have you ever baked a cake?
- 3 Would you like to learn how to bake?
- 4 What kinds of things are baked in your country?

Sample Answers

1 Do you like to cook?

I love cooking. I like to prepare interesting delicacies and share it with friends and relatives. My day begins with the aroma of the spices. I feel heavenly when chopping the sweet-smelling coriander and on hearing the mustard seeds splutter. After a hard day's work, cooking rejuvenates my mind.

2 Have you ever baked a cake?

Yes. I have tried it on a stove, though. All you have to do is preheat a vessel. In the meanwhile, you can prepare the batter. You can either use powdered chocolate biscuits or cocoa. Grease a tray with butter, pour the batter onto it and place it in the preheated vessel for about 45 minutes to 1 hour and your cake will be ready.

3 Would you like to learn how to bake?

Yes. Though I know how to make a cake and have watched a lot of YouTube videos, I would be interested in learning it in person from a Chef.

4 What kinds of things are baked in your country?

Well, a lot of things are baked in our country from cakes to cookies and bread to pies. Plum cakes are my favourite. They are made of either dried fruits like grapes, currants, raisins or prunes, orange peels or with fresh fruits.

Vocabulary

Delicacies (noun) - something delightful or pleasing, especially a choice food considered with regard to its rarity, costliness, or the like



Eg: Chocolate lava cake is a true delicacy

Batter (noun) - mixture of flour and liquid with other ingredients

Eg: She got the dosa batter from store

Chef (noun) - a professional cook, typically the chief cook in a restaurant or hotel.

Eg: She worked as a Chef in a five-star hotel

Prunes (noun) - a plum preserved by drying and having a black, wrinkled appearance.

Eg: Prunes are high in fiber and are very good for health.





29. Colours

Questions

- 1 What's your favourite colour?
- 2 Do you usually wear clothes in your favourite colours?
- 3 Are there any colours you dislike?
- 4 Do you like dark colours or light colours?

Sample Answers

1 What's your favourite colour?

My choice varies based on purpose. If I'm to choose clothes, I would prefer all shades of green. If it is for house decor, I will choose shades of pink as it radiates a warm and cosy feeling into the minds.

2 Do you usually wear clothes in your favourite colours?

Yes. My mum says my wardrobe looks green. I have all shades of green from lime, olive, emerald to sea green and parrot green.

3 Are there any colours you dislike?

No. It is not that I dislike, but I avoid colours like black when it comes to painting my house. It makes sense when the painter says you have to choose colours that reflect light.

4 Do you like dark colours or light colours?

I choose based on my mood. When I'm happy, I pick out bright, vibrant colours. When I'm sad, I go for dull shades.

Vocabulary

Radiates (verb) - emit (energy, especially light or heat) in the form of rays or waves.

Eg: The sun radiates energy

Cozy (verb) - make (someone) feel comfortable or complacent.

Eg: She felt cozy curled up on the velvet sofa



Wardrobe (noun) - a large, tall cupboard or recess in which clothes may be hung or stored.

Eg: Her wardrobe is very expensive

Olive (adj) - greyish green

Eg: She wore a olive gown for the party





30. Tidiness

Questions

- 1 Are you a tidy person?
- 2 Do you think people should be tidy all the time?
- 3 Are you tidier at work or at home?

Sample Answers

1 Are you a tidy person?

Yes, I'm. I like to keep myself and my surroundings very clean. I love tidying my house, and you can even call it my hobby.

2 Do you think people should be tidy all the time?

Yes. I'm very hygiene conscious. I think everyone should follow simple things like washing hands after they use the restroom, covering their face with a handkerchief when they sneeze, or cough.

3 Are you tidier at work or home?

I would say both. At work, I don't mess up my office cabin with dolls and other unwanted stuff. At home, I'm more organized. Everything has its place at my home.

Vocabulary

Surroundings (noun) - the things and conditions around a person or thing.

Eg: She hated her surroundings.

Tidy (verb) - bring order to; arrange neatly.

Eg: The maid tidied the house

Hobby (noun) - an activity done regularly in one's leisure time for pleasure.

Eg: Reading was her hobby

Hygiene (noun) - conditions or practices conducive to maintaining health and preventing disease, especially through cleanliness.

Eg: Personal hygiene is very important



31. Movies

Questions

- 1 What's your favourite movie?
- 2 Do your friends like this movie?
- 3 What kind of movies do young people like?
- 4 Would you like to be a movie star?

Sample Answers

1 What's your favourite movie?

I love the movie Interstellar. It is a science fiction film. It describes a group of astronauts who are in search of a new home for humanity.

2 Do your friends like this movie?

Yes. They like it too. It was one of my friends who recommended this movie to me. Some of them were so amused that they began telling me that we better get prepared to live on planets like Mars.

3 What kind of movies do young people like?

In my opinion, young people are fond of superhuman characters like Spiderman. Also, they like fantasies like Harry Potter.

4 Would you like to be a movie star?

No, not at all. I hate to sacrifice my privacy. I hate to be surrounded by paparazzi all the time.

Vocabulary

Fiction (noun) - literature in the form of prose, especially novels, that describes imaginary events and people.

Eg: Things which were once created in fiction are becoming a reality

Astronaut (noun) - a person who is trained to travel in a spacecraft.

Eg: A group of astronauts travelled to Mercury, last week.

Amused (adj) - finding something funny or entertaining.



Eg: Children were so amused by the magician.

Paparazzis (noun) - a freelance photographer who pursues celebrities to get photographs of them.

Eg: She drove the car fast, to escape from the paparazzis.





32. Plans

Questions

- 1 What is the hardest part about making plans?
- 2 What is the most recent plan you made?
- 3 Do you make plans every day?
- 4 Are you good at managing your time?

Sample Answers

1 What is the hardest part of making plans?

It's about prioritizing. It isn't easy to decide the order in which you have to take up the tasks. I often keep wondering whether I should do yoga first or prepare breakfast.

2 What is the most recent plan you made?

I made a travel plan to Bylaguppe, which is on the way to Madikeri. We were a group of four. We planned to travel in my car, and I made the hotel arrangements too. Since it is a Tibetan settlement, we were on the lookout for authentic Indian food. I was successful in booking a lodging near an Indian restaurant. It was a walkable distance to the restaurant, and my friends appreciated me for it.

3 Do you make plans every day?

Well, it's not that I make a plan, but things seem to work out in order. I would say I got used to the routine. I rarely do anything out of the ordinary, so you can call me well-planned too.

4 Are you good at managing your time?

I don't make any effort towards it. I follow my routine, and if anything is a priority, be it at work or home, I do that first. Time gets managed automatically.

Vocabulary

Priority (noun) - the fact or condition of being regarded or treated as more important than others.

Eg: She was given work to be done on priority.



Well-planned (adj) - carefully arranged or designed.

Eg: The wedding was well planned.

Automatic (adj) - (with reference to a device or process) by itself with little or no direct human control.

Eg: The vehicle had an automatic gear.

Routine (noun) - a sequence of actions regularly followed.

Eg: She always stuck to the routine





33. Running

Questions

- 1 Do you like running?
- 2 Have you ever run a long-distance?
- 3 Would you prefer to watch a running competition live or on TV?
- 4 Do you think running is a good way to stay healthy?

Sample Answers

1 Do you like running?

Not much. I have vague memories of participating in running races when I was in school. Nowadays, I run only when my friends call me. It was just last week when we chose to run around a hill. We completed a full circle. We also took in some medicinal air because the hill was full of herbs.

2 Have you ever run a long-distance?

Well, my Company organizes marathons once in a while. My friends forced me to participate in it. So, I have run some marathons. It feels nice when you run across places of scenic beauty with friends around. We also do barefoot running occasionally.

3 Would you prefer to watch a running competition live or on TV?

I prefer to watch it on television. It is interesting to find out who the fastest runner is. I do tune in to watch the Olympics and find out where my country stands.

4 Do you think running is a good way to stay healthy?

Undoubtedly, yes. Most importantly, it helps in improving cardiovascular fitness. But, unfortunately, most people have restricted themselves to treadmills now.

Vocabulary

race(noun) - a competition between runners, horses, vehicles, etc. to see which is the fastest in covering a set course.

Eg: He won in the bike race.



Marathon (noun) - a long-distance running race, strictly one of 26 miles 385 yards (42.195 km)

Eg: She won a gold medal in the marathon for girls.

Barefoot running (adj phrase) - the act of running without footwear.

Eg: Barefoot running helps in strengthening the muscles.

Treadmills (noun) - a device used for exercise, consisting of a continuous moving belt on which to walk or run.

Eg: Treadmill test is conducted to check the functioning of the heart.





34. Parks

Questions

- 1 Are there many parks near where you live?
- 2 Do you like going to the parks?
- 3 Do you think there are enough parks or gardens in your hometown?
- 4 What did you use to do in parks as a child?

Sample Answers

1 Are there many parks near where you live?

Yes, there are quite a few of them. The national government has issued a mandate to all the local governments to build parks to develop community building. So, there are many projects on parks coming up. They have planned to establish two new parks near our area. I read it in the newspapers.

2 Do you like going to the parks?

I'm very fond of Gibb's Garden near my house. It has a small pond as well. I go there on weekends to relax and enjoy the fresh air.

3 Do you think there are enough parks or gardens in your hometown?

We have one large garden in the centre of the city, but there are also several parks in the suburbs. So, I think we have just the right number of parks in our town.

4 What did you use to do in parks as a child?

I had loads of fun in the park nearby. It had a see-saw, and I enjoyed going up and down on it. We had other children from the neighbourhood who joined me in playing. We had a miniature version of the merry-go-round which we thoroughly enjoyed.

Vocabulary

Garden (noun) - a piece of ground adjoining a house, in which grass, flowers, and shrubs may be grown.

Eg: There was a garden near his house



Pond (noun) - a small body of still water formed naturally or by artificial means.

Eg: There was a lotus pond in the middle of the village.

Relax (verb) - make or become less tense or anxious.

Eg: The hair spa was very relaxing.

Seesaw (noun) - a long plank balanced in the middle on a fixed support, on each end of which children sit and swing up and down by pushing the ground alternately with their feet.

Eg: Kids enjoy going up and down in the seesaw.





35. Neighbourhood/Local Area

Questions

- 1 Do you like the area that you live in?
- 2 Do you know any famous people in your local area?
- 3 Where do you like to go, in that area?
- 4 What are some recent changes in your local area?

Sample Answers

1 Do you like the area that you live in currently?

I have recently moved to Indira Nagar in Adyar. I purchased an apartment here after I got a hike in my Company. It is covered by trees on both sides of the road. It is quite sedate. I take pride in myself for buying an apartment here.

2 Do you know any famous people in your local area?

Well, I know some people from the Exnora and Rotary clubs. I love to get indulged in Exnora's activities like planting saplings and join the rotary club in its service-oriented activities.

3 Where do you like to go, in that area?

Adyar is quite big. I want to go to Lattice Bridge road where there are merchants of different types. It is a bustling road, but I love to take an evening stroll. It is intriguing to see people roaming busily across the street.

4 What are some recent changes in your local area?

There are lots of boutiques coming up. Also, I saw a new beauty parlour on my way home last night. Some residents have sold their houses, and flats are being constructed in those places.

Vocabulary



Apartment (noun) - is a room or suite of rooms designed as a residence and generally located in a building occupied by more than one household.

Eg: She lived in a prestigious apartment.

Sedate (adjective) - quiet

Eg: It was a sedate suburban society.

Club (noun) - an association dedicated to a particular interest or activity.

Eg: I'm a part of the nature club.

Residents (noun) - a person who lives somewhere permanently or on a long-term basis.

Eg: It is a beautiful place with just 40 residents.





36. Walking

Questions

- 1 Do you often walk?
- 2 Where do you walk?
- 3 Do you think you walk enough?
- 4 Do you think people will walk more in the future?

Sample Answers

1 Do you often walk?

I don't do it religiously as an exercise. But I do get chances to walk for some time in a day.

2 Where do you walk?

I walk inside my office. After parking the vehicle, I have to walk some distance to reach my building in the office. In the evenings, I walk back to the car parking area. This is my walking schedule every day.

3 Do you think you walk enough?

To be honest, I work out on the treadmill, half-an-hour every day and believe that it helps. Other than that, I walk in the nearby parks on weekends.

4 Do you think people will walk more in the future?

With the advent of devices like treadmills, walking has ceased among the urbane community. The rural community is also progressing rapidly. People are keen to modernize their lives. So, it is quite doubtful that people will want to walk in the future.

Vocabulary

Exercise (noun) - activity requiring physical effort, carried out to sustain or improve health and fitness.

Eg: Exercise improves blood circulation.



Schedule (noun) - a plan for carrying out a process or procedure, giving lists of intended events and times.

Eg: He has a hectic morning schedule

Ceased (verb) - come or bring to an end.

Eg: The pandemic ceased and lockdowns were lifted.

Modernize (verb) - adapt (something) to modern needs or habits, typically by installing modern equipment or adopting modern ideas or methods.

Eg: They modernized the school.





37. Languages

Questions

- 1 Which languages do you speak?
- 2 What are the common languages in your country?
- 3 Would you like to learn a new language?
- 4 Is it important to speak a foreign language?

Sample Answers

1 Which languages do you speak?

Apart from English and my native language, I know French. In high school, I had the option to choose any foreign language as a major. I chose French and also enrolled in Alliance Francaise. We enacted the 'Tenali Raman' drama in French, which I fondly recall every time I talk in French.

2 What are the common languages in your country?

I take pride in saying we speak around 22 official languages in our country. There are 29 states in India, and each state has its own language. But you need not know all of them. You can survive with Hindi and English which you can also call as common languages.

3 Would you like to learn a new language?

Yes, of course. I work for a Japanese company. So, I'm very much interested to learn Japanese, so that I can impress my clients. Also, Japanese and Spanish translators are paid well in corporate companies.

4 Is it important to speak a foreign language?

It will give you an edge over others in terms of career. Your connectivity improves. You not only learn the language but the culture of that particular nation. The fact that you will be able to gel well with a new community will be extremely beneficial in your career.



Vocabulary

Native language (adj phrase) - the language of the country that someone is born in or native to

Eg: French was his native language.

Official language (adj phrase) - a language given a special status in a particular country, state, or other jurisdiction

Eg: Tamil is an official language in India.

Translators (noun) - a person who translates from one language into another, especially as a profession.

Eg: Japanese translators are paid well.

Foreign language (adj phrase) - a language originally from another country than the speaker.

Eg: Indians speak good English, though it is a foreign language for them.





38. Public Holidays

Questions

- 1 How many public holidays do you have in your country?
- 2 Which public holiday is your favourite?
- 3 What do you usually do on a public holiday?
- 4 Do you think people need more public holidays?

Sample Answers

1 How many public holidays do you have in your country ?

Well, I cannot be accurate but can give a try. The festival season starts with Ganesh Chaturthi in August. From then on, we have an array of festivals till Christmas in December. Then we have the national holidays like Republic day in January and Independence Day in August. So, there's a fairly good number of holidays for us.

2 Which public holiday is your favourite?

Diwali, without a doubt. I enjoy the fireworks and sound of the crackers and burst them too. I love to light the flower pots and rockets. Also, I cannot forget the number of delicacies that are prepared on that day. It is lovely to see the smiling faces of people and the love and affection with which they wish "Happy Diwali" to each other.

3 What do you usually do on a public holiday?

It depends on the nature of the holiday. If it is a festival, we thoroughly enjoy the day. If it is a day of national importance like Independence Day, we revere the sacrifices of our ancestors.

4 Do you think people need more public holidays?

Yes, I do think so! Corporate companies are so smart that they have introduced a concept called optional holidays. So, we don't get to enjoy all the holidays in a year. This concept should be abolished, and everyone should get to enjoy all the holidays.

Vocabulary

Festivals (noun) - a day or period of celebration, typically for religious reasons.



Eg: She celebrates festivals in a grand manner

Firecrackers (noun) - A firecracker (cracker, noise maker, banger,) is a small explosive device primarily designed to produce a large amount of noise, especially in the form of a loud bang, usually for celebration or entertainment.

Eg: People enjoy bursting firecrackers on Diwali.

National holiday (adj phrase) -a nationally recognized day when most businesses and other institutions are closed.

Eg: All shops are closed on national holidays

Optional holiday (adj phrase) - The holiday which is optional for each individual employee and each employee can decide whether he/she wants to take a leave on that day or not.

Eg: Ramzan was an optional holiday for Hindus in ABC Company.





39. Music

Questions

- 1 When do you listen to music?
- 2 How much time do you spend listening to music every day?
- 3 What kinds of music do you like to listen to?
- 4 Have you ever been to a concert before?

Sample Answers

1 When do you listen to music?

I listen to music, whenever and wherever I can. I usually enjoy listening to my playlists when going on a long drive in my car. Listening to music at such moments will raise your spirits.

2 How much time do you spend listening to music every day?

Almost every day, when I'm back from work. I listen to music when I prepare dinner. After a hard day at work, it is very relaxing and refreshing to listen to music. It replenishes your energy.

3 What kinds of music do you enjoy listening to?

I like to listen to a variety of music from Carnatic music to film songs. I like the fusion kind of music where you have both classical and western renderings. I also like Ghazals.

4 Have you ever been to a concert before?

Sadly, No. But given a chance, I would like to attend the Bryan Adams concert. I want to see him performing live. I have just moved to the UK for work, and I look forward to attending one, very soon.



Vocabulary

Carnatic music (adj phrase) - form of music that is associated with the southern part of India with its area roughly confined to five states of India i.e. Kerala, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh and Telangana.

Eg: Saritha visited the carnatic vocal concerts in December.

Renderings (noun) - a performance of a piece of music or drama.

Eg: It was an exotic rendering of "Eye of the tiger".

Concert (noun) - a musical performance given in public, typically by several performers or of several compositions.

Eg: A pop concert was being organised in Oregon.

Ghazals (noun) - (in Middle Eastern and Indian literature and music) a lyric poem with a fixed number of verses and a repeated rhyme, typically on the theme of love, and normally set to music.

Eg: She attended classes for Ghazals which is why she is able to sing them well.





40. Age

Questions

- 1 Do you like your current age?
- 2 What do you like about it?
- 3 At what age do you think people are the happiest?
- 4 What was the most important decision you have made?

Sample Answers

1 Do you like your current age?

Yeah, definitely. I'm happy to be the age I'm in right now, because it has made me wise. It feels great to be alive and to have experienced so much about the world.

2 What do you like about it?

As you get older, you are settling in your life. Your accomplishments bring you a sense of joy. It is surprising that you get rid of petty qualities like jealousy and contempt, with age. You tend to become more loving and magnanimous.

3 At what age do you think people are the happiest?

I think people are happiest in their fifties. It is neither young nor too old. Most of them would have been settled by then. It is my opinion that people would be wise and content at this age.

4 What was the most important decision you have made?

The most important decision I made is to settle in the UK. I moved to the UK for work reasons but later the opportunity extended and I felt fairly at home in the UK. I thought I could manage myself well here. So, I got my parents to stay with me.

Vocabulary

Alive (adj) - (of a person, animal, or plant) living, not dead.

Eg: They captured the tiger alive.

Experienced (adj) - having gained knowledge or skill in a particular field over time.

Eg: Sita was an experienced gynaecologist.



Settling in life (adj phrase) - what someone does when they have a job/career that makes them happy and provides for their needs, and they have a husband/wife (and possibly children) and have a home.

Eg: Ram is in his late forties and has settled down in his life.

Decision (noun) - a conclusion or resolution reached after consideration.

Eg: Jack takes his own decisions.





41. Travel

Questions

- 1 Do you like travelling?
- 2 Which cities have you travelled to?
- 3 What kind of cities do you like to travel to?
- 4 Which city left the deepest impression on you?

Sample Answers

1 Do you like travelling?

I would like to go on a world tour. The fact that I've started earning in the UK gives me confidence that I can make my dream come true. I want to travel both by air and by sea. I have read the "Adventures of Rusty" when I was very young and that inspired me for sea travel.

2 Which cities have you travelled to?

I have been to many places in India. I have seen the India gate and Taj Mahal, Ajanta and Ellora caves, Dakshineswar Kali and the snow in Kashmir.

3 What kind of cities do you like to travel to?

I love History. I want to explore historic places that I have read in books. So, I prefer to visit cities with a rich cultural heritage and there are plenty of them in India.

4 Which city left the deepest impression on you?

Undoubtedly Calcutta. It was the original British Capital. I loved it so much. I have a photograph of me, standing on the Howrah Bridge. I experienced the spiritual vibes of Ramakrishna paramahansa in the Dakshineswar temple. I also visited the "Missionaries of charity" and got an autograph from the current superior General. I treasure it.



Vocabulary

Tour (noun) - a journey for pleasure in which several different places are visited.

Eg: Swetha went on a tour of Europe.

Explore (verb) - travel through (an unfamiliar area) in order to learn about it

Eg: They explored the forest.

Cultural Heritage (adj) - an expression of the ways of living developed by a community and passed on from generation to generation, including customs, practices, places, objects, artistic expressions and values

Eg: We are determined to preserve our unique cultural heritage for future generations.

Bridge (noun) - a structure carrying a road, path, railway, etc. across a river, road, or other obstacle.

Eg: He made his way up to the Bridge





42. Breaks

Questions

- 1 Do you prefer a long break or several short breaks?
- 2 How often do you take a break?
- 3 What do you usually do during a break?
- 4 Why do you need to take a break?

Sample Answers

1 Do you prefer a long break or several short breaks?

I prefer to take several short breaks because it revives my energy and I can be back at work fully charged. Long breaks tend to make you lazy and ultimately lose motivation to work.

2 How often do you take a break?

I reach the office at 8 in the morning and leave at 7 in the evening. So, I take a number of short breaks spanning 5 mins, every 1 hour.

3 What do you usually do during a break?

I usually go for a coffee or grab a biscuit. If I'm very hungry I go to the cafeteria and have something substantial.

4 Why do you need to take a break?

Science reveals that human beings can be productive only for 6 hours in a day. When we work continuously, we develop fatigue and our capacity decreases. So, it is essential that we take some breaks.

Vocabulary

Revive (verb) - give new strength or energy to.

Eg: The cool air revived us.

Spanning (verb) - extend across (a period of time or a range of subjects).

Eg: His interest spanned across all branches of History.



Productive (adj) - producing or able to produce large amounts of goods, crops, or other commodities

Eg: His employees were very productive.

Fatigue (noun) - extreme tiredness resulting from mental or physical exertion or illness.

Eg: Soon after the morning workout, he was dying out of fatigue.





43. Pens and Pencils

Questions

- 1 Do you prefer to use a pen or a pencil for writing?
- 2 When was the last time you bought a pen or a pencil?
- 3 How would you feel if someone gave you a pen or a pencil as a gift?

Sample Answers

1 Do you prefer to use a pen or a pencil for writing?

I prefer an ink pen over pencils or ball point pens because my teachers had always insisted on using one. Using an ink pen is said to improve handwriting. But now that I work in an IT company, everything is digitized and we hardly use pens or pencils.

2 When was the last time you bought a pen or a pencil?

Like I said before, we store everything in computers. So, it's been a long while since I went to a stationary shop to buy a pen or pencil. But I did place a request for a marker in my office stationery app.

3 How would you feel if someone gave you a pen or a pencil as a gift?

I would be overjoyed. I still have the parker pen gifted by my dad on my table. It cost a fortune to get that pen those days.

Vocabulary

Ballpoint pen (noun) - a pen with a tiny ball as its writing point, especially one using stiffer ink than a rollerball.

Eg: He seldom used ballpoint pens.

Handwriting (noun) - a person's particular style of writing.

Eg: His handwriting was neat.

Stationery (noun) - writing and other office materials.

Eg: He bought some stationery items from the shop.



Costs a fortune (noun phrase) - to cost a lot of money

Eg: It cost a fortune to get the house painted.





44. Spending time by yourself

Questions

- 1 Do you like spending time by yourself?
- 2 How do you usually spend your time by yourself?
- 3 What did you do last time when you were by yourself?

Sample Answers

1 Do you like spending time by yourself?

Well, I need some time for myself and will not compromise on it. But that doesn't mean I'm a loner. It is only a little while after which I connect myself to people.

2 How do you usually spend your time by yourself?

Well, I read a book, listen to some soothing music, lie down on the bed and have a nap, talk to my friend over the phone or tidy up things at home.

3 What did you do last time when you were by yourself?

I was working. I had to finish a deadline and I was hooked on my work. Because I was working alone on a Saturday, I was able to work without any distraction.

Vocabulary

Loner (noun) - a person that prefers not to associate with others.

Eg: Shyam was a loner.

Soothing (adj) - having a gently calming effect.

Eg: She was listening to a soothing music.

Nap (verb) - sleep lightly or briefly, especially during the day.

Eg: She usually takes a nap during the afternoons.

Distraction (noun) - a thing that prevents someone from concentrating on something else.

Eg: Sita did not do well in exams, because she had many distractions.



45. Wild Animals

Questions

- 1 Have you ever seen wild animals before?
- 2 Which wild animals do you like the most?
- 3 Do you like to go to the zoo?

Sample Answers

1 Have you ever seen wild animals before?

Well, I remember having gone to a zoo when I was in the 11th grade. We opted for a lion safari. It was pretty scary as one of the lions pounced on the front and back of our van.

2 Which wild animals do you like the most?

I admire tigers. I like watching them hunting for their prey in National Geographic. Apart from that I love their eyes. They have beautiful eyes that glitter at night.

3 Do you like to go to the zoo?

Yes, I would love to. It is such a hilarious sight to watch a monkey pick louse from another monkey. I also enjoy watching the elephants bathe, observing cheetahs and tigers growl in their cages.

Vocabulary

Zoo (noun) - an establishment which maintains a collection of wild animals, typically in a park or gardens, for study, conservation, or display to the public.

Eg: Tom took his kids to the zoo.

Safari (noun) - It can be defined as a forest trail, except that instead of walking, hiking or trekking, you have also got the options of exploring the forest regions via a jeep.

Eg: We watched the lions in the safety of a Safari.

Prey (noun) - an animal that is hunted and killed by another for food.

Eg: The Lion pounced on its prey.



Cage (noun) - a structure of bars or wires in which birds or other animals are confined.

Eg: She kept parrots in a cage.





46. Laughter

Questions

- 1 When was the last time you laughed?
- 2 Do you like watching funny programmes on TV?
- 3 Do you like to make people laugh?
- 4 Do you think it is important for friends to laugh together?

Sample Answers

1 When was the last time you laughed?

It was at my college farewell party. There was a comedy show organized to entertain us. The show was too good and I laughed out loud, too loud, I guess. I came back to my senses when I noticed people staring at me.

2 Do you like watching funny programmes on TV?

Who doesn't enjoy watching them? I love to watch such programmes as they make you forget your worries.

3 Do you like to make people laugh?

Yes, I love to. People usually say that I'm gifted with a good sense of humour. It dilutes the intensity of a tough situation and makes you think out of the box.

4 Do you think it is important for friends to laugh together?

Laughter is a medicine. You definitely need those light hearted moments with your friends. It feels wonderful to let go of the tension in the mind and enjoy yourself with friends.

Vocabulary

Comedy (noun) - professional entertainment consisting of jokes and sketches, intended to make an audience laugh.

Eg: She spent a lot on Comedy shows.



Worries (noun) - the state of being anxious and troubled over actual or potential problems.

Eg: She was always in a constant state of worry.

Humour (noun) - the quality of being amusing or comic, especially as expressed in literature or speech.

Eg: Dick had a good sense of humour.

Light hearted (adj) - amusing and entertaining.

Eg: He met his old friends and had a light hearted chat





47. Cakes and Desserts

Questions

- 1 Do you like eating cakes?
- 2 Have you ever made a cake?
- 3 Do you like having desserts?
- 4 What desserts are popular in your country?

Sample Answers

- 1 Do you like eating cakes?

Well, I have a sweet tooth. I relish chocolate cakes. Chocolate truffles are my favourite.

- 2 Have you ever made a cake?

Yes. I have made cake on a stove. I put all my creativity into it. I sprinkled dried fruits, almond kernels and pistachios into the batter and the chocolate cake tasted just great!

- 3 Do you like having desserts?

Be it a cake or ice cream or some traditional recipe, I would like to try them all. I would call it the best part of the meal.

- 4 What desserts are popular in your country?

Cookies, pastries, candies, cakes and what not! People in my country don't hesitate to try out anything sugary.

Vocabulary

Sweet tooth (noun) - a great liking for sweet-tasting foods.

Eg: His grandfather had a sweet tooth.

Relish (verb) - enjoy greatly.

Eg: She relished the sweet spaghetti sauce.



Pastries (noun) - a dough of flour, fat, and water, used as a base and covering in baked dishes such as pies.

Eg: Please spread the gratings over the pastry.

Candies (noun) - sweets; confectionery.

Eg: She put a candy into her mouth.





48. Concentration

Questions

- 1 What helps you concentrate?
- 2 What stops you from concentrating?
- 3 What do you do when you can't concentrate?

Sample Answers

1 What helps you concentrate?

When I'm doing some important work, I switch off my mobile phone. This helps me to focus more on what I'm doing. Of late, I have been doing Yoga, which helps me greatly.

2 What stops you from concentrating?

Lack of good sleep and multitasking. If I sleep less, I won't be able to concentrate the next morning. If too many things are spinning at a time, it is difficult to focus.

3 What do you do when you can't concentrate?

I try to put off my mobile phones, close the email tab in my browser and wear headphones so that other noises don't distract me. I also make a mini priority list on my own. This helps me to complete things in order. The more I complete, the more confident I become.

Vocabulary

Focus (verb) - pay particular attention to.

Eg: The Biology teacher focused more on cockroaches.

Yoga (noun) - a Hindu spiritual and ascetic discipline, a part of which, including breath control, simple meditation, and the adoption of specific bodily postures, is widely practised for health and relaxation.

Eg: She attended the yoga classes without fail.

Multitasking (verb) - (of a person) deal with more than one task at the same time.

Eg: Harry was not good at multitasking.



Headphones (noun) - a pair of earphones joined by a band placed over the head, for listening to audio signals such as music or speech.

Eg: I was listening to Beethoven through my headphones.





49. Beautiful Scenario

Questions

- 1 In your country, are there many places to see beautiful scenery?
- 2 Do you like to visit places with beautiful views when you are travelling?
- 3 Do you like to take pictures of beautiful scenery?

Sample Answers

1 In your country, are there many places to see beautiful scenery?

We have enough scenic places in India. We have the Western Ghats, Eastern Ghats and the Himalayas to name a few. There are umpty number of falls and rivers and many other exotic places being discovered every day.

2 Do you like to visit places with beautiful views when you are travelling?

Yes, I do. Whenever I come across any breathtaking scenery I stop by. Otherwise I just witness the sun and the moon, enjoying their different variants of light from morning to night.

3 Do you like to take pictures of beautiful scenery?

Yes, of course. I want to capture every single moment I enjoy. Because you never know if you will get to see it once again. For instance, you see pink clouds this moment and the next moment they turn orange. Nature is very playful. You ought to carefully record it, else you will miss it forever.

Vocabulary

Ghats (noun) - (in South Asia) a mountain pass.

Eg: He did not drive well in the ghat section.

Waterfalls (noun) - a cascade of water falling from a height, formed when a river or stream flows over a precipice or steep incline.

Eg: There is a waterfalls next to the village.

Breathtaking (adj) - astonishing or awe-inspiring in quality, so as to take one's breath away



Eg: The Himalayas are a breathtaking beauty.

Clouds (noun) - a visible mass of condensed watery vapour floating in the atmosphere, typically high above the general level of the ground.

Eg: The moon was hidden by dark clouds.





50. History

Questions

- 1 Do you like history?
- 2 Did you enjoy learning history when you were a child?
- 3 When was the last time you read about history?
- 4 Do you think history is important?

Sample Answers

1 Do you like history?

I love History. Learning about the past fascinates me, to this day. I not only read it in books, but make sure I visit those places in person. For instance, I toured Hassan near Karnataka in my 7th grade after having read about it in my sixth grade. I have a long list of such places to go.

2 Did you enjoy learning history when you were a child?

I did. It was inspirational to learn about warriors, patriotic when learning about freedom fighters, intriguing when learning about Mughals and the British. I was once given a task to find out why Indians could easily accept Mughals as rulers and not the British. I loved such interesting assignments.

3 When was the last time you read about history?

Well, it was a year ago when someone gave me the book "White Mughals" as a gift. I was impressed about the way the culture got mingled between the leading characters in the book, one of whom is English and the other a Muslim.

4 Do you think history is important?

Yes, it is important. I go by the opinion of Machiavelli that whoever wishes to foresee the future must consult the past. We also get a chance to learn from the mistakes of our ancestors.

Vocabulary



Warriors (noun) - (especially in former times) a brave or experienced soldier or fighter.

Eg: Chatrapti Shivaji was a true warrior.

Patriotic (adj) - having or expressing devotion to and vigorous support for one's country.

Eg: The cricket match will be watched by a patriotic crowd.

Culture (noun) - the ideas, customs, and social behaviour of a particular people or society.

Eg: Westerners have great respect for Indian culture.

Ancestors (noun) - a person, typically one more remote than a grandparent, from whom one is descended.

Eg: It was because of the hard work of his ancestors that he is rich now.





51. Coffee or Tea

Questions

- 1 Do you like coffee or tea?
- 2 Do you remember when you drank coffee/tea for the first time?
- 3 Do you offer coffee and tea to visitors when they come to your home?
- 4 What are the benefits of drinking coffee or tea?

Sample Answers

1 Do you like coffee or tea?

Day breaks in most south Indian homes with a hot cup of filter coffee. I love to wake up to the strong aroma of coffee. I believe it gives the whole energy needed for the day.

2 Do you remember when you drank coffee/tea for the first time?

India is a tropical country. So, we have coffee farms in abundance. Coffee is like water for us. So, we start drinking coffee, right from our childhood. And I'm no exception. I don't remember much when I first had it.

3 Do you offer coffee and tea to visitors when they come to your home?

Well, if they are complete strangers, I check out what they prefer. Otherwise, I always offer them a hot cup of coffee.

4 What are the benefits of drinking coffee or tea?

Well, Coffee contains caffeine and tea contains theobromine. Both are good if taken in moderation. Addiction to either of them will yield adverse results.

Vocabulary

Aroma (noun) - a distinctive, typically pleasant smell.

Eg: It was an inviting aroma of roses.

Caffeine (noun) - an alkaloid compound which is found especially in tea and coffee plants and is a stimulant of the central nervous system.

Eg: Some are of the opinion that caffeine fights cancer.



Theobromine (noun) - a bitter, volatile compound obtained from cacao seeds. It is an alkaloid resembling caffeine in its physiological effects.

Eg: Some fear that high levels of theobromine are toxic.

Addiction (noun) - the fact or condition of being addicted to a particular substance or activity.

Eg: Drug addiction is dangerous.





52. Sleep

Questions

- 1 How many hours do you sleep every day (or every night)?
- 2 Do you think it's good to have a nap during the day?
- 3 Do you think old people need more sleep than young people?
- 4 Have your sleeping habits changed since you were younger?

Sample Answers

1 How many hours do you sleep every day (or every night)?

Usually I sleep around 7-8 hours every day. But if I have deadlines to meet, I go to bed at odd hours and barely get 4-5 hours of sleep.

2 Do you think it's good to have a nap during the day?

Yes. Japanese companies allow their employees to take a power nap and they have proved it to be beneficial.

3 Do you think old people need more sleep than young people?

I think old people can manage with a minimum amount of sleep. In general, the amount of sleep decreases as you get older. Old people usually take pills to fall asleep. But it also varies from person to person.

4 Have your sleeping habits changed since you were younger?

Yes, it has changed drastically. When I was young, I used to sleep for 12 hours. But as I grew older, it decreased. Nowadays, it depends on the extent of my exhaustion. Sometimes I do sleep for 9 hours.

Vocabulary

Odd hours (adj phrase) - Unusual hours

Eg: He works at odd hours sometimes.

Power nap (noun) - a short sleep taken during the working day in order to restore one's mental alertness



Eg: He got permission from his Boss to take a power nap in the afternoon.

Pills (noun) - a small round mass of solid medicine for swallowing whole.

Eg: You should not get addicted to sleeping pills.

Exhaustion (noun) - a state of extreme physical or mental tiredness.

Eg: Jane grew pale with exhaustion.





53. Friends

Questions

- 1 Do you have a lot of friends?
- 2 What do you do with your friends?
- 3 Is it important to have a lot of friends?

Sample Answers

1 Do you have a lot of friends?

Not lots. But I do have some close ones. I had many friends when I was in school. As you get old, it is difficult to find people with common interests. So, I'm quite happy that I managed to get close, at least to a few.

2 What do you do with your friends?

We often get to meet. One of my friends is an artist and she conducts an art exhibition every now and then. Another friend of mine runs a cookery class. She also hosts cookery shows on TV. Sometimes, she invites us to participate in her shows.

3 Is it important to have a lot of friends?

It is important to have friends but the number does not matter. Friendships make our lives delightful. They add more meaning to our life.

Vocabulary

Common interests (adj phrase) - A shared interest in a specific subject that brings people together to form a community; it structures interaction and exchange within that community.

Eg: Ashley and David shared common interests.

Friendship (noun) - the emotions or conduct of friends; the state of being friends.

Eg: He revived his old friendships through facebook.

Artist (noun) - a person who creates paintings or drawings as a profession or hobby.

Eg : Mira was an artist.

Delightful (adj) - causing great pleasure.



Eg: It was a delightful conversation.





54. Home/Accommodation

Questions

- 1 What kind of housing/accommodation do you live in?
- 2 Who do you live with?
- 3 How long have you lived there?
- 4 What's the difference between where you are living now and where you have lived in the past?
- 5 Do you plan to live there for a long time?
- 6 Which room does your family spend most of the time in?
- 7 Are the transport facilities to your home very good?
- 8 Do you prefer living in a house or a flat?
- 9 Please describe the room you live in.
- 10 What part of your home do you like the most?

Sample Answers

1 What kind of housing/accommodation do you live in?

I live in a terraced house that has a living room, a kitchen, three bed rooms, two bathrooms and a lovely back garden. It's not really a spacious house, but it's just right for me and my family.

2 Who do you live with?

I live with my parents and my siblings. We always get on well with each other and have a lot of fun.

3 How long have you lived there?



I've lived there since I was a child, until I graduated from high school and moved to the city to enroll at university, where I lived in a student dormitory during the semester. (If you answer you haven't lived there long)

4 What's the difference between where you are living now and where you have lived in the past?

Living in a dorm with other roommates is totally different from living in my own house. My current residential area is quite small and it's very noisy because there are a lot of people there and I don't have my own space. Conversely, when I was living at home, I had my own spacious room and it made me feel comfortable.

5 Do you plan to live there for a long time?

To be honest, I intend to buy an apartment in an urban area after I graduate from university. I can decorate and design my ideal home with whatever facilities I want.

6 Which room does your family spend most of the time in?

It's definitely the kitchen. Not only lunch or dinner time but all our family reunions take place in the kitchen where all the family members get together to eat tasty meals, and chat to each other – it's a really harmonious atmosphere.

7 Are the transport facilities to your home very good?

To be honest, most of the transport facilities to my place are not very modern. The bus service from my work place to home is irregular and usually overcrowded.

8 Do you prefer living in a house or a flat?

I prefer living in a house to a flat because I value my privacy and need my own space. Owning an independent house, I can plan and design a house layout to suit myself. Moreover, I can modify a house according to the size of the family.

9 Please describe the room you live in.

My current room is actually more like a bedsit. It is a multi – purpose room, I use it to sleep and study as well. It is painted in pink, that's my favourite colour with a bed, a cupboard and desk. It's not really spacious but it's just right for me.

10 What part of your home do you like the most?

I prefer my bedroom most due to its convenience and privacy. Because of my stressful work I want to be in a quiet place and concentrate on my work. In my own room, I'm never disturbed by anyone else. Moreover, in my own space I can do whatever I want without bothering others.



Vocabulary

Terraced house (noun): a house connected on both sides by other properties

Eg: In England, most people seem to live in terraced houses with lovely back gardens.

Back garden (noun phrase): a garden at the rear of the house.

Eg: I live in a terraced house that has a living room, a kitchen, three bed rooms, two bathrooms and a lovely back garden.

Spacious (adjective): (of a room or building) large and with plenty of space for people to move around in

Eg: The hotel rooms are spacious and comfortable.

Sibling(s) (noun): a brother or sister

Eg: The younger children were badly treated by older siblings.

Get on well with somebody (phrasal verb): to have a friendly relationship with somebody

Eg: She and her sister have never really got on well with each other.

Dormitory (noun): a room for several people to sleep in, especially in a school or other institution

Eg: I've lived there since I was a child, until I graduated high school and moved to the city to enroll in university where I lived in a dormitory.

Residential area (noun): (of an area of a town) suitable for living in; consisting of houses rather than factories or offices

Eg: It was not safe to locate the chemicals factory in a residential area.

Urban area (noun): connected with a town or city

Eg: Pollution has reached disturbingly high levels in some urban areas.

Reunion (noun): a social occasion or party attended by a group of people who have not seen each other for a long time

Eg: The College has an annual reunion for former students.

Harmonious (adjective): friendly, peaceful and without any disagreement

Eg: It is important to have harmonious relations between the country's ethnic groups.

Irregular (adjective): not happening at the arranged time intervals

Eg: His irregular attendance at school resulted in his failure in the final exams.

Overcrowded (adjective): with too many people or things in it



Eg: The train was so overcrowded this evening that I was unable to find an empty seat.

Privacy (noun): being alone and not disturbed by other people

Eg: I read the letter in the privacy of my own room.

Suit oneself (verb): to do exactly what you like/want

Eg: Everyone had a different opinion about what colour to paint my room, so in the end I decided to just suit myself.

Modify (verb): to change something slightly, especially in order to make it more suitable for a particular purpose

Eg: We found it cheaper to modify the existing equipment rather than buy new.

Bedsit (noun): a room that a person rents and uses for both living and sleeping in

Eg: He lives in a tiny student bedsit used for both sleeping and studying.

Multi-purpose (adjective): having many different uses

Eg: This room is multi-purpose – we use it for meetings, interviews and taking breaks.





55. Study

Questions

- 1 Describe your education
- 2 What is your area of specialization?
- 3 Why did you choose to study that major?
- 4 Do you like your major? (Why? /Why not?)
- 5 What kind of school did you go to as a child?
- 6 What was your favourite subject as a child?
- 7 Do you think your country has an effective education system?
- 8 (Possibly) Are you looking forward to working?

Sample Answers

1 Describe your education

I started primary school when I was 7. 5 years later, I went to secondary school at 12. Then at 16, I made it to a high school for gifted students in my hometown. In my country, highschool education lasts 3 years, then I went onto higher education at the Foreign Trade University where I'm currently studying economics.

2 What is your area of specialization?

Well, my major is External Economics. I have mastered the basics of economics and socioeconomics, combined with business knowledge mainly related to the import and export business.

3 Why did you choose to study that major?

I think it would help to fulfill my dream of introducing my country's agricultural products to the world. Vietnamese goods have a real potential, but they still struggle to make a name for themselves, you know.

4 Do you like your major? (Why? /Why not?)



Yes, of course. Studying economics, especially external economics is interesting and practical. It helps me to keep up with current affairs and it improves my analytical and problem-solving skills as well.

5 What kind of school did you go to as a child?

As a child, I attended a public elementary school. It's quite a big school in my hometown which provides both high quality education and a supportive environment, so I think I was quite lucky.

6 What was your favourite subject as a child?

Well, I used to be very passionate about drawing when I was a little girl. It was fun to work with brushes and colors, you know, as it was the time when I could indulge in my own creative world.

7 Do you think your country has an effective education system?

To be honest, I don't think so. Our system has somehow become unduly stressful, does not promote creativity and the ability to be critical due to the fact that our society still cares way too much about grades and schools consequently focuses on an exam-driven curriculum, which I find quite impractical.

8 (Possibly) Are you looking forward to working?

Absolutely! It's great to join the workforce, especially when I can do the job I love. Not only will it pay the bills, but it'll also give me the joy of making a contribution. It's hard to be happy and fulfilled without working, you know.

Vocabulary

Higher education [n] post-18 learning that take places at universities

Eg: According to a research, nearly 50 percent of Vietnamese students in U.S. **higher education** are studying either business or engineering, with business-related majors making up 38 percent of all enrolments in 2012/13.

Master [v] learn how to do something well

Eg: She lived in Italy for several years but never quite **mastered** the language.

Make a name for oneself [idiom] become famous and respected by a lot of people

Eg: *By the time he was thirty-five, he had made a name for himself as a successful railway contractor.*

Keep up with [idiom] be aware of



Eg: *Even though he's been travelling, he's kept up with what's going on back home.*

Analytical [adj] using analysis or logical reasoning

Eg: **Analytical skills** are essential in the workplace to ensure necessary problem solving occurs to keep productivity and other areas of the workforce functioning smoothly.

Elementary school [n] primary school, school for children between 7-11 years old (in Vietnam)

Eg: It's essential that children at the official entry age for **elementary school** attend classes fully.

Unduly [adj] excessively/ to a level that more than is necessary, acceptable, or reasonable

Eg: For every new parent, the decision about whether to vaccinate his or her child has been **unduly** stressful

Exam-driven curriculum [expression] the courses taught a school, college, which focus on teaching what will be on the exam

Eg: Many parents believe that **exam-driven curriculum** can change their kid's attitude towards school in profoundly negative ways.

Pay the bills [idioms] provide enough income to sustain one's lifestyle

Eg: Being a dentist isn't so glamorous, but it **pays the bills**.



56. Work

Questions

- 1 What do you do?
- 2 What are your responsibilities?
- 3 Why did you choose to do that type of work (or, that job)?
- 4 Is there some other kind of work you would rather do?
- 5 Describe the company or organization you work for
- 6 Do you enjoy your work?
- 7 What do you like about your job?
- 8 What do you dislike about your job?
- 9 (Possibly) Do you miss being a student?

Sample Answers

1 What do you do?

I'm currently working as a graphic designer for a fashion magazine for youngsters

2 What are your responsibilities?

Well I'm mainly responsible for designing the cover of the magazine. I normally work with the concept team to make sure that the final product will both attract the potential buyer's attention and express the theme of the magazine.

3 Why did you choose to do that type of work (or, that job)?

I guess it's because of my artistic passion. The process of creating beautiful things is somehow intriguing to me, so I chose to be a graphic designer, which combines both art and technology.

It's quite interesting, you know.

4 Is there some other kind of work you would rather do?



Well, if possible, I'd like to be a freelance writer. Actually, I'm a big fan of action movies, and I also care about healthy living, so, I'd love to write about these topics and share my stories with people of the same interest.

5 Describe the company or organization you work for

My company is not huge, it's just a small art design office, but is definitely an inspirational workplace with a young, creative, and extremely passionate team. We work on the basis of mutual understanding and respect for each other, so it's kind of an ideal environment for me.

6 Do you enjoy your work?

Most of the time. It's rewarding to co-work on projects with amazing people in an open and supportive environment to bring out an art production that will ultimately give me a sense of satisfaction and pride.

7 What do you like about your job?

Well, the perk of being a graphic designer is that you'll surround yourself with inspiring images every day. My daily working life involves seeking out inspiration in all sorts of places, researching incredible illustrations and graphics, and creating them too. It's great, I think.

8 What do you dislike about your job?

What I don't like about this job is that our personal taste in design varies, and normally I'll have to do a thousand edits to get the final product that meets the demand of my boss while still * relating / staying faithful to / remaining true to the initial concept.

* conform means 'to behave according to the usual standards of behaviour that are expected by a group or society' – this does not relate to things like 'concepts'.

9 (Possibly) Do you miss being a student?

Sometimes, when I'm burdened with heavy workloads or the pressure of everyday life, I recall the memories of being a student. We were all carefree and innocent back then. It's a precious time that I cherish.

Vocabulary

theme [n] the main subject of a talk, book, film, etc.

Example: The father-daughter relationship is a recurring **theme** in her novels.

Intriguing [adj] very interesting because of being unusual or mysterious



Example: The Huns are *intriguing* not only because of their notoriously hawkish history, but also because of their place as middlemen between Mongol and Turkic ethnicity

On the basis of [idiom] base on

Example: Discrimination **on the basis of** race, gender, age or disability is not allowed.

Rewarding [adj] giving pleasure, satisfaction

Example: The most **rewarding** aspect of living forever is you have unlimited time to perfect your abilities and accumulate wealth.

Ultimately [adv] at the end of a process, period of time, etc.

Example: Everything will **ultimately** depend on what is said at the meeting with the directors next week.

Perk [n] an advantage or something extra that you are given because of your job

Example: A company car and a mobile phone are some of **the perks** that come with the job.

Conform (to something) [v] obey the rule or reach the necessary stated standard

Example: Before buying the baby's car seat, make sure that it **conforms to** the official safety standards.

Cherish [v] keep hopes, memories in your mind because they are important to you and bring you pleasure

Example: I **cherish** the memories of the time we spent together.



57. Hometown

Questions

- 1 What's (the name of) your hometown?
- 2 Is that a big city or a small place?
- 3 How long have you been living there?
- 4 Do you like your hometown?
- 5 Is there anything you dislike about it?
- 6 What do you like(most) about your hometown?
- 7 Do you think you will continue living there for a long time?

Sample Answers

1 What's (the name of) your hometown?

I'm from Hue, which is a city in central Vietnam. Talking about Hue, people immediately think of the capitals, golden palaces, temples, shrines, and gorgeous dancing stage, **majestic** tombs, and ancient meditative landscapes.

2 Is that a big city or a small place?

Well, the city is quite small as compared to the **vast** cities and provinces in my country. Hue city covers just about 70.5 square kilometers, with a total population of **roughly** 360,000 people.

3 How long have you been living there?

I have been living there ever since I was born, which is 19 years until now. It is a **relatively** long period of time, so I'm really **attached to** this quiet, tranquil city.

4 Do you like your hometown?

(Answer) Yes, absolutely.

(Give a reason for your answer) Hue an area of **outstanding** natural beauty and for me is one of the most beautiful places on earth. It has everything; historical sites, fantastic



beaches, rolling mountains, dense forests and **picturesque** countryside, extraordinary cuisine and hospitable people.

5 Is there anything you dislike about it?

The sole thing that I dislike about the city is probably the weather. In Hue, it **invariably** rains from September to December, which somehow adds up to the blue atmosphere of the city. Sometimes, when the rain is so heavy and **persistent** the city even floods.

6 What do you like(most) about your hometown?

The greatest appeal of Hue city, to my thinking, is its diversity of cuisine, which makes it well-known domestically and even internationally. Hue culinary traditions demand that meals must be presented aesthetically, **harmonizing** food elements, decorations and colors to create a **gastronomic** work of art.

7 Do you think you will continue living there for a long time?

(Answer) Actually I'm not quite sure about that.

(Give a reason for your answer) As I'm planning to study abroad, I may have to live far away from my hometown for a certain amount of time. However, if possible, I still want to **settle down** in this beautiful, peaceful city.

Vocabulary

majestic [adj]: beautiful, powerful, or causing great admiration and respect.

Eg: The majestic Montana scenery will leave you breathless.

vast [adj]: extremely large.

Eg: Navigation across vast stretches of open water was no longer merely as daunting.

roughly [adv]: approximately.

Eg: There has been an increase of roughly 2.25 million.

relatively [adv]: true to a particular degree when compared with other things.

Eg: Sales was relatively low last summer.

(be) attached to [adj]: to like someone or something very much, because you have known them or had them for a long time.

Eg: Regular babysitters can become deeply attached to the children they take care of.

outstanding [adj]: clearly very much better than what is usual.



Eg: Her outstanding performances set a new benchmark for singers throughout the world.

picturesque [adj]: (esp. of a place) attractive in appearance.

Eg: The city is known for its picturesque surroundings and pleasant climate.

invariably [adv]: always (in a negative way).

Eg: High blood pressure is almost invariably accompanied by high blood cholesterol.

persistent [adj]: lasting for a long time or difficult to get rid of.

Eg: Symptoms of the illness include a high temperature and a persistent dry cough.

harmonize [v]: to bring ideas, feelings, or actions into agreement, or to be a pleasing combination of different parts.

Eg: We need to harmonize the different approaches into a unified plan.

gastronomic[adj]: relating to the preparation and consumption (= eating) of good food.

Eg: This dish is a gastronomic delight.

settle down [v]: to start living in a place where you intend to stay for a long time, usually with your partner.

Eg: Hung settled down after his marriage.



58. Jeans

Questions

- 1 Do you wear jeans?
- 2 How often do you wear jeans?
- 3 Do you like wearing jeans, why?
- 4 Why do you think jeans are popular?

Sample Answers

1 Do you wear jeans?

(Answer) Yes, I do.

(Give a reason for your answer) I usually wear jeans made with stretch **fabric**, because I am always chasing comfort and ease of movement. I **can't stand** feeling trapped in my clothes. Always be comfortable so your light can shine.

2 How often do you wear jeans?

(Answer) On a daily basis, I guess.

(Give a reason for your answer) I wear jeans with **commitment** and **obsession**. I really give them a workout. I tend to choose a pair that I like, then wear them every single day, until they feel like an extension of my body. I just can't break **the habit of** choosing jeans as my main outfit of the day.

3 Do you like wearing jeans, why?

(Answer) Yes, I do love wearing jeans a lot.

(Give a reason for your answer) I wear jeans because they are convenient. They go with everything, and are perfectly **versatile**. I travel often, and I like to pack light, so jeans are a great **staple** for mixing and matching.

4 Why do you think jeans are popular?

(Answer) The reasons are varied.



(Give a reason for your answer) Jeans stand out as a **preferable** option for many people because they are **durable**, both in style and in utility. Besides, they're **neutral**, while also showing allegiance to a classic, functional aesthetic.

Vocabulary

fabric [n]: cloth or material for making clothes, covering furniture, etc.

Eg: The fibres are woven into fabric.

can't stand + V-ing [expression]: used to say that you do not like someone or something at all, or that you think that something is extremely unpleasant:

Eg: Lily can't stand working in an office.

commitment [n]: a promise or firm decision to do something.

Eg: Players must make a commitment to play for a full season.

obsession [n]: something or someone that you think about all the time.

Eg: He has an obsession with cleanliness.

break the habit of [expression]: to stop doing a routine action or activity.

Eg: I struggled to break the habit of biting my nails, but getting regular manicures helped.

versatile [adj]: able to change easily from one activity to another or able to be used for many different purposes.

Eg: He's a very versatile young actor who's as happy in highbrow dramas as he is in TV comedies.

staple [n]: a main product or part of something.

Eg: Phosphate has been a staple of this area for many years.

preferable [adj]: better or more suitable.

Eg: Surely a diplomatic solution is preferable to war.

durable [adj]: able to last a long time without becoming damaged.

Eg: The machines have to be made of durable materials.

neutral [adj]: having features or characteristics that are not easily noticed.

Eg: wants dark red walls, but I'd like a more neutral colour like cream.



59. Concentration

Questions

- 1 What do you need to be focused?
- 2 What might distract you when you are trying to stay focused?
- 3 What do you do to help you concentrate?
- 4 Is it difficult for you to stay focused on something?

Sample Answers

1 What do you need to be focused?

(Answer) Well, I think there are certain ways that keep myself always **fixated** on a task.

(Give a reason for your answer) I would normally set aside a specific time and place and request to be left alone for a period of time. Another **alternative** for me is to seek out a quiet location where I know I will be able to work undisturbed.

2 What might distract you when you are trying to stay focused?

(Answer) Well, there are many things.

(Give a reason for your answer) I sometimes **abandon** a task because I am disturbed by either a noise or sound, or other thoughts creeping into my mind suddenly.

3 What do you do to help you concentrate?

(Answer) Whenever my work requires complete concentration, I played the finger gyroscope for about 5 minutes to be mentally well-prepared to undertake the task.

(Give a reason for your answer) All you need to do when playing this toy is holding the spinner in one hand and the other hand spinning rapidly using small continuous strikes with **indefinite** practice. What really amazes me is that it keeps **rotating** for a long time and seems to go on nonstop. All my vision is **captivated** by this little instrument.

4 Is it difficult for you to stay focused on something?



(Answer) For a very long period of time, I suffered great **concentration issues** and was not able to focus on one thing for a long period of time.

(Give a reason for your answer) Until now, my focus **capacity has** become sharper as I have been trying different ways to concentrate on my important work. The key here is to **prioritize** and carry out your task in order with absolute **commitment**.

Vocabulary

fixate [v]: to think about something too much and find it difficult to stop.

Eg: High achievers sometimes fixate on their own flaws.

alternative [n]: an alternative plan or method is one that you can use if you do not want to use another one.

Eg: The opposition parties have so far failed to set out an alternative strategy.

abandon [v]: to leave a place, thing, or person, usually for ever.

Eg: By the time the rebel troops arrived, the village had already been abandoned.

indefinite [adj]: not exact, not clear, or without clear limits.

Eg: The project has been postponed for an indefinite period.

rotate [v]: to turn or cause something to turn in a circle, especially around a fixed point.

Eg: The satellite slowly rotates as it circles the earth.

captivate [v]: to hold the attention of someone by being extremely interesting, exciting, pleasant, or attractive.

Eg: With her beauty and charm, she captivated film audiences everywhere.

concentration issues [expression]: problems related to one's concentration.

Eg: Tiredness and emotional stress can cause concentration issues in most people

capacity [n]: someone's ability to do a particular thing.

Eg: She has a great capacity for hard work.

prioritize [v]: to decide which of a group of things are the most important so that you can deal with them first.

Eg: You must learn to prioritize your work.

commitment [n]: a promise or firm decision to do something.

Eg: Players must make a commitment to play for a full season.



60. Voice

Questions

- 1 Has your voice ever changed?
- 2 Do you enjoy recording your voice and listening to it?
- 3 Do you like your own voice?
- 4 Does your voice sound familiar to your parents?

Sample Answers

- 1 Has your voice ever changed?

(Answer) Yes, it actually changes most often when I **come down with** serious flu.

(Give a reason for your answer) When I'm sick with a cold or flu, the acute **laryngitis** leads to my **temporary** hoarseness. I think it causes swelling that alters the way my vocal cords vibrate, making me sound deeper and huskier.

- 2 Do you enjoy recording your voice and listening to it?

(Answer) I guess the answer is no.

(Give a reason for your answer) The tone of my voice is pretty "soft" and "**mature**" when I speak in person. But, when I'm on the phone, the sound of my voice shifts into a **ridiculous** childish tone. I assume that most people in fact don't like their voice when they hear it played back from a recording, because it's not the same voice they hear in their head.

- 3 Do you like your own voice?

(Answer) Well, it's always weird to hear myself recorded, but I don't dislike my voice.

(Give a reason for your answer) It's **comparatively** low and **resonant** for a girl and you can definitely hear me in a room. I have always wanted a higher pitched voice but since many have told me that I have a wonderful pitch, I changed my opinion about it.

- 4 Does your voice sound familiar to your parents?

(Answer) Well, many people told me that my mom and I shared some **similar** traits in terms of voice.



(Give a reason for your answer) I think my voice is the perfect **combination** between that of my mom and dad, and I'm **content** with it.

Vocabulary

come down with [expression]: to start to suffer from an illness, especially one that is not serious.

Eg: I think I'm coming down with the flu.

laryngitis [n]: a painful swelling of the larynx, usually caused by an infection.

Eg: Carol's flu developed into laryngitis.

temporary [adj]: not lasting or needed for very long.

Eg: The ceasefire will only provide a temporary solution to the crisis.

mature [adj]: mature people behave like adults in a way that shows they are well developed emotionally.

Eg: He's very mature for his age.

ridiculous [adj]: stupid or unreasonable and deserving to be laughed at.

Eg: Most advertisements of this product sound ridiculous.

comparatively [adv]: as compared to something else.

Eg: The test is comparatively easy for most of us.

resonant [adj]: clear and loud, or causing sounds to be clear and loud.

Eg: Huy has a deep, resonant voice.

similar [adj]: looking or being almost, but not exactly, the same.

Eg: My father and I have similar views on politics.

combination [n]: the mixture you get when two or more things are combined.

Eg: A combination of tiredness and boredom caused me to fall asleep.

contented [adj]: happy and satisfied.

Eg: He won't be content until he's upset everyone in the office.



61. Walking

Questions

- 1 Where do you usually take a walk?
- 2 Do you think people will walk more or not in the future?
- 3 Do you walk more often in the past?
- 4 Do you walk a lot?

Sample Answers

1 Where do you usually take a walk?

(Answer) Well, I don't walk in any particular place. I like to walk with my friends to the park so that we can talk and feel less exhausted on the way.

2 Do you think people will walk more or not in the future?

(Answer) No, I don't think so.

(Give a reason for your answer) Under the pressure of such a fast-paced life, people seem to be increasingly reluctant to have a walk regularly. Modern citizens think that driving is a more **preferable** way of travelling which just **eliminates** the **hurdle** that you may otherwise face if there is no public transportation available or pedestrian roads.

3 Do you walk more often in the past?

(Answer) Surprisingly, I walk more often these days than I used to in the past.

(Give a reason for your answer) For a very long period of time, I suffered great **concentration issues** and was not able to focus on one thing for a long period of time. So I took up walking 6 months ago and thanks to this activity, my focus **capacity** became sharper.

4 Do you walk a lot?

(Answer) As often as necessary - which mostly means longer distances, but the walking experience is worth it.

(Give a reason for your answer) Otherwise, I try to use my bicycle, even in winter, to remain **in good shape**. I just happen to like biking, as a sport. Also it proves to be **economical** and **environmentally-friendly**.



Vocabulary

particular [adj]: special, or this and not any other.

Eg: In the light of recent incidents, we are asking our customers to take particular care of their personal belongings.

exhausted [adj]: extremely tired.

Eg: By the time they reached the summit they were exhausted.

preferable [adj]: better or more suitable.

Eg: Surely a diplomatic solution is preferable to war.

eliminate [v]: to remove or take away someone or something.

Eg: Students only have 8 hours of tutorials a week.

hurdle [n]: a frame or fence for jumping over in a race.

Eg: There are still a few technical hurdles to be surmounted before the product can be put on sale to the public.

concentration issues [expression]: problems related to one's concentration.

Eg: Tiredness and emotional stress can cause concentration issues in most people

capacity [n]: someone's ability to do a particular thing.

Eg: She has a great capacity for hard work.

in good shape [expression]: to be prepared and ready to do something.

Eg: All our bags are packed, and we don't have to leave for another hour, so we're in good shape.

economical [adj]: not using a lot of fuel, money, etc.

Eg: There's increasing demand for cars that are more economical on fuel.

Environmentally-friendly [adj]: not harmful to the environment.

Eg: There are a growing number of investors backing firms that are environmentally-friendly.



62. Movies

Questions

- 1 What is your favourite movie?
- 2 Do your friends like this movie?
- 3 What kinds of movies do you think young people like?
- 4 Do you want to be a movie star?

Sample Answers

1 What is your favourite movie?

(Answer) Well, I am an **avid** movie fan, and my favourite movie is Parasite, a 2019 South Korean black comedy thriller film directed by Bong Joon-ho.

(Give a reason for your answer) It received widespread critical **acclaim** and won the Palme d'Or at the 2019 Cannes Film Festival, becoming the first Korean film to receive the award.

2 Do your friends like this movie?

(Answer) Well, it was actually my close friends who introduced me to this movie, and we watched it together in the cinema right on the day it premiered.

(Give a reason for your answer) We both shared an **immense** love for movies with exotic themes and twisting plots, as these excited our curiosity. As expected, Parasite is generally **gripping** and finely crafted, which left an unforgettable impression on us.

3 What kinds of movies do you think young people like?

(Answer) Well, Action and Comedy are possibly the most popular **genres** of films among youngsters.

(Explain your reason or reasons) The young will feel relaxed or **genuinely** interested in these styles of film. I also think that movies which depict real life stories or have an **unpredictable** plot also **capture the attention** of those of a younger age.

4 Do you want to be a movie star?



(Answer) Well, not really.

(Give a reason for your answer) I do not have any **particular** talent for acting, singing, or dancing. Besides, I value privacy, but being an actor means you are constantly surrounded with paparazzi and public attention. I just can't imagine having that kind of life.

Vocabulary

avid [n]: extremely eager or interested.

Eg: He took an avid interest in the project.

acclaim [n]: public approval and praise.

Eg: Despite the critical acclaim, the novel did not sell well.

premiere [v]: if a show, film, etc. premieres or if it is premiered, the first public performance or showing takes place.

Eg: The play premiered in New York.

immense [adj]: extremely large in size or degree.

Eg: They spent an immense amount of time getting the engine into perfect condition.

gripping [adj]: something that is gripping is so interesting or exciting that it holds your attention completely.

Eg: I found the book so gripping that I couldn't put it down.

genre [n]: a style, especially in the arts, that involves a particular set of characteristics.

Eg: What genre does the book fall into - comedy or tragedy?

genuinely [adv]: really and sincerely.

Eg: I'm genuinely sorry for what I said.

unpredictable [adj]: likely to change suddenly and without reason and therefore not able to be predicted (= expected before it happens) or depended on.

Eg: The weather there can be unpredictable - one minute it's blue skies and the next minute it's pouring rain.

capture one's attention [expression]: to interest someone.

Eg: Most of the textbooks we looked at were too dull to capture students' attention.

particular [adj]: special, or this and not any other.

Eg: In the light of recent incidents, we are asking our customers to take particular care of their personal belongings.



63. Languages

Questions

- 1 Will you learn other languages in the future?
- 2 Do you think it is difficult to learn a new language?
- 3 What language can you speak?
- 4 Why do you learn English?

Sample Answers

1 Will you learn other languages in the future?

(Answer) Well, my foremost choice would be French.

(Give a reason for your answer) On the one hand, I **am really into** travelling to France because this nation boasts a diverse range of culture like literature, architecture, fashion, and cooking. A good command of French will **equip** me with the necessary languages to interact with its native speakers. Besides, I know a lot of **engaging** French movies so that's quite a **compelling** reason to learn their language.

2 Do you think it is difficult to learn a new language?

(Answer) Yes, of course it is. Well, there are different challenges for different people and for different languages.

(Give a reason for your answer) For the language itself, grammar may **baffle** many learners, while others can't pick up pronunciation and struggle to memorize vocabulary. Alphabets can be challenging, especially the **complicated** ones like Kanji or Tibetan. Besides, other **obstacles** like the lack of time and resources generally present themselves during the learning process.

3 What language can you speak?

(Answer) I can speak Vietnamese and English and just a bit of Korean.

(Give a reason for your answer) I try to **expose** myself to the language according to my hobbies and interests. Watching movies with subtitles, reading books on my favorite topics or listening to music are of great help to my linguistic command.



4 Why do you learn English?

(Answer) There are many reasons to learn English nowadays.

(Give a reason for your answer) I learn English out of academic, diplomatic, commercial or other practical considerations because it is the preferred language when communicating with most foreigners. Practically, learning foreign language helps to broaden my opportunities for becoming a global citizen.

Vocabulary

(be) into [adj]: to be interested in something.

Eg: My daughter is into sports all of sudden and really wants to take tennis lessons.

equip [v]: to provide a person or a place with objects that are necessary for a particular purpose.

Eg: All the police officers were equipped with shields to defend themselves against the rioters.

engaging [adj]: pleasant, attractive, and charming.

Eg: He has an engaging manner.

compelling [adj]: If a reason, argument, etc. is compelling, it makes you believe it or accept it because it is so strong.

Eg: It's a fairly compelling argument for going.

baffle [v]: to cause someone to be completely unable to understand or explain something.

Eg: She was completely baffled by his strange behaviour.

complicated [adj]: involving a lot of different parts, in a way that is difficult to understand.

Eg: The rules are rather complicated to follow.

obstacle [n]: something that blocks you so that movement, going forward, or action is prevented or made more difficult.

Eg: The biggest obstacle in our way was a tree trunk in the road.

expose [v]: to create conditions that allow someone to have the opportunity to learn or experience new things.

Eg: Kate was exposed to new ideas when she went to college.

diplomatic [adj]: involving diplomats or the management of the relationships between countries.



Eg: All diplomatic attempts at a peaceful solution to the crisis have been fruitless.

broaden [n]: to increase knowledge, experience.

Eg: Many people agree that travel broadens the mind.





64. Friends

Questions

- 1 What do you think makes good friends?
- 2 Do you keep in contact with friends from your childhood?
- 3 What kinds of people do you like to make friends with?
- 4 Do you think you are a good friend to others?

Sample Answers

1 What do you think makes good friends?

(Answer) Well, there are some specific attributes that make good friends.

(Give a reason for your answer) To me, a good friend should be dependable and sincere who is always willing to do stupid things with you and give you a lot of motivation to overcome fierce times. I usually don't **get on well with** over-sensitive or complicated people.

2 Do you keep in contact with friends from your childhood?

(Answer) To be honest, I don't stay in touch with a lot of my childhood friends.

(Give a reason for your answer) I'm quite an **introvert** and somehow **prudent** in relationships, so I just talk to one old friend, Phuong Chau, in whom I can **confide**. We have known each other since primary school and maintained this special bond till now.

3 What kinds of people do you like to make friends with?

(Answer) I like people who are honest with themselves and others and not **pretentious**. Besides, I'm also attracted to those who share a good **rapport** with everyone but at the same time don't get afraid to **take a stand**, who handle stressful situations with humor, who have self-respect but no ego and are willing to explore the world around them.

4 Do you think you are a good friend to others?

(Answer) Well, I hope so.



(Give a reason for your answer) From my perspective, good friends are especially important during times of crisis and **turbulence**. When my friends go through a hard time, they never fail to cheer me up and help sail me through both emotional and academic **setbacks**.

Vocabulary

attribute [n]: a person that you have met but do not know well.

Eg: He gradually lost contact with all his old acquaintances.

get on (well) with [expression]: to have a pleasant relationship with someone; to be friends with someone.

Eg: I've always gotten on with Amanda—I think she's very nice.

introvert [n]: someone who is shy, quiet, and prefers to spend time alone rather than often being with other people.

Eg: If introverts are easier to socialize, this level will be achieved with less effort and attention than with extraverts.

prudent [adj]: careful and avoiding risks.

Eg: It's always prudent to read a contract carefully before signing it.

confide [v]: to tell something secret or personal to someone who you trust not to tell anyone else.

Eg: As sisters, they have always confided in each other.

pretentious [adj]: trying to appear or sound more important or clever than you are, especially in matters of art and literature.

Eg: John is a pretentious art critic

rapport [n]: a good understanding of someone and an ability to communicate well with them.

Eg: We'd worked together for years and developed a close/good rapport.

take a stand [expression]: to take a position in opposition to someone or something; to oppose or resist someone or something.

Eg: The treasurer took a stand, and others agreed.

turbulence [n]: a state of confusion without any order.

Eg: The era was characterized by political and cultural turbulence.



setback [n]: something that happens that delays or prevents a process from developing.

Eg: There has been a slight/temporary setback in our plans.





65. Rubbish

Questions

- 1 Why do some people throw garbage on the street?
- 2 What do you do with garbage when you are on the street?
- 3 How do you feel when you see people throw garbage on the street?
- 4 Do you think your city is clean or not?

Sample Answers

- 1 **Why do some people throw garbage on the street?**

Personally, I think the primary reason why people drop litter on the street is because of their ignorance in keeping the street clean. There are even some trash bins but people still throw garbage somewhere else.

- 2 **What do you do with garbage when you are on the street?**

Well, I would just pick it up and throw it into a trash bin. It doesn't cost me anything to do that and I can even make an influence on other people to do the same.

- 3 **How do you feel when you see people throw garbage on the street?**

To be honest, it really pisses me off to see a person litter the street. If I were that person, I would feel ashamed because of what I did.

- 4 **Do you think your city is clean or not?**

Not really. There are some places that are heavily contaminated with chemical waste because of the existence of industrial zones, however; our local authorities are really working on this issue to help make the city clean by raising awareness among citizens and imposing stricter laws.

Vocabulary

Ignorance (noun): lack of knowledge or information.

Example: Our ignorance just makes environmental problems worse.



Make an influence (verb): Influence is the power to have an important effect on someone or something. If someone influences someone else, they are changing a person or thing in an indirect but important way.

Example: He hopes to make an influence on people to download the application.

Piss somebody off (phrasal verb): annoy someone.

Example: He never helps with the housework and it's starting to piss me off.

Contaminated (adjective): having been made impure by exposure to or addition of a poisonous or polluting substance.

Example: This area is heavily contaminated with untreated waste so people have to move to another place.

Raise awareness of something (verb): Awareness is the state of knowing something, such as the awareness that the sun comes up every morning.

Example: The campaign aims to raise awareness of protecting the environment.





66. Perfume

Questions

- 1 Do you use perfume?
- 2 What kind of perfume do you like?
- 3 What does perfume mean to you?
- 4 Do you give perfume as a gift?

Sample Answers

1 Do you use perfume?

(Answer) Yes, I do, but not very often.

(Give a reason for your answer) I try not to wear perfume around people who might have a sensitivity to it. I know a few people who get a headache when they're around people wearing fragrances, so if I'm not sure I just don't. But there is no doubt that perfumes can be a woman's best friend at certain times. It is an effective method to capture attention or form a good impression.

2 What kind of perfume do you like?

(Answer) I am not a perfume enthusiast, so I don't possess many kinds of perfume. I received a bottle from Zara as a gift and I use it sparingly, whenever on special occasions. It just makes me feel bold yet airy and comfortable. I can detect hints of vanilla and cinnamon and a top note of orange gives this a nice citrusy twist but it is by no means a fruity scent.

3 What does perfume mean to you?

(Answer) Fragrance or perfume, is evocative of an innumerable amount of things; memories, places, people, the list goes on. There's always one particular scent that reminds you of a perfect holiday you took last summer or of your lovely ex-boyfriend. And the same goes for the perfume that makes you feel sexy; your 'going out' perfume and even your 'everyday' perfume will conjure up some memories of people and places, and good times.

4 Do you give perfume as a gift?



(Answer) Well, not really.

(Give a reason for your answer) I only know some **mainstream** fragrances and I could hardly guess one's tastes, so it's a risky kind of gift most of the time. A perfume could be an option as a gift for our **spouse**, parents or children and eventually siblings or very close friends. It is an **inappropriate** present for a colleague, someone we barely know or someone we have work relationships with.

Vocabulary

sensitivity [n]: the quality of being easily upset by the things people say or do, or causing people to be upset, embarrassed, or angry: sự nhạy cảm với

Eg: I should have warned you about her sensitivity to criticism.

capture [v]: if something captures your imagination or attention, you feel very interested and excited by it.

Eg: The American drive to land a man on the Moon captured the imagination/attention of the whole world.

sparingly [adv]: in small amounts, or without wasting any.

Eg: There wasn't enough coal during the war, so we had to use it sparingly.

detect [v]: to notice something that is partly hidden or not clear or to discover something.

Eg: Some sounds cannot be detected by the human ear.

by no means [expression]: not at all.

Eg: It is by no means clear what the president can do to end the strike.

evocative [adj]: making you remember or imagine something pleasant.

Eg: On this model, two or more different symbolic systems can be equally expressive and evocative of genuine religious experience.

conjure up [v]: to make a picture or idea appear in someone's mind.

Eg: The glittering ceremony conjured up images of Russia's imperial past.

mainstream [adj]: considered normal, and having or using ideas, beliefs, etc. that are accepted by most people.

Eg: The story was largely ignored by the mainstream press.



spouse [n]: a person's husband or wife.

Eg: In 60 percent of the households surveyed both spouses went out to work.

inappropriate [adj]: unsuitable.

Eg: His casual behavior was wholly inappropriate for such a formal occasion.





67. Social Network

Questions

- 1 How often do you use social networking applications?
- 2 Why do you use social networking applications?
- 3 What are the disadvantages of social networking applications?
- 4 Do you think it is good to make friends online?

Sample Answers

- 1 How often do you use social networking applications?

(Answer) On a daily basis.

(Give a reason for your answer) Browsing on social networking applications is part of my routine. However, I'm trying to resist the **temptation** to use these applications too frequently, because it takes up quite a large amount of my time.

- 2 Why do you use social networking applications?

(Answer) For several reasons.

(Give a reason for your answer) I find Facebook **particularly** useful because it provides a community space to make announcements and share with others. I also dip in and out of Twitter, LinkedIn and Instagram - usually **in response to** notification alerts. Generally, social networking applications help people **establish** better relationships with their family and friends.

- 3 What are the disadvantages of social networking applications?

(Answer) Obviously, sharing too much information on social platforms can sometimes put you in trouble and there are privacy concerns also. Social media can also lead to **cyberbullying** and lead to serious stress, anxiety and depression in heavy users, especially youngsters. **Excessive** reliance on the Virtual world could **diminish** a person's ability to have a face to face conversation.

- 4 Do you think it is good to make friends online?

(Answer) Well, it depends.



(Give a reason for your answer) While most people feel the need to cement their friendships based on real social interactions, I'm comfortable with talking to people I've met online as long as there's a **mutual** exchange of ideas. However, I would caution those who seek friends online only because they are socially insecure or lonely. Using online platforms as an **avenue** for friendship does not solve your problems and it might just make it worse.

Vocabulary

on a daily basis [expression]: how often something happens or is done

Eg: Jim goes to school on a daily basis.

temptation [n]: the wish to do or have something that you know you should not do or have.

Eg: As a young actress, she resisted the temptation to move to Hollywood.

particularly [adv]: especially, or more than usual.

Eg: We're particularly interested to hear from people who speak two or more European languages.

in response to [expression]: to reply something.

Eg: The subject has to select the correct word among four alternatives in response to a question.

establish [v]: to start having a relationship with, or communicating with another person, company, country, or organization.

Eg: There is a strong need to establish effective communication links between staff, parents, pupils, and external bodies.

cyber bullying [expression]: cyber bullying is bullying that takes place over digital devices like cell phones, computers, and tablets.

Eg: 68% of teens agree that cyberbullying is a serious problem.

excessive [adj]: too much.

Eg: Excessive exercise can sometimes cause health problems.

diminish [v]: to reduce or be reduced in size, importance, or value.

Eg: Investors can diversify their holdings in order to diminish risk.

mutual [adj]: feeling the same emotion, or doing the same thing to or for each other.

Eg: Theirs was a partnership based on mutual respect, trust and understanding.

avenue [n]: a method or way of doing something.

Eg: China and the United States are exploring avenues of military cooperation.



68. Maths

Questions

- 1 Do you think mathematics is important?
- 2 Do you think it is difficult to learn mathematics well?
- 3 Are girls generally good at mathematics?
- 4 Do you often use a calculator?

Sample Answers

1 Do you think mathematics is important?

(Answer) Yes, of course it is.

(Give a reason for your answer) Math is incredibly important in our lives and, without realizing it, we use mathematical concepts, as well as the skills we learn from doing math problems, every day. The laws of mathematics **govern** everything around us, and without a good understanding of them, one can **encounter** significant problems in life. It encourages deliberate, creative, and **systematic** thinking.

2 Do you think it is difficult to learn mathematics well?

(Answer) Well, it is to a certain extent.

(Give a reason for your answer) Math is so overwhelming for so many students, including myself. Many children nowadays are reported to struggle to **grasp** math concepts. Math seems quite **problematic** because most people have learned it in a way that is quite **restrictive**, and this is mainly the fault of the school system for teaching math.

3 Are girls generally good at mathematics?

(Answer) From my observations and personal experience, they are not at all.

(Give a reason for your answer) Girls tend to have less positive math attitudes: They have higher levels of math anxiety and lower levels of confidence in their math skills. This means even when girls show similar performance levels to boys, they are often less sure of themselves. In general, boys are better at analyzing and thinking critically, thus outperforming



their female counterparts in scientific subjects, while girls are better at memorizing and learning languages.

4 Do you often use a calculator?

(Answer) Not very often.

(Give a reason for your answer) As I am an adult now, there is little need to solve complicated calculations. However, I sometimes make use of an online calculator to **verify** important calculations, which I find quite **handy** and more reliable.

Vocabulary

govern [v]: to have a controlling influence on something.

Eg: Prices of goods are governed by the cost of the raw materials, as well as by the cost of production and distribution.

encounter [v]: to experience something, especially something unpleasant.

Eg: The army is reported to be encountering considerable resistance.

systematic [adj]: according to an agreed set of methods or organized plan.

Eg: We've got to be more systematic in the way that we approach this task.

grasp [v]: to understand something, especially something difficult.

Eg: I think I managed to grasp the main points of the lecture.

problematic [adj]: full of problems or difficulties.

Eg: Getting everyone there on time might prove problematic.

restrictive [adj]: limiting the freedom of someone or preventing something from growing.

Eg: The college is not able to expand because of restrictive planning laws

analyze [v]: to study something in a systematic and careful way.

Eg: In the article, several experienced diplomats analyzed the president's foreign policy.

outperform [v]: to do well in a particular job or activity compared to others of a similar type.

Eg: The company has consistently outperformed its rivals this season.

verify [v]: to prove that something exists or is true, or to make certain that something is correct.



Eg: These numbers are surprisingly high and they'll have to be verified.

handy [adj]: useful or convenient.

Eg: We found it handy to have a cellular phone.





69. Travelling

Questions

- 1 Do you like to travel?
- 2 Do you often travel by air?
- 3 How long was the longest trip you took?
- 4 Which country would you like to travel to in the future?
- 5 Would you like to travel to space?

Sample Answers

- 1 Do you like to travel?

(Answer) Yes, absolutely.

(Explain) Travelling is my top hobby because whenever I travel, I can meet and get to know many new people from different cultures and nations, which helps me to **broaden my horizons**.

- 2 Do you often travel by air?

(Answer) No, not much.

(Explain) Travelling by air too often is **out of my reach** for a student like me. However, I do travel by air once or twice a year to an ASEAN member because the airfares to these destinations are quite affordable.

- 3 How long was the longest trip you took?

(Answer) I went on a 9-day trip to Thailand and this was my longest trip ever.

(Extend) I spent 3 days in Bangkok, 2 days in Pattaya and 3 days in Phuket. The remaining one day was allocated for moving.

- 4 Which country would you like to travel to in the future?



(Answer) Italy is my dream destination **(explain)** as it is **home to** the most stunning churches in the world. Also, I love the Italian culture, language and friendly people whom I've met in Vietnam.

5 Would you like to travel to space?

(Answer) Yes, it sounds a bit weird and scary though.

(Explain) I am curious about how other planets look and how I would be when there is no gravity. This idea really scares me off but as it sounds pretty intriguing, I would like to try travelling to space once.

Vocabulary

To leave for: to reserve or save something for someone or for a later use

Eg: Before **leaving for** Singapore, we had to check if we had all the documents needed at least twice.

To broaden my horizons: expand one's range of interests, activities, and knowledge.

Eg: We should go to other countries, getting to know more people and their cultures to **broaden our horizons**.

Out of someone's reach: not close enough to be touched or picked up by someone

Eg: We should make sure that all the dangerous things are kept **out of children's reach**.

To go on a trip: to travel, to go on a journey, to go on holiday (often quite short)

Eg: We **went on** a long trip to Thailand last summer.

Be home to: to be the abode, domicile, dwelling, dwelling place, habitation, house, pad (slang) residence.

Eg: A rain forest is **home to** a wide range of species of animals and plants.



70. Borrowing/Lending

Questions

- 1 Have you borrowed books from others?
- 2 Have you ever borrowed money from others?
- 3 Do you like lending things to others?
- 4 How do you feel when people don't return things, they borrowed from you?

Sample Answers

1 Have you borrowed books from others?

(Answer) Yes, I sometimes do.

(Give a reason for your answer) I'm an **avid** reader of books and novels, but there are certain books I may not be able to afford. Therefore, I borrow them from my close friends occasionally and afterwards, I treat them to a drink **in return for** their generosity.

2 Have you ever borrowed money from others?

(Answer) Yes, I have but quite rarely.

(Give a reason for your answer) I borrowed money from my uncle to study for university, and it turned out alright. I paid him on time and there were never any problems. I paid it off after a few years and we are still close. Having said that, I usually don't **recommend** borrowing money from family members or close friends. I've seen it go badly too many times. When you borrow money from a relative, and miss a payment, things get very **awkward** when they have to come collect.

3 Do you like lending things to others?

(Answer) Well, to be honest, the answer is no.

(Give a reason for your answer) Too often the things that you lend don't return, and they very **seldom** return in the same condition, minus ordinary **wear and tear**. In my opinion, unless we have complete trust in someone, we rarely feel ready to lend valuable or too **fragile** items to others.



4 How do you feel when people don't return things they borrowed from you?

(Answer) Well, it depends.

(Give a reason for your answer) If that object is too important to be stolen from me, I will **persist** and try to get it back. If I can spare the item or money, I would probably **write it off** and consider it a lesson learned. All of these choices will probably hurt the relationship, which is why I **assume** it's generally best not to borrow from or lend to someone you want to remain friends with.

Vocabulary

avid [adj]: extremely eager or interested.

Eg: She hadn't seen him for six months and was avid for news.

in return for [expression]: as an exchange for something.

Eg: The farmer offered us food in return for our work.

recommend [v]: to suggest that someone or something would be good or suitable for a particular job or purpose, or to suggest that a particular action should be done.

Eg: I can recommend the chicken in mushroom sauce - it's delicious.

awkward [adj]: difficult to use, do, or deal with.

Eg: Some of the questions were rather awkward.

seldom [adv]: almost never.

Eg: Seldom do we receive any apology when mistakes are made.

wear and tear [expression]: the damage that happens to an object in ordinary use during a period.

Eg: Seat covers on buses take a lot of wear and tear.

fragile [adj]: easily damaged, broken, or harmed.

Eg: Be careful with that vase - it's very fragile.

persist [v]: to try to do or continue doing something in a determined but often unreasonable way.

Eg: If he persists in asking awkward questions, then send him to the boss.

write something off [v]: to decide that a particular person or thing will not be useful, important, or successful.

Eg: A lot of companies seem to write people off if they're over.

assume [v]: to accept something as true without question or proof.



Eg: We can't assume (that) he's innocent simply because he says he is.





71. Reading

Questions

- 1 Do you like reading?
- 2 What kind of books do you read?
- 3 Do you read electronic books?
- 4 Do you read books related to your profession?

Sample Answers

1 Do you like reading?

Definitely. It is one of my hobbies to relieve stress and broaden my knowledge when I have free time.

2 What kind of books do you read?

Well, I'm very into science fiction books, which entertain me a lot, besides giving interesting information.

3 Do you read electronic books?

Not really. I am a big fan of printed books since it provides a less harmful effect on my eyes.

4 Do you read books related to your profession?

Yes, I do. I usually do research about my profession so reading books can help me gain an insight into my field.

Vocabulary

Relieve stress (verb): chill out.

Example: Going swimming is a good way to relieve stress

Broaden one's knowledge (verb): : to increase the range of one's knowledge, understanding, or experience



Example: I think reading books can help me broaden my knowledge.

Science fiction book: fiction based on imagined future scientific or technological advances and major social or environmental changes, frequently portraying space or time travel and life on other planets.

Example: I am really into science fiction books, which entertain me a lot.

A big fan of something (expression): someone who likes watching or listening to something such as a sport, films, or music very much, or who admires a famous or important person very much

Example: I am a big fan of Adele; I listen to every song of hers.

Printed book: A book is a physical book that has the text, images, etc., printed on paper. ... Many of the conventions of a print book are used in an ebook – for example, cover, title page, copyright page, table of content, chapters, paragraphs, etc.

Example: They are publishing a printed book after many years.





72. Smile

Questions

- 1 Do you like to smile?
- 2 When do people smile at others?
- 3 Do you smile when people take pictures of you?
- 4 Can you recognize a fake smile?

Sample Answers

- 1 Do you like to smile?

(Answer) Yes, most people say that I have a cheerful disposition.

(Give a reason for your answer) I always remind myself that life isn't simple and it doesn't come without obstacles, so smiling keeps you always optimistic. As I see it, people with great smiles radiate a warmth that draws others to them instantly.

- 2 When do people smile at others?

(Answer) People smile for different reasons, in various contexts.

(Give a reason for your answer) Most often, people of all ages will smile when something is giving them pleasure. Sometimes we do smile simply because we are happy, but we also smile for social reasons and to put people at ease, as well as to show more complex emotions, such as resignation.

- 3 Do you smile when people take pictures of you?

(Answer) Yes, I actually smile all the time. Smiling in pictures makes me look more photogenic and approachable. Besides, I smile to spread happiness. Pictures are clicked to capture and relive the moment. And how do we like to do that? In a happy way! So we smile.

- 4 Can you recognize a fake smile?

(Answer) Yes, probably.



(Give a reason for your answer) When you smile genuinely, there are two kinds of muscles involved in your face. A spontaneous smile of joy has upward and widening movement of the mouth into a broad grin, and movement of the muscle around the eyes. A fake or social smile, controlled by the motor cortex, has only the upward movement of the mouth, it is slower and less symmetric.

Vocabulary

disposition [n]: the particular type of character that a person naturally has.

Eg: She is of a nervous/cheerful/sunny disposition.

obstacle [n]: something that blocks you so that movement, going forward, or action is prevented or made more difficult.

Eg: The biggest obstacle in our way was a tree trunk in the road.

radiate [v]: to express strongly an emotion or quality, or (of an emotion or quality) to be expressed strongly by someone.

Eg: He simply radiates integrity.

context [n]: the situation within which something exists or happens, and that can help explain it.

Eg: It is important to see all the fighting and bloodshed in his plays in historical context.

at ease [expression]: relaxed.

Eg: She soon put/set me at ease (= made me relaxed).

resignation [n]: a sad feeling of accepting something that you do not like because you cannot easily change it.

Eg: She received the disappointing news with resignation.

photogenic [adj]: having a face that looks attractive in photographs.

Eg: It is the photogenic young man or woman who becomes a political leader— and perhaps we are all the better for that.

capture [v]: if something captures your imagination or attention, you feel very interested and excited by it.

Eg: The American drive to land a man on the Moon captured the imagination/attention of the whole world.



spontaneous [adj]: happening or done in a natural, often sudden way, without any planning or without being forced.

Eg: His jokes seemed spontaneous, but were in fact carefully prepared beforehand.

symmetric [adj]: having similarity in size, shape, and relative position of corresponding parts.

Eg: The structure is completely symmetric





73. Plan

Questions

- 1 Do you make plans every day?
- 2 Are you good at managing your time?
- 3 What is the latest plan you made?
- 4 What is the hardest part about making a plan?

Sample Answers

1 Do you make plans every day?

(Answer) Yes, I do, for many reasons.

(Give a reason for your answer) I always carry a small notebook which I plan my daily schedule with, plans and notes. It sounds quite conventional but it works for me. Writing stuff down helps me remember tasks better than typing on some kind of productive app. I spend about 5 minutes at the beginning and end of every day to plan that day and the next day's tasks. The important thing is you need to keep your to-do list small, it's about prioritizing.

2 Are you good at managing your time?

(Answer) Objectively speaking, I am quite good at it.

(Give a reason for your answer) I think once you are in the habit of controlling yourself according to your time table, life becomes very easy. Good time management will help you with various other skills and competencies that graduate employers seek, from perseverance, resilience, reliability and coping with stress to problem solving and teamwork.

3 What is the latest plan you made?

(Answer) Well, I've recently planned to travel across the country before the age of 30. I want to visit different places as much as possible to gain first-hand knowledge and experience. Travelling fascinates me more than anything else. In reality, it would be quite challenging for me to fulfil the plan, but I will try my best to organize everything even if it takes several years for me.



4 What is the hardest part about making a plan?

(Answer) Well, there are a lot of considerations when preparing for a plan, but I think it is establishing goals.

(Give an example (often a personal example)) Establishing clear, **concise** and understandable goals — is extremely necessary. When people can't see the vision of the plan, they won't take action to pursue the plan. Clear **objectives** should be come up with, whereas teammates or members should also be gathered and **delegated** tasks appropriately, if needed.

Vocabulary

productive [adj]: resulting in or providing a large amount or supply of something.

Eg: He had an amazingly productive five years in which he managed to write four novels.

prioritize [v]: to decide which of a group of things are the most important so that you can deal with them first.

Eg: You must learn to prioritize your work.

in the habit of [expression]: if you are in the habit of doing something, you do it regularly or often.

Eg: They were in the habit of giving two or three dinner parties a month.

perseverance [n]: continued effort and determination.

Eg: Through hard work and perseverance, he worked his way up to the top.

cope with [v]: deal with.

Eg: It must be really hard to cope with three young children and a job.

first-hand [adj]: obtained personally, or directly from someone who is personally involved in something.

Eg: He has firsthand experience of what war is like.

fascinate [v]: to interest someone a lot.

Eg: Anything to do with planes and flying fascinates him.

concise [adj]: expressing what needs to be said without unnecessary words; short and clear.

Eg: She wrote up a concise summary of the day's events.

objective [n]: something that you plan to do or achieve.



Eg: Can the sales team achieve/meet its financial objectives?

delegate [v]: to give a particular job, duty, right, etc. to someone else so that they do it for you.

Eg: Authority to make financial decisions has been delegated to a special committee.





74. Visit Relatives

Questions

- 1 Do you often visit your relatives?
- 2 What do you do when visiting relatives?
- 3 When was the last time you visited a relative?
- 4 Why do people visit relatives?

Sample Answers

1 Do you often visit your relatives?

(Answer) Yes, I do.

(Give a reason for your answer) I like many of my relatives who are very **compassionate**, lovely and friendly to me and among them I would pick my younger uncle as the best relative in terms of our mutual understanding, **closeness** and communications.

2 What do you do when visiting relatives?

(Answer) There are a lot of activities.

(Give a reason for your answer) We often discuss our family issues, our thoughts on **politics**, religion, books writers, movies, music and on many other issues. In our big family, we share our books and recommend books to each other. Generally, adults also share **heartfelt** words to youngsters and advise them on how to behave **decently**.

3 When was the last time you visited a relative?

(Answer) Well, it was just last week when I visited my uncle's family and my grandparents, who **reside** with him in the countryside. We went for a short walk near the field after breakfast to relax in nature and **soak up** some much-needed Vitamin D, which is **necessary** for elderly people.

4 Why do people visit relatives?

(Answer) For many reasons, I believe.



(Give a reason for your answer) Simply hanging out with family that you don't see all the time is great. You get a chance to catch up with everyone and figure out what they're doing with their lives. You also get to laugh and just be weird because they don't judge you for your **weirdness**. Above all, the memories are the best when you're with your family sitting around and **reminiscing about** things that you've done together.

Vocabulary

compassionate [adj]: showing compassion.

Eg: The public's response to the crisis appeal was generous and compassionate.

closeness [n]: the quality of knowing someone very well, liking them a lot, and wanting to spend a lot of time together.

Eg: A special closeness is supposed to exist between twins.

politics [n]: the activities of the government, members of law-making organizations, or people who try to influence the way a country is governed.

Eg: After 30 years in politics, our local member of parliament is retiring next year.

heartfelt [adj]: strongly felt and sincere.

Eg: Please accept my heartfelt apologies/thanks.

decently [adv]: in a way that is socially acceptable or good.

Eg: She admitted that she hadn't always behaved decently.

reside [v]: to live, have your home, or stay in a place.

Eg: The family now resides in southern France.

soak up [v]: to enjoy the effects or experience of something as much as possible.

Eg: I love to lie on the beach and soak up the sun.

necessary [adj]: needed in order to do something.

Eg: The police are prepared to use force, if necessary.

weirdness [n]: the quality of being strange and unusual.

Eg: It's a comedy which often succeeds in capturing the weirdness of real life.

reminisce [v]: to talk or write about past experiences that you remember with pleasure.

Eg: Grandpa likes to reminisce about his years in the navy.



75. Street Market

Questions

- 1 Do you currently live in a house or a flat/ apartment?
- 2 Are street markets common in your country?
- 3 What is usually sold there?
- 4 Do you think people like street markets? Why?

Sample Answers

- 1 Do you currently live in a house or a flat/ apartment?

Answer: I'm living in an apartment that is fully furnished and has all the mod cons. I share my bedroom with another person, and we have been living there for over one year.

- 2 Are street markets common in your country?

Answer: Yes. They exist everywhere, and Vietnamese people go to street markets daily.

- 3 What is usually sold there?

Answer: Well, you can find trendy clothes at a reasonable price in any street market in Vietnam.

- 4 Do you think people like street markets? Why?

Answer: I think people enjoy street markets since they are ideal places to let off steam and bargain with sellers to get a discount.

Vocabulary

Fully-furnished (adj): A fully-furnished apartment is one which is equipped with all required items of a household.

Eg: The flat is fully-furnished, therefore, we don't have to buy anything.

All the mod cons (n): The amenities and appliances characteristic of a well-equipped modern house that contribute to an easier and more comfortable way of life.



Eg: Don't worry! Our house has all the mod cons, which is very convenient.

On a daily basis (adj): how often something happens or is done

Eg: You should do exercise on a daily basis in order to improve your physical health.

Let off steam (v): To do or say something that helps you to get rid of strong feelings or energy

Eg: We should go for a drink tonight to let off some steam.

Bargain (v): negotiate the terms and conditions of a transaction.

Eg: Bargain hard when you go to Ben Thanh Market; otherwise you may get ripped off.





76. Outdoor Activities

Questions

- 1 Do you like outdoor activities?
- 2 What outdoor activities do you (most) like to do?
- 3 What outdoor sports do you like? (Why?)
- 4 How much time do you spend outdoors every week?
- 5 Do Vietnamese people go out a lot?
- 6 What (types of) outdoor activities are popular in your country?
- 7 How and where do people in your country usually socialize?

Sample Answers

1 Do you like outdoor activities?

Definitely! I think outdoor activities do wonders for our mental and physical health. So, I often spend my leisure time playing sports or taking a walk around the park.

2 What outdoor activities do you (most) like to do?

Well, I enjoy lots of activities like hiking, camping or skateboarding, but I'm particularly keen on cycling, especially in the open countryside. It's fun, relaxing and easy to do, you know. More than that, biking helps me get energized and ward off feelings of exhaustion.

3 What outdoor sports do you like? (Why?)

I'm really into playing badminton. It's quite popular in my country, so I can play it with my friends, family members, or next-door neighbours and strengthen the bond with them. Moreover, badminton develops my quick reflexes as well, so I do think it's a fantastic sport.

4 How much time do you spend outdoors every week?

On average, I guess that I do some outdoor activity 2 or 3 times a week. I normally spend at least one morning per week cycling and take part in some sports or other outdoor activities when I'm free. It's not so frequent, I know, which is due to my busy schedule, but I always try to arrange as much time as possible for some outdoor exercise.



5 Do Vietnamese people go out a lot?

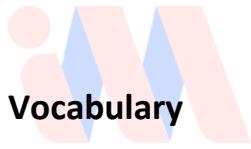
It's kind of hard to say, but people around me tend to spend more time indoors. They're living a fast-paced lifestyle with most of their time devoted to working, commuting and connecting on social media, so, doing things outdoors doesn't seem to be a regular or important part of their calendar.

6 What (types of) outdoor activities are popular in your country?

Well, probably jogging and yoga. I'm not sure about this, but in my country, you can easily catch sight of groups of people from all walks of life jogging or doing yoga in the parks every morning or in the evening. So, these may be the most popular outdoor activities, I guess.

7 How and where do people in your country usually socialize?

People in my country nowadays tend to socialize at work or school. Besides, people of my age often meet up and chat in coffee shops or restaurants which are popular and often beautifully designed. At the same time, the older people usually get together in the parks or gather at someone's home to cook and exchange pleasantries.



Vocabulary

Do wonders (for somebody/something): [expression] have a beneficial effect

Example: Fresh air and exercise do wonders for your health.

Be keen on (expression): liking something/somebody very much; be very interested in something

Eg: He's mad keen on planes – he has a huge collection of photos of aircraft.

The open countryside (expression): far from cities or many houses or other buildings

Eg: I love to walk in the open countryside, through the fields and over the mountains.

Energized (adjective): feel full of energy or enthusiasm

Example: Doing some morning yoga is a natural way to get more energized.

ward off (phrasal verb): to protect yourself against danger or illness

Example: She often carries a bit of fresh ginger to ward off headache.

Be into something (expression): to be interested in something in an active way.

Eg: He's into surfing in a big way – he goes to the beach every weekend.



Strengthen the bond (expression): to make a connection stronger between people or things

Eg: The peace treaty strengthened the bond of friendship between the governments of the two countries.

reflex (noun): a person's ability to respond to new or changing stimuli.

Example: A sportsperson must have quick reflexes, especially in sports such as tennis or football.

Schedule (noun): a plan of all the things that you have to do

Eg: My schedule today includes lunch with the company director and a meeting with a client in the afternoon.

Fast-paced (adjective): happening very quickly

Example: It's a myth that all older people struggle with the fast-paced evolution of technology.

Catch sight of (expression): see something for only a moment

Example: I caught sight of someone with red hair and I knew it was you.

Socialize (verb): to meet and spend time with people in a friendly way, in order to enjoy yourself

Eg: At university, I enjoyed socializing with other students.



77. Weather

Questions

- 1 What kind of weather is typical in your hometown?
- 2 What's your favourite season?
- 3 What kind of weather do you like most? Do you prefer dry or wet weather?

Sample Answers

- 1 What kind of weather is typical in your hometown?

Since my country is located near the Equator, Ho Chi Minh City, where I live, usually has hot weather, which is not my cup of tea.

- 2 What's your favourite season?

If I had to choose, I would choose winter because the weather gets much warmer, and I can wear fashionable clothes that are only suitable for this season.

- 3 What kind of weather do you like most? Do you prefer dry or wet weather?

I like sunny weather, but not when it's too hot because it gets a bit humid after a while. I'll go for dry weather since I don't want to get caught up in a rainstorm and soaked to the bone.

Vocabulary

Boiling weather (expression): extremely hot (having a high temperature: of an object, the weather, a living creature)

Eg: Don't go to the North in summer! It's boiling weather.

Humid (adjective): marked by a relatively high level of water vapour in the atmosphere.

Eg: The weather is really humid; you should drink a lot of water.

Get caught up in a rain (Idiom): To "get caught" in the rain means that you are outside and it starts raining suddenly, before you can get inside or get an umbrella.



Eg: It suddenly rained and I got caught up in the rain.





78. Patience

Questions

- 1 What do you think "patience" is?
- 2 Do you think patience is important?
- 3 (Possibly) Do you think being patient is an important part of being polite?
- 4 Would you say you are a patient person?
- 5 Have you ever lost your patience?
- 6 What do you become impatient about?

Sample Answers

1 What do you think "patience" is?

Well, I suppose "patience" indicates a person's capacity to wait or to endure delay or something tedious or annoying without complaining and getting riled about it.

2 Do you think patience is important?

Yes, being patient is vital because it is helpful in many situations. Being impatient does not solve the problems but causes more trouble. Also, individual people tend to like patient people because they usually have calm attitudes and an easy-going personality.

3 (Possibly) Do you think being patient is an important part of being polite?

Of course, being patient shows your respectful and thoughtful attitudes to others. For example, at the coffee shop, people have to queue in line and wait patiently for their turn.

4 Would you say you are a patient person?

Generally, I'm an impatient person because I hate waiting for other people. I can easily get annoyed if my friends do not turn up on time. However, in certain situations, I can remain patient, like studying English every day without feeling bored.

5 Have you ever lost your patience?

Yes, I have. Last week, I planned to hang out with my friend at the KFC restaurant. But my friend didn't come, and she made me wait for more than thirty minutes. I called her, and she



didn't even respond to it. Being tired of waiting for so long, I just left her a message reproaching her and saying that she did not need to come any more. I was so angry that I did not talk to her for a few days.

6 What do you become impatient about?

As I mentioned previously, I loathe waiting for individuals or something taking up too much time.

It usually makes me feel upset and irritated.

Vocabulary

tedious (adjective) boring

Eg: The problem is I find most forms of exercise so **tedious**.

get riled (expression) to get very annoyed

Eg: I **got riled** when the shop assistant was rude to me.

easy-going (adjective) relaxed and happy to accept things without worrying

Eg: She won't get angry if you're late, she's very **easy-going**.

respectful (adjective) showing politeness or honour to someone or something

Eg: There was a **respectful** two-minute silence as we remembered the soldiers who had died in the war.

thoughtful (adjective) carefully considering things

Eg: He has a **thoughtful** approach to his work, planning everything well.

queue (verb) to wait in a line of people, often to buy something

Eg: Dozens of people were **queuing** up to get tickets.

get annoyed (verb phrase): become angry

Eg: He **got annoyed** at the way she tried to take over the whole meeting.

turn up (phrasal verb): to arrive

Eg: We arranged to meet at midday, but he didn't **turn up**.

loathe (verb) hate somebody or something very much

Eg: From an early age the brothers have **loathed** each other.

hang out with somebody (expression) spend time with somebody

Eg: When I have free time, I **hang out with** friends and we listen to music or chat.



reproach (verb) to criticize someone, especially for not being successful or not doing what is expected

Eg: His mother **reproached** him for not eating all his dinner.

irritated (adjective) annoyed

Eg: I began to get increasingly **irritated** at her foolish questions





79. Animals

Questions

- 1 Have you ever kept pets?
- 2 Do you like to go to the zoo?
- 3 Have you ever seen any wild animals before?
- 4 What wild animal do you like the most?

Sample Answers

- 1 Have you ever kept pets?

(Answer) Yes, I used to have one.

(Give a reason for your answer) My father got a dog for me when I was 5. Yet, I remember he was so **aggressive** that we rarely played with him. He was kept only for guarding the house. Later on, when he started recognizing us, he allowed us to **approach** him. I remember my sister felt **attached to** him a great deal, so when he died, it was a true shock for her.

- 2 Do you like to go to the zoo?

(Answer) I don't particularly appreciate going to the zoo.

(Give a reason for your answer) It is so sad to see the **miserable** animals sitting, running about sadly in their cage, hoping for some scraps from the visitors. They don't **deserve** it. But on the other side, some of them will live in danger if they are allowed to live in their natural environment.

- 3 Have you ever seen any wild animals before?

(Answer) Not even once in person but of course plenty of times on TV through National Geographic TV shows.

(Give a reason for your answer) In my twenty years of existence, I still haven't seen one real wild animal before **with my naked eyes**. Some of the amazing wild animals that I've seen on television are zebras, gorillas, giraffes, **coyotes**, hedgehogs, otters, and lions. I don't get a chance to visit any zoos in this country.

- 4 What wild animal do you like the most?



(Answer) I do not have any **particular** kinds of wild animals that I like.

(Give a reason for your answer) If I have to pick one, I prefer to choose elephants. They look different from any other animal you've ever seen, they have a trunk, tusks and they're **massive** in size. They are closely related to the extinct mammoth, and that is why elephants are so unique. Besides, **in comparison with** other kinds of animals, they are much more intelligent.

Vocabulary

aggressive [adj]: behaving in an angry and violent way towards another person.

Eg: If I criticize him, he gets aggressive and starts shouting.

approach [v]: to come nearer to something or someone.

Eg: Under no circumstances should you approach the man.

(be) attached to [adj]: to like someone or something very much.

Eg: Steve really gets attached to his cats.

miserable [adj]: very unhappy.

Eg: She's miserable living on her own.

deserve [v]: to have earned or to be given something because of the way you have behaved or the qualities you have.

Eg: After all that hard work, you deserve a holiday.

with the naked eyes [expression]: without using any special device for making images larger.

Eg: We live miles away, but on a clear night, you can see the city skyscrapers with the naked eye.

coyote [n]: a small wild animal like a dog that lives in North America.

Eg: Chickens need protection from predators such as coyotes, foxes, and owls.

particular [adj]: special, or this and not any other.

Eg: In the light of recent incidents, we are asking our customers to take particular care of their personal belongings.

massive [adj]: very large in size, amount, or number.

Eg: If the drought continues, deaths will occur on a massive scale.

in comparison with [expression]: when compared with something.



Eg: The paintings he made later pale in comparison with his earlier work.





80. Tea or Coffee

Questions

- 1 Do Vietnamese people like to drink tea or coffee?
- 2 Do you prepare tea or coffee for the guests at home?
- 3 When was the last time you drank tea or coffee?

Sample Answers

- 1 Do Vietnamese people like to drink tea or coffee?

(Answer) Well, both are Vietnamese people's favourite drink, but I think tea is more preferred.

(Give a reason for your answer) In Vietnam, tea is said to appear in almost every social activity: from the wedding, birthday to anniversary and **ritual** ceremonies. A cup of hot tea in the early morning after breakfast, some iced tea at small stalls while waiting for a friend, or a whole day chilling out in a teahouse; that is the way tea **penetrates** Vietnamese' daily life.

- 2 Do you prepare tea or coffee for the guests at home?

(Answer) When it comes to treating my guests, I want them to experience a sense of warmth and **delight**, so I most often choose tea. Tea and biscuits is the perfect combination for many people, especially children. If I serve my guests a cup of coffee, this may somehow **disturb** their sleep at night.

- 3 When was the last time you drank tea or coffee?

(Answer) Well, I drink coffee frequently **for the sake of** my hectic schedule. **(Give a reason for your answer)** Yesterday, I made myself a cup of coffee to prepare for the demanding working deadline. Honestly, I want to **break the habit of** overusing coffee, but given my **demanding** workload, that prospect seems **out of the question**, at least at the moment. It turns out that early morning coffee drinkers should also consider adjusting their schedule to optimize their caffeine intake better. The best times to drink coffee — or caffeine in general — is between 10 a.m. and noon, and between 2 p.m. and 5 p.m.

Vocabulary



preferable [adj]: better or more suitable.

Eg: Surely a diplomatic solution is preferable to war.

ritual [n]: a ritual is also any act done regularly, usually without thinking about it.

Eg: My morning ritual includes reading the newspaper while I drink my coffee.

penetrate [v]: to move into or through something.

Eg: In a normal winter, the frost penetrates deeply enough to kill off insect eggs in the soil.

delight [n]: (something or someone that gives) great pleasure, satisfaction, or happiness.

Eg: I read your letter with great delight.

disturb [v]: to interrupt what someone is doing.

Eg: I'm sorry to disturb you so late, but my car's broken down and I don't have my phone with me.

for the sake of [expression]: in order to help or bring advantage to someone.

Eg: Their parents only stayed together for the sake of the children.

break the habit of [expression]: to stop doing a routine action or activity.

Eg: I struggled to break the habit of biting my nails, but getting regular manicures helped.

demanding [adj]: needing a lot of time, attention, or energy.

Eg: She's hoping to find a job which is more demanding intellectually.

out of the question [expression]: not possible; having no chance; not permitted.

Eg: I'm sorry, but your taking my car is out of the question.

optimize [v]: to make something as good as possible.

Eg: We need to optimize our use of the existing technology.



81. Sleep

Questions

- 1 How long should people sleep for the benefit of their health? Why?
- 2 Do you think that the old should sleep more than the young? Why?
- 3 What do you do to improve sleeping quality?
- 4 Do you think it's effective?

Sample Answers

- 1 How long should people sleep for the benefit of their health? Why?

(Answer) I'm not too sure, but according to what I have read, around 8 hours of sleep per day would be **optimal**. **(Give reasons for your answer)** This is said to be the perfect amount of time for people to **rejuvenate** and recharge their minds and bodies. If people constantly sleep a lot more than this recommended amount of time, they are likely **to be prone to obesity**, which carries **serious health risks**.

- 2 Do you think that the old should sleep more than the young? Why?

(Answer) No, I don't think that should be the case. **(Give reasons for your answer)** I believe that the amount of time people spend resting should correlate with how much they **exert themselves** during the day. Usually, young people spend more of their energy on physical activities, so it's more reasonable for the young to sleep more than the elderly.

- 3 What do you do to improve sleeping quality?

(Answer) Several measures can be taken to assure a quality sleep. **(Give a reason for your answer)** First, I make sure that I **work out at the gym** or **take gentle exercise** as I usually find myself drifting to sleep faster and **sleep more soundly** after I **have taken regular exercise** during the daytime. Also, I find that some **soothing** music and comfy pillows are helpful in ensuring a good night's sleep.

- 4 Do you think it's effective?

(Answer) Yes, from my personal experience, the solutions I mentioned have proved to be quite effective. **(Give reasons for your answer)** When I'm **drained** after a long day, or I've



done a hardcore work-out at the fitness centre, I am often sore all over and **crave for** some rest. Then, nothing is more satisfying than to **crash out** at night, falling asleep while listening to slow and relaxing melodies.

Vocabulary

to be prone to obesity (expression)

Meaning: to be likely to become fat in an unhealthy way

Example: Children who are addicted to watching television, instead of playing outdoor games, **are more prone to obesity**.

to carry health risks (expression)

Meaning: to have effects which could be bad for one's health

Example: Smoking and drinking alcohol are potentially dangerous habits, because they **carry serious health risks**.

to take regular exercise (expression)

Meaning: to do some physical activity on a regular basis

Example: Authorities should encourage people of all ages **to take regular exercise** by providing facilities in each community.

Sports and exercise

to exert oneself (reflexive verb)

Meaning: to make a big physical effort to do something

Example: I believe that sports professionals deserve high salaries, because constant hard training is necessary so that they can **exert themselves** to the limit when they compete.

to work out at the gym (expression)

Meaning: to train the body by physical exercise at the gym

Example: As part of a healthy lifestyle, people of all ages should **work out at the gym** on a regular basis.

to take gentle exercise (expression)

Meaning: to do exercise which is not physically demanding or tiring

Example: Even the elderly can keep fit by **taking gentle exercise**, like jogging or even a walk in the park.

optimal [adjective]

Meaning: best; most likely to bring success or advantage



Example: The **optimal** temperature for the development of larvae is in the range 18–26°C.

to rejuvenate [verb]

Meaning: to make somebody/something look or feel younger, more lively or more modern
Example: Special creams can be used to **rejuvenate** the skin.

to sleep soundly

Meaning: if you sleep soundly, you sleep very well and very deeply

Example: The baby **was sleeping soundly** after listening to his mother's lullaby.

soothing [adjective]

Meaning: making somebody who is anxious, upset, etc. feel calmer/ making a tense or painful part of your body feel more comfortable

Example: The **soothing** voice of the singer made everyone in the audience feel relaxed.

drained [adjective]

Meaning: very tired and without energy

Example: The death of her father left her **emotionally drained**.

crave for something [phrasal verb]

Meaning: to have a very strong desire for something

Example: Pregnant women can occasionally **crave for** weird food.

to crash out [phrasal verb]

Meaning: to throw yourself down to sleep in an exhausted state

Example: After the late-night party at my house, several of my friends **crashed out** on the floor.



82. Sky

Questions

- 1 Do you like to watch the sky?
- 2 What is the sky like at night in your hometown?
- 3 Do you like to watch stars?
- 4 Have you ever taken a course about stars?
- 5 What's your favourite star?

Sample Answers

1 Do you like to watch the sky?

(Answer) Yes, I have to say I am a fan of watching the sky.

(Give a reason for your answer) To me, the sky is a magnificent **work of art**, and I appreciate **the aesthetic qualities of it**. The colour of the clouds are so beautiful.

2 What is the sky like at night in your hometown?

(Answer) The night sky where I live is simply **a breathtaking view**.

(Give a reason for your answer) As I live in the countryside, the sky is not affected by light pollution, so there are numerous shining stars in a broad blackish background. Therefore, the view is perfect for anyone who **has a thirst for** freedom.

3 Do you like to watch stars?

(Answer) I find star-watching extremely interesting.

(Give a reason for your answer) I believe that every star in **the cosmos** has its function and holds a unique mystery to be discovered. This **is a great inspiration to me**.

4 Have you ever taken a course about stars?

(Answer) I haven't ever enrolled in such courses, but I would love to in the future. (Give a reason for your answer) I have always wanted to know how constellations retain their shape in **zero gravity** without **floating through space**.

5 What's your favourite star?



(Answer) The Sun is my favourite star, I would say.

(Give a reason for your answer) This is because of its power and importance to life. If we could find a star similar to the Sun out there in space, we would be able to discover **alien life forms** and complete our **quest for a new homeland**.

Vocabulary

Arts: a work of art/a work of music/a work of literature (expression): a painting, sculpture, book, play, piece of music etc

Example: Shakespeare's plays are considered as one of the greatest **works of literature** in the English language.

the aesthetic qualities of something (expression): The qualities related to beauty and understanding the beauty of something.

Example: One advantage of studying the arts is that students learn to appreciate **the aesthetic qualities of** paintings, literature and music.

Tourism:

a breathtaking view (expression): an extremely beautiful view

Example: From the top of the mountain, there is **a breathtaking view of** the coast.

to have a thirst for something (expression): to have a strong desire for something

Example: He has been all over the world, but he still **has a thirst for** seeing new places and enjoying new experiences.

Space Exploration:

The cosmos (noun): the universe, especially when it is thought of as an ordered system

Example: Although the challenge of exploring and understanding **the cosmos** is exciting, it is also very expensive

To be an inspiration to (expression): to make somebody excited about something, especially thinking of the future

Example: The images of the first men on the moon **were an inspiration to** people, and made them more hopeful about the future.

Zero gravity (expression): having no force to pull objects to the ground, so that they float.

Example: Living in conditions of **zero gravity** in space must be extremely tiring and uncomfortable.



To float through space (expression): to move slowly in the air

Example: Space tourism would be really boring, simply **floating through space** and looking out of the window of the spacecraft.

Alien life forms (expression): creatures from another world

Example: One of the most exciting possibilities of the space program is finding alien life forms on other planets.

The quest for a new homeland (expression): the search for a new place to inhabit

Example: As humans are destroying their own planet, **the quest for a new homeland** in the universe is essential.





83. Sharing

Questions

- 1 Have you had anything to share with others recently?
- 2 Did your parents teach you to share when you were a child?
- 3 What kind of things do you like to share with others?
- 4 What kind of things are not suitable for sharing?

Sample Answers

1 Have you had anything to share with others recently?

Yes. I was quite nervous about my upcoming finals. Therefore, I went to see my sister and tell her my concerns. She gave me a pep talk.

2 Did your parents teach you to share when you were a child?

They did encourage my siblings and me to speak our minds if we needed to. My parents told me that sharing could lift people's spirits and get rid of negative energy.

3 What kind of things do you like to share with others?

I usually talk with my friends about how I spend my day. Sometimes I even share food with my colleagues because I often buy snacks at the workplace.

4 What kind of things are not suitable for sharing?

I think people should keep personal information to themselves because anyone can take advantage of that information and put us into trouble.

Vocabulary

Pep talk (noun): a talk intended to make someone feel more courageous or enthusiastic.

Example: The coach came and gave a pep talk to his team.



Speak one's mind: Say what one really thinks, talk freely and fearlessly

Example: Everyone feels free to speak their mind in this section.

Lift one's spirit: To make one feel happier or more carefree

Example: My advice really lifted his spirits.

Get rid of: take action so as to be free of (a troublesome or unwanted person or thing)

Example: You should get rid of these clothes since they are old-fashioned.

Keep something to oneself: refuse to disclose or share something.

Example: Keep your information to yourself! Don't tell anyone about this

Take advantage of: exploit for one's own benefit.

Example: You should take advantage of your time to travel more.





84. Handwriting

Questions

- 1 Do you often write things?
- 2 Do you prefer to write by hand or write using a computer?
- 3 Do you think computers might one day replace handwriting?
- 4 When do children begin to write in your country?

Sample Answers

- 1 Do you often write things?

(Answer) Absolutely yes.

(Explain) Writing is one of the things that I love doing in my leisure time. I practice writing every day to **sharpen my language and writing skills**, as well as relieve stress after a hard-working day.

- 2 Do you prefer to write by hand or write using a computer?

(Answer) It depends.

(explain) When writing about everyday things or practising for the IELTS test, I'd rather write by hand. I use a computer to write academic reports.

- 3 Do you think computers might one day replace handwriting?

(Answer) I don't think so.

(Explain) The computer has indeed been doing a good job in helping people to write. However, I don't think that it will replace the traditional way of writing as there will be no computers to **rely on** in urgent cases.

- 4 When do children begin to write in your country?

(Answer) Vietnamese kids start learning to write at the age of around 5 to 6, **(explain)** which is considered quite early by some European experts. But Vietnamese kids know how to do it well.



Vocabulary

To sharpen a skill: perfect a skill.

Eg: To sharpen my communication skills, I participate in a lot of extra-curricular activities.

To rely on: to need (someone or something) for support, help, etc. : to depend on (someone or something)

Eg: I don't think we should always rely on theories in books because there are many unexpected situations which cannot be solved by them in real life.





85. Photos/ Pictures

Questions

- 1 How do you keep your photos?
- 2 In what situations do you take photos?
- 3 How often do you take photos?
- 4 Do you prefer to take photos of yourself or to have other people take photos?

Sample Answers

1 How do you keep your photos?

Well, I usually store my photos by printing them out and making an album if the pictures are important. If not, I keep them on my iPhone.

2 In what situations do you take photos?

I snap a photo whenever I see something that catches my eye when I'm in a good mood. Normally, I take pictures with my friends when we hang out or when my family goes to a fancy restaurant.

3 How often do you take photos?

Not too often, I have to say. I'm an introvert who doesn't like to share too many photos, so I only take photos when I find something interesting.

4 Do you prefer to take photos of yourself or to have other people take photos?

I'm pretty good at photography, so I choose to take photos by myself. Also, it is more comfortable to see my expression, which is unflattering sometimes.

Vocabulary

Snap a photo (phrase): Take a photo

Eg: He snapped a photo of me while I was sleeping.

Catch one's eyes (phrase): to get someone's attention, especially by looking at them



Eg: This costume really catches my eyes.

In a good mood (expression): Refers to a cheerful, well-disposed state of mind,

Eg: Dinner is on me! I'm in a good mood today.





86. Music

Questions

- 1 Do you like listening to music?
- 2 When do you listen to music?
- 3 Did you learn instruments?
- 4 Did you have any music classes in school?
- 5 Do you think children must have music classes?
- 6 What do you think of Vietnamese traditional music?
- 7 How much time do you spend listening to music every day?
- 8 What is your favourite kind of music?
- 9 When did you start listening to this type of music?
- 10 How do you feel when you listen to music?

Sample Answers

1 Do you like listening to music?

I love listening to music, especially US-UK. My favourite artists are Miley Cyrus and Troye Sivan; their songs always sound awesome to me.

2 When do you listen to music?

I listen to music whenever I feel like doing so. I most often do that before going to sleep, when I'm on the bus, or when I don't have any important tasks to do.

3 Did you learn instruments?

I didn't **take up any classes on musical instruments** and haven't still. I have always wanted to learn to play the piano ever since I was a kid but never got the chance to. I'm planning on getting some piano lessons this summer.

4 Did you have any music classes in school?



I used to have music classes back when I was in primary school and secondary school. I loved my music class in secondary school. For our midterm and final tests, we had to form a group of at least four and perform a certain song that we choose ourselves. It was so much fun.

5 Do you think children must have music classes?

In my opinion, children should always have music classes. Music has been scientifically proven to have positive influences on one's way of thinking and feeling, so it will **do people good** if they can experience music from an early age.

6 What do you think of Vietnamese traditional music?

It's not really **to my taste**, to be honest. I literally cannot listen to traditional kinds of music such as "ca tru", "cai luong" or "cheo". I like listening to songs created during the war, though, maybe because my dad was a soldier. He told me stories about his years in the army, and so I can somehow **relate** deeply to those kinds of songs.

7 How much time do you spend listening to music every day?

It depends. I often listen to music when I'm doing the housework or when I'm on the bus. At that time, I feel like I can **immerse** myself in my own world. When I need to concentrate on school work, I don't listen to music as it can cause real distraction.

8 What is your favourite kind of music?

I don't have choices in music. I can pretty much listen to everything as long as it sounds good to me.

9 When did you start listening to this type of music?

[Let's just say I'm into rock music]

The first time I heard a rock song was when my dad turned on the TV, and there was a performance of a very famous rock band in Vietnam called "Buc Tuong". It was amazing. I started searching for more songs from the Vietnamese band, and songs belonging to the same genre, and have decided ever since that rock music would be a part of my spiritual life.

10 How do you feel when you listen to music?

Relaxed and free, I guess. Music, to me, is a way of hiding from all the **hustle and bustle** of everyday life. I listen to music when I'm under a lot of pressure, and feel so fine. It's the feeling of finally coming home after years and years of living far away, I think.

Vocabulary



folk songs

Meaning: songs in the traditional style of a country or community

Example: Traditional **folk songs** are part of the cultural heritage of a nation or region.

to take up a musical instrument

Meaning: to start to learn to play a musical instrument

Example: Schools should encourage all those children who have an interest **to take up a musical instrument**.

genres of music

Meaning: particular types or styles of music

Example: Different **genres of music** tend to be favoured by different age groups, with classical music more popular among the elderly.

Do somebody good [expression] (to improve someone's health or life).

E.g. You can't work all the time - it **does you good** to go out and enjoy yourself sometimes.

Be to one's taste [expression] (be something one likes).

E.g. I'm not really into new cars - old vintage cars **are more to my taste!**

Relate [verb] (to be able to understand a situation or someone's feelings because you have experienced something similar yourself).

E.g. I often wake up very early - I'm sure most readers over 50 can **relate**.

Immerse yourself in something [verb] (to become completely involved in something):

E.g. She got some books out of the library and **immersed herself in** Jewish history and culture.

Hustle and bustle [expression] (noise and activity).

E.g. I love the **hustle and bustle** of the marketplace.

Still [adv] (nevertheless; on the other hand).

E.g. I don't really like weddings. **Still**, I'll have to go or they'll be offended



87. Teacher

Questions

- 1 Do you like any teacher of yours?
- 2 Do you still keep in touch with your teachers?
- 3 Do you think it's important to like your teacher?
- 4 Do you want to be a teacher?
- 5 What qualities should a good teacher have?
- 6 Do you have a favourite teacher?

Sample Answers

1 Do you like any teacher of yours?

(Answer) Yes, I do.

(Give a reason for your answer) During the entire course of my school life, I was instructed by many lovely teachers whom I love and **respect** a lot. Among them, the person who **inspired** me the most is my English major teacher in my high school.

2 Do you still keep in touch with your teachers?

Well, after high school graduation, I still contact my Physics and English teachers **from time to time**. Besides, on special occasions like the Tet holiday or teacher's day, I still visit them with my friends to express my **gratitude**.

3 Do you think it's important to like your teacher?

(Answer) Of course, yes.

(Give a reason for your answer) When you have a good relationship with your teachers, you may find their way of teaching more **understandable**. Most importantly, you will feel more **motivated** in studying and in the end, perform better.

4 Do you want to be a teacher?

(Answer) Sometimes, yes.



(Give a reason for your answer) I'm quite **enthusiastic about** conveying knowledge to others, especially those who are willing to learn. As I'm capable of explaining things concisely and appealingly, I'm quite **cut out for** teaching.

5 (What qualities should a good teacher have?)

Well, one needs to have a lot of **attributes** to become a good teacher, in my opinion. Besides good knowledge, you also need to be patient, **diligent** and highly disciplined. Unless you are passionately devoted to teaching, you cannot call yourself a good teacher.

6 (Do you have a favourite teacher?)

I had so many favourite teachers, and it's a bit difficult to pick one, but I would say the English teacher in high school was the one I love the most. She always delivered **engaging** lessons, and unlike other teachers who compel students to learn to get good grades, she showed the beauty in learning and encouraged us to **pursue** our interests.

Vocabulary

respect [v]: to feel or show admiration for someone or something that you believe has good ideas or qualities.

Eg: I deeply respect David for what he has achieved.

inspire [v]: to fill someone with confidence and desire to do something.

Eg: Leaders that follow the transformation style of leading, challenge and inspire their followers with a sense of purpose and excitement.

from time to time [expression]: sometimes.

Eg: I meet my old friends from time to time.

gratitude [n]: a strong feeling of appreciation for someone or something for what the person has done to help you.

Eg: I would like to express my gratitude to the feminists, both male and female, for their work in the past.

understandable [adj]: easy to understand.

Eg: You have to put the facts into a form that's understandable to everyone.

motivate [v]: to make someone eager to do something.

Eg: She managed to motivate staff to work together after the merger.

(be) enthusiastic about [adj]: showing enthusiasm.



Eg: Marcia's lifelong interest in science learning stems from growing up as the oldest child in a family enthusiastic about learning.

(be) cut out for/ to be something [n]: have exactly the right qualities for a particular role, task, or job.

Eg: I'm just not cut out to be a policeman.

attribute [n]: a quality or characteristic that someone or something has.

Eg: Organizational ability is an essential attribute for a good manager.

diligent [adj]: careful and serious in your work, or done in a careful and determined way.

Eg: He is also known as a documenter of literature that is persistent, diligent, and dedicated.

engaging [adj]: tending to please; attractive.

Eg: He has such an engaging manner.

pursue [v]: to try to achieve something.

Eg: Liam plans to pursue a career in advertising.





88. Transportation

Questions

- 1 What's the most popular means of transportation in your hometown?
- 2 How often do you take buses?
- 3 Can you compare the advantages of planes and trains?
- 4 Is driving to work popular in your country?
- 5 Do you think people will drive more in the future?
- 6 Would you ride bikes to work in the future?
- 7 What will become the most popular means of transportation in Vietnam?
- 8 Do you prefer public transportation or private transportation?

Sample Answers

- 1 What's the most popular means of transportation in your hometown?

The most **common** vehicle in my hometown is the motorbike. **As I've read** in a current newspaper, most Vietnamese adults own motorbikes. Moreover, I can easily **catch sight of** motorbikes whenever I go outside.

- 2 How often do you take buses?

I take buses to go to school at least twice a day as I haven't got my vehicle yet. I also usually use buses to visit my relatives or friends' homes.

- 3 Can you compare the advantages of planes and trains?

Aeroplanes and trains have their benefits for passengers. **Regarding** planes, they have been the fastest means of passenger transport invented so far. They enable people to travel all around the world in the shortest possible time. The biggest advantage of trains is their impressive **safety record**. Accidents are rare. So people can feel relaxed and sit back and **admire** the views from their comfortable seats.

- 4 Is driving to work popular in your country?



Yes. I'm pretty sure that private cars and motorbikes are the two most popular vehicles in my country. Therefore, it is obvious that there are a large number of people who tend to drive to work.

5 Do you think people will drive more in the future?

Yes, I think so. There will be more drivers on the roads in future due to the convenience of **motoring** and the **affordable** prices of cars.

6 Would you ride bikes to work in the future?

Yes. As I'm a young person, I like to do energetic activities to help me keep fit, so I will **give priority** to a job that is within cycling distance of my home.

7 What will become the most popular means of transportation in Vietnam?

I think motorbikes will continue to dominate due to their advantages. They are great for getting around quickly and easy to park and economical to run.

8 Do you prefer public transportation or private transportation?

Although owning a private vehicle has various advantages, I prefer using public transportation to **economize** as well as to help protect the environment.

Vocabulary

Catch sight of (expression): to see something only for a moment

Eg: I **caught sight of** someone with red hair, so I knew that it was you.

Safety record (noun): details of how many accidents a company has had

Eg: With no accidents in the last 5 years, this airline has a good **safety record**.

Admire (verb): to look at something and think that it is attractive/impressive

Eg: We stood for a few moments, **admiring** the beautiful view.

Motoring (noun): the activity of driving a car

Eg: She's planning a **motoring** holiday in France next year.

Affordable (adjective): cheap enough for people to be able to buy

Eg: This type of car is **affordable** for people who have a low income.

Give priority to (expression): deal with something first, because you think it is more important than other things



Eg: This month I must **give priority to** revision for the exam, so I have taken some time off work.

Prevalence (noun): the fact of being very common at a particular time or in a particular place

Eg: There is a worrying increase in the **prevalence** of smoking among young people.

Dominate (verb): to be the largest, highest or most obvious thing in a place

Eg: The skyline is **dominated** by smoking factory chimneys.

Get around (phrasal verb): to move from place to place

Eg: **Getting around** in this city is hard, because there is too much traffic.

Park (verb): to leave a vehicle that you are driving in a particular place for a period of time

Eg: I **parked** my car in front of the supermarket while I did my shopping.

Economical (adjective): providing good value in relation to the amount of money spent

Eg: Buy a small car – it will be more **economical** to run.

Run (verb): to own and use a car or other vehicle

Eg: On my low salary, I can't afford to **run** a car.

Economize (verb): to use less money than you normally use

Eg: In winter, don't **economize** on heating – it is more important to keep warm.



89. The area where you live in

Questions

- 1 Do you like the area that you live in?
- 2 What are some changes in the area recently?
- 3 Do you know any famous people in your area?
- 4 Where do you like to go in that area?

Sample Answers

1 Do you like the area that you live in?

Well, I am staying in District 2, and I must say that I enjoy staying in this area since there are a lot of places to visit besides the peaceful atmosphere.

2 What are some changes in the area recently?

There are more and more high-rise buildings being built in the area to meet the demand of the affluent and expats.

3 Do you know any famous people in your area?

Interestingly, I live next door to Toc Tien, who is one of the most famous pop singers in Vietnam. However, I don't see her very often because of her busy schedule.

4 Where do you like to go in that area?

I love visiting Saigon Outcast, a place where I can do rock climbing as well as socialize with foreigners.

Vocabulary

High-rise (adjective): (of a building) having many storeys

Example: A high-rise building was built last month, which will be the tallest building when it is finished



Meet the demand of: to do something that someone wants, needs, or expects you to do or be as good as they need, expect etc

Example: They have to work the night shift to meet the demand of buyers.

The affluent (noun): (especially of a group or area) having a great deal of money; wealthy.

Example: The affluent class is increasing in our country, which widens the gap between the rich and the poor.

Expat (noun): a person who lives outside their native country.

Example: Expats who live in Vietnam usually have well-paid jobs.

Live next door to (Idiom): To live in a house, apartment, building, etc., that is immediately adjacent to one

Example: I live next door to your friend; that's why I see him every day.





90. Holiday

Questions

- 1 What kinds of places do you like to go on holiday?
- 2 Who would you like to go on a holiday with?
- 3 Where do you plan to go for holidays in the future?

Sample Answers

- 1 What kinds of places do you like to go on holiday?

I like beaches; therefore, I would go to a peaceful island or beautiful beaches so that I can let my hair down.

- 2 Who would you like to go on a holiday with?

Well, I prefer going on solo trips rather than holidaying with my friends or family since they are annoying at times.

- 3 Where do you plan to go for holidays in the future?

I've always dreamed of going to France, where I can taste delicious croissants and contemplate the sunset from the Eiffel Tower.

Vocabulary

To let one's hair down (idiom): . Drop one's reserve or inhibitions, behave casually or informally

Eg: I've been too busy with my new job. So, tonight I'm going to let my hair down and enjoy myself.

A solo trip (expression): is "alone" or "by one's self".

Eg: I find it strange when you are making a solo trip to Europe.



91. Numbers

Questions

- 1 Are you good at remembering numbers?
- 2 Do you often use numbers?)
- 3 Is there any special number you like?

Sample Answers

- 1 Are you good at remembering numbers?

(Answer) Yes. I'm quite good **when it comes to** numbers. But it depends on how the numbers are administered to me.

(Give a reason for your answer) When I look at a sequence for only 1 or 2 seconds or hear 2-3 numbers in 1 second, I can easily remember them. My immediate information **intake** is enormous and very fast compared to the average. I can easily remember **sequences** of 15-20 digits in a moment. But I haven't tried beyond that.

- 2 Do you often use numbers?

(Answer) Well, I must say I **seldom** use numbers.

(Give a reason for your answer) Honestly, my work doesn't involve the use of numbers. Still, numbers play an important role in our lives. I **assume** that whether we like it or not, our life revolves around numbers and they are connected directly or indirectly to our lives.

- 3 Is there any special number you like?

(Answer) Yes, absolutely.

(Give a reason for your answer) My favourite number is nine because it has unique **attributes**. **Multiply** nine by any number and then keep adding the digits of the number produced until there is only one left. It will always be 9. Interesting, isn't it?

Vocabulary

when it comes to [expression]: as for something; speaking about something

Eg: When it comes to fishing, John is an expert.



intake [n]: an amount of food, air, or another substance taken into the body.

Eg: It all adds up and the excessive food and alcohol intake takes its toll on the body.

sequence [n]: a particular order in which related events, movements, or things follow each other.

Eg: A logical, progressive sequence is followed, in accordance with how I was trained in the Vaganova school.

seldom [adv]: almost never.

Eg: Seldom do we receive any apology when mistakes are made.

calculation (n): a mathematical determination of the size or number of something.

Eg: A calculation is a deliberate process that transforms one or more inputs into one or more results, with variable change.

assume [v]: to accept something as true without question or proof.

Eg: We can't assume (that) he's innocent simply because he says he is.

attribute [n]: a quality or feature regarded as a characteristic or inherent part of someone or something.

Eg: Attractive, well built, pleasant character... all the attributes required for a successful and happy life.

multiply [v]: obtain from (a number) another that contains the first number a specified number of times.

Eg: If you multiply seven by 15 you get 105.



92. Pen or Pencil

Questions

- 1 When was the last time you bought a pen or pencil?
- 2 Do you usually use a pen or pencil?
- 3 What do you think if someone gives you a pen or a pencil as a gift?

Sample Answers

- 1 When was the last time you bought a pen or pencil?

(Answer) Well, I just bought numerous pencils this morning because I had to take a written examination that required the use of pencils.

(Give a reason for your answer) I bought three pencils in case I may break one or two during the exam. I wanted to feel **self-assured**. So having extra pencils was the best guarantee I could give for myself and that helped me stop thinking of problems that I might **encounter** while taking the exam.

- 2 Do you usually use a pen or pencil?

(Answer) Well, I use a pencil more often as compared to a pen.

(Give a reason for your answer) As a student, I need to jot our lessons down in my notebook. **When it comes to** note-taking, the pencil is a **preferable** choice. I have **grown accustomed to** **relying** on the pencil to write down things ever since high school and I find it very **handy**. Strangely, I always **outperform others** in examinations that require the use of pencils, so they are also my lucky items.

- 3 What do you think if someone gives you a pen or a pencil as a gift?

(Answer) For me, that's quite a strange present to give someone.

(Give a reason for your answer) Well, I've never tried giving a pen or a pencil as a present to my loved ones or friends. However, if I did receive one, I would be glad and grateful.

Vocabulary

self-assured

Meaning: confident



Example: I certainly would want my children to be self-assured and responsible.

encounter [v]: to experience something, especially something unpleasant.

Eg: The army is reported to be encountering considerable resistance.

when it comes to [expression]: as for something; speaking about something.

Eg: When it comes to fishing, John is an expert.

preferable [adj]: more desirable or suitable.

Eg: The chairman of the board said voluntary redundancies were preferable over compulsory redundancies.

(be)/ grow accustomed to [expression]: familiar with something.

Eg: She quickly became accustomed to his messy ways.

handy [adj]: useful or convenient.

Eg: We found it handy to have a cellular phone.

outperform [v]: to do well in a particular job or activity compared to others of a similar type.

Eg: The company has consistently outperformed its rivals this season.

heartfelt [adj]: showing strong feelings that are sincere.

Eg: In the ceremony, the director expressed heartfelt gratitude to all the employees, who worked diligently for the project.

contentment [n]: a state of happiness and satisfaction.

Eg: Reddy was an avid reader and got many hours of contentment and enjoyment from books and newspapers.



93. Sweets

Questions

- 1 Do you like to eat sweets?
- 2 Is your liking for sweets same as when you were a child?
- 3 Have you ever tried to make sweets?
- 4 Why do people like sweets?

Sample Answers

- 1 Do you like to eat sweets?

(Answer) Yes, I count myself as **having a sweet tooth**.

(Give a reason for your answer) I usually have Tiramisu or a croissant for dessert. Bakery shops on the road never fail to **capture** my attention. It **makes my mouth water** to think about all the sweets displayed there.

- 2 Is your liking for sweets same as when you were a child?

(Answer) When I was a child, I used to eat candies and biscuits **sparingly**. However, the more I grew, the more I was into sweets. Sweets were the one thing that kept me going when things got tough. The handmade ones were, to put it simply, edible happiness, cheaper **antidepressants**, and a quick way to see the bright side of life if eaten in moderation and provided you have enough self-control.

- 3 Have you ever tried to make sweets?

(Answer) Honestly, I have not.

(Give a reason for your answer) I have read the recipes for my favourite cakes, but they are **by no means** simple. However, I would love to try baking cookies or making a mousse in the future.

- 4 Why do people like sweets?

(Answer) Our bodies are naturally wired to **crave sugar** for various reasons. When we crave for sugar, we are craving the nutrients that are found in fruit or desserts. The mental craving comes from the serotonin – a neurotransmitter that gives us a sense of **well-being**, and



helps **moderate** our moods, sleep cycles and our appetite – which is released after we consume sweets.

Vocabulary

have a sweet tooth

Meaning: enjoy sugary food

Example: My brother has a sweet tooth and I'm afraid that he will become obese.

make your mouth water

Meaning: make you feel very hungry for something

Example: It makes my mouth water just to think about eating beef noodles.

capture [v]: if something captures your imagination or attention, you feel very interested and excited by it.

Eg: The American drive to land a man on the Moon captured the imagination/attention of the whole world.

sparingly [adv]: in small amounts, or without wasting any.

Eg: There wasn't enough coal during the war, so we had to use it sparingly.

antidepressant [n]: an antidepressant drug.

Eg: Antidepressants are medications used to treat major depressive disorder

by no means [expression]: not at all.

Eg: It is by no means clear what the president can do to end the strike.

crave [v]: feel a powerful desire for (something).

Eg: Many young children crave attention.

well-being [n]: the state of feeling healthy and happy.

Eg: People doing yoga benefit from an increased feeling of well-being.

moderate [v]: to (cause to) become less in size, strength, or force; to reduce something.

Eg: The president may have to moderate his stance on tax cuts.



94. Scenery

Questions

- 1 Is there any beautiful scenery in your hometown?
- 2 How can you try to live in a house with a good view?
- 3 Do people like to take photos of beautiful scenery?
- 4 Why do people prefer to use mobile phones to take photos of beautiful scenery?

Sample Answers

- 1 Is there any beautiful scenery in your hometown?

(Answer) My hometown is **renowned** for its breathtaking scenery.

(Give a reason for your answer) It is an area of **outstanding** natural beauty and for me, one of the most beautiful places on earth. It has everything; historical sites, fantastic beaches, rolling mountains, dense forests and **picturesque** countryside, extraordinary cuisine and hospitable people. There are also golden palaces, temples, shrines, and an impressive dancing stage, **majestic** tombs, and ancient meditative landscapes.

- 2 How can you try to live in a house with a good view?

(Answer) A good location can mean different things to different people, of course, but there are also objective factors that determine a home's value. For me, it is the accessibility, appearance, and amenities of the **residential area** that are **inextricably** linked with how good the view of my house is.

- 3 Do people like to take photos of beautiful scenery?

(Answer) Well, I think most people do.

(Give a reason for your answer) Shooting landscapes forces you to get outside and find the beauty around you. Sometimes this means discovering places right in front of your eyes that you just never noticed were beautiful before. For me, whenever I get out and set up to shoot a landscape scene, I find that my mind is freed of worry and **distractions**.

- 4 Why do people prefer to use mobile phones to take photos of beautiful scenery?

(Answer) I think this is a matter of personal choice.



(Give a reason for your answer) **Handy gadgets** like phones help one to capture the beautiful scenery at any time they want. Then, they can share the photos immediately on social networking sites such as Facebook, Instagram. And when the pictures are stored in your cell phone, it is much easier to see them as compared to a professional camera.

Vocabulary

residential area

Meaning: an area where people live

Example: I live in a residential area of a busy town in the south of Spain

gadget

Meaning: a technological tool like a mobile phone or camera

Example: Such a gadget would help you considerably in studying.

renowned [adj]: famous .

Eg: She felt pressure because of her renowned father.

outstanding [adj]: clearly very much better than what is usual.

Eg: Her outstanding performances set a new benchmark for singers throughout the world.

picturesque [adj]: (esp. of a place) attractive in appearance.

Eg: The city is known for its picturesque surroundings and pleasant climate.

majestic [adj]: beautiful, powerful, or causing great admiration and respect.

Eg: The majestic Montana scenery will leave you breathless.

inextricably [adv]: in a way that is unable to be separated, released, or escaped from.

Eg: The Louis Armstrong legend is inextricably linked with his recordings.

distraction (n): something that prevents someone from giving their attention to something else.

Eg: You can turn the television off if you find it a distraction.

handy [adj]: useful or convenient.

Eg: We found it handy to have a cellular phone.



95. Museum

Questions

- 1 Do you go on field trips to museums to learn history?
- 2 Do you learn much history at school?
- 3 When was the last time you read a history publication?

Sample Answers

- 1 Do you go on field trips to museums to learn history?

(Answer) Yes, I sometimes do.

(Give a reason for your answer) As I see it, this kind of educational trip is a beneficial way for a student to acquire knowledge and experience. History teachers in my school often organize trips to museums to **familiarize** students with historical events or figures in a **fascinating** way. I remember that the students were always in eager **anticipation** before trips to museums.

- 2 Do you learn much history at school?

(Answer) Well, history was my favourite subject in school

(Give a reason for your answer) I'm quite **enthusiastic about** delving into the past and learning from the mistakes our forefathers made. Besides, my History teacher in high school always delivered engaging lessons. Unlike other teachers who compelled students to learn to get good grades, she showed the beauty of learning and encouraged us to **pursue** our interests.

- 3 When was the last time you read a history publication?

(Answer) I'm genuinely interested in history books, so I read them frequently.

(Give a reason for your answer) The recent one I read has an **unpredictable** plot, and it has received widespread **acclaim** from book critics around the world.

Vocabulary

higher education:

Meaning: education, usually in a college or university that is followed after high school or secondary school



Example: Higher education is only suitable for those committed enough to learning.

with a view to [expression]: with an intention to do something:

Eg: The politician reveals the truth with a view to gaining more faith from the public.

fascinating [adj]: extremely interesting and attractive.

Eg: Your trip to Alaska sounds absolutely fascinating.

anticipation [n]: a feeling of excitement about something that is going to happen in the near future.

Eg: The postponement of the film's sequel has held cinemagoers in eager anticipation for several months.

(be) enthusiastic about [adj]: showing enthusiasm.

Eg: Marcias's lifelong interest in science learning stems from growing up as the oldest child in a family enthusiastic about learning.

pursue [v]: to try to achieve something.

Eg: Liam plans to pursue a career in advertising.

from time to time [expression]: sometimes:

Eg: I meet my old friends from time to time.

unpredictable [adj]: likely to change suddenly and without reason and therefore not able to be predicted (= expected before it happens) or depended on.

Eg: The weather there can be unpredictable - one minute it's blue skies and the next minute it's pouring rain.

acclaim [n]: public approval and praise.

Eg: Despite the critical acclaim, the novel did not sell well.



96. Art

Questions

- 1 Do you like art?
- 2 Have you ever visited an art gallery?
- 3 Is there any art work on the wall in your room?

Sample Answers

1 Do you like art?

(Answer) I'm an **avid** fan of art.

(Give a reason for your answer) Art is a part of my life. I love art, in any form it presents itself. My heart swells once I've made something pretty. Different **genres** of art, such as music, architecture, literature, culture are appealing to me.

2 Have you ever visited an art gallery?

(Answer) Yes, I have.

(Give a reason for your answer) After I graduated, I began to enjoy taking trips to various art exhibitions. Since then, I have **established** relationships with a few friends that are artists, and now they invite me to their galleries quite often. Visiting art galleries is also a way to **keep myself updated with** new trends in the contemporary world of art. Believe it or not, this kind of experience **relieves** much of my work-related stress.

3 Is there any art work on the wall in your room?

(Answer) Yes, I have.

(Give a reason for your answer) Wall art draws the eye, pulls together space, and makes my home inviting. I usually hang artworks of rural areas that depict **breathtaking** scenery, space and other amazing places such as forests, lakes or mountains. These pictures always **capture the attention** of guests.

Vocabulary

avid [n]: extremely eager or interested: say mē

Eg: He took an avid interest in the project.



genre [n]: a style, especially in the arts, that involves a particular set of characteristics

Eg: What genre does the book fall into - comedy or tragedy?

cater for [v]: to provide the things that a particular person or situation needs
or wants

Eg: The class caters for all ability ranges.

establish [v]: to start having a relationship with, or communicating with another person, company, country, or organization

Eg: There is a strong need to establish effective communication links between staff, parents, pupils, and external bodies.

(to) keep oneself up to date with something [v]: keep updated with new thing

Eg: My father always tries to keep himself up to date with political news.

(to) relieve [v]: to remove or reduce an unpleasant feeling or pain

Eg: Being able to say the truth at last seemed to relieve her.

breathtaking [adj]: very exciting or impressive (usually in a pleasant way)

Eg: To the whole mountain-climbing team, the scene was one of the most breathtaking beauties in the world.

capture one's attention [expression]: to interest someone

Eg: Most of the textbooks we looked at were too dull to capture students' attention.



97. Cake

Questions

- 1 Do you like desserts?
- 2 Do you like eating cakes?
- 3 Have you ever made cakes?
- 4 What are the special cakes in your country?

Sample Answers

- 1 Do you like desserts?

(Answer) Yes, I do.

(Give a reason for your answer) Eating desserts after meals make me feel more **productive** and positive. I'm sure you've turned to a box of chocolates or gobbled down an apple pie on a "bad day" so that you could feel there's still hope left in the world. Nothing can give you more pleasure than eating your favourite dessert. And this feeling is vital to your **well-being**.

- 2 Do you like eating cakes?

(Answer) I must admit that I **have a sweet tooth**, so cakes are my favourite kind of food.

(Give a reason for your answer) I'm **into the habit of** eating different kinds of cakes at the end of every week as a treat to myself. Somehow, this is my unique strategy to **cope with** stress related to the work-life balance. Almost every kind of cake **suits my tastes**.

- 3 Have you ever made cakes?

(Answer) Unfortunately, I haven't.

(Give a reason for your answer) I have read the recipes for my favourite cakes sometimes, but they are **by no means** simple. However, I would love to try baking cookies or making a mousse in the future.

- 4 What are the special cakes in your country?

(Answer) There is a wide range of Vietnamese cakes you shouldn't miss when you visit my country.



(Give a reason for your answer) Firstly, the square glutinous rice cake (banh chung) is a must-eat dish at Tet festival in Vietnam. It has a square shape and symbolizes the earth. This cake is made from glutinous rice wrapped in green “dong” leaves. The filling is made from mung bean, pork belly. Besides, banh xeo is famous with Vietnamese people and tourists from around the world for its great taste. Banh xeo is a crispy yellow turmeric crepe with **nutritious** ingredients such as shrimps, pork belly, mushrooms, bean sprouts.

Vocabulary

have a sweet tooth

Meaning: enjoy sugary food

Example: My brother has a sweet tooth and I’m afraid that he will become obese.

productive [adj]: resulting in or providing a large amount or supply of something.

Eg: He had an amazingly productive five years in which he managed to write four novels.

well-being [n]: the state of feeling healthy and happy.

Eg: People doing yoga benefit from an increased feeling of well-being.

in the habit of [expression]: if you are in the habit of doing something, you do it regularly or often.

Eg: They were in the habit of giving two or three dinner parties a month.

cope with [v]: deal with.

Eg: It must be really hard to cope with three young children and a job.

(to) suit one’s tastes [expression]: be suitable to what somebody likes or prefers .

Eg: A beautifully striped dress will be likely to suit Linda’s taste.

by no means [expression]: not at all.

Eg: It is by no means clear what the president can do to end the strike.

nutritious [adj]: very good for you, containing many of the substances which help the body to grow.

Eg: My mother always gives us tasty and nutritious meals.



98. Laugh

Questions

- 1 Do you like to watch movies or TV shows that make people laugh?
- 2 Do you usually make your friends laugh?
- 3 Are you the kind of person who makes people laugh?

Sample Answers

- 1 Do you like to watch movies or TV shows that make people laugh?

(Answer) Yes, I do.

(Give a reason for your answer) I have a cheerful **disposition**, and I'm quite **fun-loving**, so comedies are my favourite choices to feel **at ease**. I think the message in these kinds of movies re mind people that life isn't simple and it doesn't come without **obstacles**, so smiling keeps you optimistic. As I see it, comedians **radiate** a warmth that draws others to them instantly.

- 2 Do you usually make your friends laugh?

(Answer) Yes, in various **contexts**.

(Give a reason for your answer) Yes, being able to make someone laugh is a kind of talent, I guess. Frequently, I try to tell a funny joke or a story that I find interesting to **uplift** my friends' mood. In our meetings, I do funny actions to amuse them as I **utterly** enjoy spending time with them and like to see them happy.

- 3 Are you the kind of person who makes people laugh?

(Answer) Yes, I think I am.

(Answer) It takes a lot of mental energy to come up with **quick-witted** quips that light up grins on others' faces. Seeing others laugh at your jokes gives a sense of **refreshment**. I count myself as fortunate to have a good sense of humour. As the old saying goes, "life's better when you're laughing".

Vocabulary

fun-loving



Meaning: enjoy having fun

Example: I'd say we're fun-loving and tend to be a bit extroverted

Other vocabulary:

disposition [n]: the particular type of character that a person naturally has.

Eg: She is of a nervous/cheerful/sunny disposition.

at ease [expression]: relaxed.

Eg: She soon put/set me at ease (= made me relaxed).

obstacle [n]: something that blocks you so that movement, going forward, or action is prevented or made more difficult.

Eg: The biggest obstacle in our way was a tree trunk in the road.

radiate [v]: to express strongly an emotion or quality, or (of an emotion or quality) to be expressed strongly by someone.

Eg: He simply radiates integrity.

context [n]: the situation within which something exists or happens, and that can help explain it.

Eg: It is important to see all the fighting and bloodshed in his plays in historical context.

uplift [v]: elevate or stimulate (someone) morally or spiritually.

Eg: The people went home, uplifted by what the priest said.

utterly [adv]: completely or extremely.

Eg: She was utterly devastated when her husband died.

quick-witted [adj]: showing or characterized by an ability to think or respond quickly or effectively.

Eg: Undemonstrative, quick-witted, alert and intelligent: he has it all.

refreshment [n]: the fact of making somebody feel stronger or less tired or hot.

Eg: Minh is trying to find a place for rest and refreshment.



99. Water Sports

Questions

- 1 Have you ever played water sports?
- 2 What water sports do you like playing?
- 3 Are water sports popular in Vietnam?

Sample Answers

1 Have you ever played water sports?

Yes. My childhood was **linked with** swimming because I participated in many swimming competitions during my school years.

2 What water sports do you like playing?

I would say swimming, of course. However, it seems like my preference is **shifting** to water polo from swimming. However, until now, swimming remains my favourite.

3 Are water sports popular in Vietnam?

I don't think so. Water sports facilities are not widely available in my country. I bet that many people **have no clue** what water polo is.

Vocabulary

To be linked with something (phrase): link someone or something and someone or something together

Example: Her name is **being linked to** one of the top jobs in the company.

Shifted: move or cause to move from one place to another, especially over a small distance.

Example: She **shifted (her weight) uneasily from one foot to** the other.

to have no clue/don't have a clue (phrase): to be completely unable to guess, understand, or deal with something

Example: Who invented algebra?" "I **don't have a clue.**"



100. Running

Questions

- 1 Do you like running?
- 2 Have you ever taken a running class?
- 3 When was your last long run?
- 4 Why do people need to run?
- 5 Where do you think is a good place to run?
- 6 Do you think running is a good way to stay healthy?

Sample Answers

1 Do you like running?

Honestly speaking, I've never given a thought to it. I'm not too fond of it because each running session drains my energy.

2 Have you ever taken a running class?

No. I **dread to** think of having to run around 10 km daily. I don't think I'll ever take part in any running class in the foreseeable future.

3 When was your last long run?

I haven't run since my last physical education class in my second year. Now I'm in my 3rd year. Thus, my last long run was like one year and a half ago.

4 Why do people need to run?

Running has been scientifically proved to be one of the very few sports which requires nearly all the muscles to function, thus benefiting almost the whole body. Therefore, people need to run to **stay healthy**.

5 Where do you think is a good place to run?



Without a doubt, parks are the most ideal for runs. Since an enormous amount of oxygen is needed when running, it is better to run inside a place where the air is fresh and has enough oxygen rather than polluted with carbon dioxide.

6 Do you think running is a good way to stay healthy?

While the gym is **eclipsing** running in terms of popularity nowadays, I believe running is an effective way to stay healthy. It is also more economical than gym.

Vocabulary

to take up a hobby (phrase): To engage or become interested in an activity or pursuit

Example: Why don't you take up a hobby?

To dread (v): anticipate with great apprehension or fear.

Example: I **dread** to think what would happen if he was left to cope on his own.

to stay healthy (phrase): making sure not to get sick.

Example: Eating a recommended amount of vegetables helps you **stay healthy**.





101. Science

Questions

- 1 Have you ever taken science courses?
- 2 Is science important?
- 3 Should we learn science?
- 4 Did you have any science classes in elementary or high school?
- 5 What kind of science do people usually study?

Sample Answers

1 Have you ever taken science courses?

I have never taken any science courses before. I am a major in International Relations. My syllabus does not include subjects in science.

2 Is science important?

Although I am not a science student, I believe that it is **of great significance to** today's world, which is driven by science and technology. Without science, people would be still in the stone age.

3 Should we learn science?

Of course, everyone should know science, to some degree. Science explains the phenomenon that happens around us and helps build a strong human society and brings prosperity.

4 Did you have any science classes in elementary or high school?

Science was a compulsory subject in elementary school while high school science is divided into different subjects namely physics, biology and chemistry, which are also obligatory. Thus, I did study science in elementary and high school.

5 What kind of science do people usually study?

Normally, people focus on physics because it is more applicable in real life than biology and chemistry.



Vocabulary

To be comprised of something (phrase): to be made up of

Example: The class is **comprised** mainly **of** Italian and French students.

To be of significance for/to something: having the quality of being "significant"

Example: The discovery of the new drug is **of** great **significance for/to** people suffering from heart problems.





102. Opinions/Ideas

Questions

- 1 When should children form opinions?
- 2 What are the benefits when children have their own opinions?
- 3 What are the responsibilities of teachers to help children develop their ideas/opinions?
- 4 Do you think children are taught to have the same opinions as their parents?

Sample Answers

1 When should children form opinions?

They should be given the right to express their own opinions and participate in family affairs as soon as they start primary school, mostly at the age of 6.

2 What are the benefits when children have their own opinions?

It has numerous benefits. It helps older family members understand what the children need, thus giving them better care.

3 What are the responsibilities of teachers to help children develop their ideas/opinions?

Teachers should be responsible for sharpening children's critical thinking skills, which is vital for forming opinions. Also, they should encourage them to speak up when needed.

4 Do you think children are taught to have the same opinions as their parents?

I don't think so. Children's opinions may be similar to their parents' rather than the same. The similarity level may vary, though.

Vocabulary

Affair (n): an event or sequence of events of a specified kind or that has previously been referred to.

Example: She organizes her **financial affairs** very efficiently.



To **speak up** (v): express one's opinions frankly and publicly.

Example: If you disagree, please **speak up**.





103. Alone

Questions

- 1 When was the last time you were alone?
- 2 What do you like to do when you are alone?
- 3 Do you wish to have more time alone?
- 4 Is it essential to have some time alone?

Sample Answers

- 1 **When was the last time you were alone?**

Answer: Maybe it was about one month ago when I made a solo trip to Thailand. I stayed there for five days and explored Bangkok on my own.

- 2 **What do you like to do when you are alone?**

Answer: I enjoy being alone on the weekend morning, reading some books, and playing computer games.

- 3 **Do you wish to have more time alone?**

Answer: Well, I'd rather hang out with my friends than being alone since friends entertain me a lot, and you need to be sociable in the society.

- 4 **Is it essential to have some time alone?**

Answer: Absolutely. There are moments that you get stressed out, and being alone can be an ideal way to let your hair down.

Vocabulary

Solo trip (n): is "alone" or "by one's self"

Eg: You should make a solo trip to Thailand sometimes! I'm sure it'll be fun.



To entertain somebody (v): to amuse or interest people in a way that gives them pleasure

Eg: They entertained us to a party last night.

Stressed out (adj): worried and nervous

Eg: He has been up to his ears with studying recently, no wonder he gets stressed out.

Let your hair down (Idiom): behave uninhibitedly.

Eg: Well, it's the weekend. You should just let your hair down and relax.





104. News and Newspapers

Questions

- 1 Which do you prefer to read, newspapers or magazines?
- 2 Do you prefer to read news online or in newspapers?
- 3 What's your opinion of newspapers?
- 4 Can you suggest why more and more people are seeing (or, reading) the news on their phones today?

Sample Answers

1 Which do you prefer to read, newspapers or magazines?

I prefer reading newspapers over magazines. Newspapers offer information about the city, state, centre, sports, finance, economy and also contain editorial columns on topics of national interest. A person can gain knowledge about affairs within and outside his nation. Magazines do offer detailed coverage but are restricted to a particular field.

2 Do you prefer to read news online or in newspapers?

I prefer to read news online. The first reason is that it eliminates the anxiety of waiting for the newspaper delivery in the morning. Additional information can be accessed quickly and conveniently. For example, suppose the news is about a doctor and his email address is mentioned at the end. In that case, the person reading the news can immediately write an email to the doctor which is not possible in a newspaper.

3 What's your opinion of newspapers?

I think newspapers will continue to exist amidst their electronic-counterparts. But I feel they are opinionated. For example, suppose there is a column dedicated to a particular journalist, and he/she is in good terms with a politician. In that case, he/she may not aggressively attack the politician even when the person is found guilty.

4 Can you suggest why more and more people are seeing (or, reading) the news on their phones today?

The main reason for its popularity is convenience. Mobile phones are handy, and a person can read the news even when he/she is travelling. Also, a person gets instant updates on important events.



Vocabulary

Affair (noun) - an event or sequence of events of a specified kind or that has previously been referred to.

Eg: Current affairs was one of her elective subjects for the civil service exam.

Anxiety (noun) - a feeling of worry, nervousness, or unease about something with an uncertain outcome.

Eg: Sita could sense her dog's anxiety

Aggressively (adverb) - in a determined and forceful way.

Eg: Sam prepared for the exams aggressively.

Guilty (adj) - culpable of or responsible for a specified wrongdoing.

Eg: She felt guilty of not taking care of her parents.

convenience (noun) - the quality of being convenient; suitability. anything that saves or simplifies work, adds to one's ease or comfort

Eg: She agreed to postpone the appointment to 3:00 PM at the doctor's convenience.





105. Fish

Questions

- 1 Where can you (or, we, or one) see fish?
- 2 Do you like eating fish?
- 3 Have you ever gone fishing?
- 4 Is fishing a very popular activity in your country?
- 5 Why do people go fishing?

Sample Answers

1 Where can you (or, we, or one) see fish?

Fishes can be found easily on the seas and oceans. In rural areas, fishes can be found in the freshwater lakes and ponds. Sometimes you may find them in the wells too. In the cities, fishes can be found in aquariums. Also, people set up fish tanks in their homes.

2 Do you like eating fish?

I love them and am especially fond of the pickled herring. They are a rich source of proteins, vitamins and essential fatty acids. But I avoid eating canned fish because I suspect the preservation techniques used by manufacturers.

3 Have you ever gone fishing?

My dad worked as an Engineer for the government. The job involved frequent transfers. So we got a chance to live in a village. It had a huge lake. I befriended the village boys, and they taught me the techniques of fishing. I did manage to get some catches, but I released them into the water immediately.

4 Is fishing a very popular activity in your country?

Not really. Our country does organise fishing camps where people get together and have fun. But due to ecological concerns, angling is banned in some camps.

5 Why do people go fishing?



Some people pursue it as a pastime, while others go fishing because they earn their daily bread out of it. Children have fun while fishing.

Vocabulary

rural (adj) - in, relating to, or characteristic of the countryside rather than the town.

Eg: Rural areas are generally picturesque.

Aquarium (noun) - a transparent tank of water in which live fish and other water creatures and plants are kept.

Eg: There was an aquarium near his place.

Canned (adj) - preserved in a sealed can or jar

Eg: She bought some canned vegetables.

befriended (verb) - act as or become a friend to (someone), especially when they are in need of help or support.

Eg: The freshers befriended each other very soon.

Angling (noun) - the sport or pastime of fishing with a rod and line.

Eg: I think angling is morally wrong.





106. Insects

Questions

- 1 Are there many (different types of) insects around where you live?
- 2 How do you like insects?
- 3 How do you feel about insects?
- 4 Is there any insect that you particularly dislike?
- 5 Do you think insects are useful?

Sample Answers

- 1 **Are there many (different types of) insects around where you live?**

There are about 20 species of insects in the place where I live. The most common ones are locusts, bed bugs and dragonflies. Locusts look like grasshoppers. Bed bugs are reddish-brown. Dragonflies have wings.

- 2 **How do you like insects?**

I'm pretty scared of them. They multiply in numbers and cause a lot of diseases. Bed bugs are accused of causing some form of typhoid.

- 3 **How do you feel about insects?**

I like to observe their movements from a safe distance. I hate to have them sit on me or hear them buzzing around me.

- 4 **Is there any insect that you particularly dislike?**

I hate the bed bugs. They somehow manage to find their places in the crevices in the furniture. I get annoyed when bitten by them.

- 5 **Do you think insects are useful?**

I think ladybugs and bees are very helpful in agriculture. While lady bugs ward off the pests, honey bees help in pollination.

Vocabulary



species (noun) - a group of living organisms consisting of similar individuals capable of exchanging genes or interbreeding.

Eg: There are different types of plant and animal species in the forest.

buzzing (adj) - making a low, continuous humming or murmuring sound.

Eg: The insect was buzzing inside the room

Bitten (verb) - (of a snake, insect, or spider) wound (someone or something) with fangs, pincers, or a sting.

Eg: If you're bitten by an insect, you should immediately rush to the doctor.

Crevices (noun) - a narrow opening or fissure, especially in a rock or wall.

Eg: Dust accumulated in the crevices of the walls.

pollination (noun) - act of transferring pollen grains from the male anther of a flower to the female stigma.

Eg: Scientists urge farmers to encourage natural pollination.





107. Discussions

Questions

- 1 What topics do you usually discuss with your friends?
- 2 What kinds of discussions did you have when you were a child?
- 3 Do you often change your mind after having a discussion with someone?
- 4 Do you tend to talk more than others when you are discussing something with other people?

Sample Answers

1 What topics do you usually discuss with your friends?

When I was in school and University, we used to discuss actors/actresses and trends in fashion. We were also very much interested in gossip about famous personalities. We discussed politics too. Now at work, we discuss topics like the economy and the importance of a stable government etc.

2 What kinds of discussions did you have when you were a child?

Well, we used to have petty fights over toys and have never-ending discussions on who owned it. We also discussed cartoon characters. Sometimes, we discussed the stars and the sky.

3 Do you often change your mind after having a discussion with someone?

Sometimes I do. When I perceive that the other person is correct, I change the impression that I previously had. But it does not happen all the time. I also make sure that the discussion does not turn into an argument.

4 Do you tend to talk more than others when you are discussing something with other people?

Not always. It depends how informed I'm about the topics. When it's a technical discussion, I prepare thoroughly beforehand and end up talking a lot. When I don't have enough information, I tend to keep quiet.

Vocabulary

Fashion (noun) - a popular or the latest style of clothing, hair, decoration, or behaviour.

Eg: The actress tried to popularise the vintage collections which are actually old fashioned.



Gossip (noun) - casual or unconstrained conversation or reports about other people, typically involving details that are not confirmed as being true.

Eg: That the government is going to build a school, is a gossip.

petty (adj) - of little importance; trivial.

Eg: Ram's kids always had petty fights.

perceive (verb) - to attain awareness or understanding of.

Eg: The doctor perceived that Sita was indeed telling the truth.

Argument (noun) - an exchange of diverging or opposite views, typically a heated or angry one.

Eg: Scientists had heated arguments over the theory of relativity.





108. Shopping

Questions

- 1 Do you like (going) shopping? (Why?/Why not?)
- 2 What do you think is the most difficult (or, unpleasant) part about shopping?
- 3 Do you prefer to buy things yourself or to have your parents buy things for you?
- 4 Do you prefer shopping alone or with others?
- 5 When do you prefer to go shopping?

Sample Answers

1 Do you like (going) shopping? (Why?/Why not?)

I love shopping. It is a feel-good factor. I like to saunter inside a store and scan every product. I don't buy all of them, though. I also like to shop on the roadsides in the evening.

2 What do you think is the most difficult (or, unpleasant) part about shopping?

The glitch in shopping is that you have to visit many stores to know the exact price. It does not get over in one place. Also, there are places where one has to have good bargaining skills. Else he/she will be fooled.

3 Do you prefer to buy things yourself or to have your parents buy things for you?

I never allow others to choose for me because it turns out to be a disaster. Be it parents, friends, siblings or cousins they end up buying something I don't like. So I prefer to go in person and buy things.

4 Do you prefer shopping alone or with others?

I prefer to go with friends and family. It is fun to shop amidst jokes and laughter. It enlivens the experience.

5 When do you prefer to go shopping?



I prefer to go shopping in the evening. The weather is pleasant, and I like to walk on the roads enjoying the sun's pinkish light. I don't care if it rains in the evening. I carry an umbrella and go ahead with my shopping plans.

Vocabulary

Feel good factor (word) - a widespread feeling of well-being and financial security, especially viewed as a factor in increased consumer spending.

Eg: The shopkeeper used a feel good factor to increase sales.

Glitch (noun) - Error, mistake

Eg: The glitch in this software is that it goes on indefinitely.

Bargain (verb) - negotiate the terms and conditions of a transaction.

Eg: He bargained with the merchant and bought the table at a lesser price.

disaster (noun) - a sudden or great misfortune or failure

Eg: The Diwali celebration was a disaster.

Enliven (verb) - make (something) more entertaining, interesting, or appealing.

Eg: The little girl enlivened the dance show with her songs.





109. Gifts

Questions

- 1 Do you ever give people gifts?
- 2 Do you like receiving presents?
- 3 Have you ever given someone a gift you made yourself?
- 4 Is there anyone you'd like to give a present to?
- 5 In your country, is it necessary to bring a gift when you visit someone?

Sample Answers

1 Do you ever give people gifts?

Yes, I love to send gifts to my loved ones. I think they are the best way to express love and affection. I give gifts to my parents on their wedding day every year. I also send gifts to cousins and friends on their birthdays.

2 Do you like receiving presents?

Everybody likes to receive gifts, and I'm no exception. When I was a kid, I celebrated birthdays with the sole idea of getting gifts from people. But as I grew older, I learnt that gifts could be used to tempt people to do wrong things. For example, an honest manager in a firm may be given gifts to make him do something wrong. So I began to be extra cautious when receiving gifts at work.

3 Have you ever given someone a gift you made yourself?

Yes, I learnt embroidery when I was in school. I recently embroidered a peacock on a white handkerchief and gifted it to my mom.

4 Is there anyone you'd like to give a present to?

Yes, I always wanted to give a gift to my Science teacher at school. She was exceptionally good and treated all of us with love and care. I felt at home with her. But she quit soon, and I've no idea where she is now.

5 In your country, is it necessary to bring a gift when you visit someone?



It is not mandatory. But people usually get something for the visatee. It need not necessarily be a gift. It is very rare to find people visiting empty-handed.

Vocabulary

Wedding day (noun) - the day or anniversary of a wedding..

Eg: Ram celebrated his wedding day in a grand manner.

No exception (idiom) - not different from

Eg: She always sold quality products and this furniture is no exception.

sole (verb) - being the only one;only

Eg: Tom was the sole reason for Jim to continue work in the office.

exceptionally (adverb) - to a greater degree than normal; unusually.

Eg: It is exceptionally hot today.

mandatory (adj) - required by law or mandate; compulsory.

Eg: It is not a mandatory document.





110. Meeting new people/ Making friends

Questions

- 1 Do you like meeting new people?
- 2 Do you like face-to-face conversations with people?
- 3 What kinds of people do you like to make friends with?
- 4 Is it easy to make friends in your work (or job)?
- 5 How long does it take to get to know a person?

Sample Answers

1 Do you like meeting new people?

Yes, I'm quite chatty and love to meet new people and talk to them. It is interesting to see new faces. It is by meeting new people that we widen our circle of friends.

2 Do you like face-to-face conversations with people?

Yes, I think it is more effective than a telephone conversation. When talking face-to-face, you can quickly sense the other person's intentions, which is not possible in a phone call.

3 What kinds of people do you like to make friends with?

I accept people as they are. As every person is unique, I've no preferences. So I have quite a lot of friends who are in different fields.

4 Is it easy to make friends in your work (or job)?

Yes. At the office, you work as a team. So you have to talk to the other person to gain knowledge on his area of expertise. If all goes well, there are chances of very good friendships in the future.

5 How long does it take to get to know a person?



It depends on how much time is spent with the person. If person A spends most of his time with person B, they may get to know each other quickly. So it depends on the interaction level.

Vocabulary

chatty (adj) - readily engaging in informal talk.

Eg: Ram's kids were chatty.

Widen (verb) - make or become wider.

Eg: "You should widen your knowledge".

intention (noun) - a thing intended; an aim or plan.

Eg: "There are honourable intentions behind this move".

expertise (noun) - expert skill or knowledge; expertness

Eg: Java is his area of expertise.

interaction (adj) - communication or direct involvement with someone or something.

Eg: The boss was worried that there was no interaction between the team members.





IELTS Speaking – Part 2 & 3

1. Describe Your First Day At School

You should talk about:

- Where was it?
- What happened?
- Explain how you felt on that day?

Sample Answer

(Where was it?) I attended two different schools. Although I was just 4 years old when I was enrolled in primary school, the memory of my first day is still fresh in my mind. My primary school was smaller than my secondary school and was just about half an hour from my home. Here I'd like to talk about my first day at primary school.

(What happened?) While my mother was discussing the timings with the teacher, I was feeling very anxious and continuously sobbing as my mother, who accompanied me, was about to leave me alone with a few strangers whom I have not even met. As I turned around, I saw many kids like me who were jittery and weeping. The next moment, I was handed over to the teacher. She gently caressed and introduced me to the entire class. Later, we got to know each other, and the teacher made us do some ice-breakers.

(Explain how you felt on that day?) Post recess, the teacher distributed toffees and toys and made all the kids feel comfortable. After the last bell rang, everyone waved goodbye to the teacher and delightfully ran away to their parents waiting for them. Overall, my first day in school was emotional and nerve-wracking at the same time. I'd never forgotten that momentous period of my life.

Vocabulary

Jittery(adj): Feeling nervous or tense.

Eg: When I first sat on the roller-coaster, I felt jittery.

Caressed(verb): to kiss or touch fondly.

Eg: The mother caressed the little child.

Ice-breaker: An activity or a game designed to cheer up and reduce tensions.

Eg: We did some ice-breakers during the house-warming party.



Nerve-wracking (verb): distressing and irritating.

Eg: It was a nerve-wracking moment.

Momentous(adj): having a great impact or lasting importance.

Eg: My brother's wedding was one of the momentous occasions.

Part 3

1 Do you think students should be taken to school by their parents or go by themselves?

If a student is in primary school, then he/she can use the school bus. Parents may also drop them to school. But if students are mature enough to go to school by themselves, they can go on their own without being dependent on their parents.

2 How can children become more independent?

To become more independent, children must gain a sense of importance. They should target the priorities and manage their time efficiently. If parents stop comparing and criticizing their children, then they can automatically become responsible and independent.

3 Should children rely on their parents or be independent?

This has always been a conflicting subject. Most of the parents find it difficult to deal with such a dilemma. However, in my opinion, until children become self-sufficient and self-reliant, they can rely on their parents. Once they become mature and start earning, they should stand on their own legs. This will help them be independent, understand how the world works and be more confident.

4 What is the effect if parents interfere with children's life too much?

The interference of parents in children's life can cause domestic conflict between both of them. Parents who exert control and intrude into their children's personal lives are not letting their children be self-confident and decisive.

Vocabulary

Criticizing: to say what is wrong or bad with something/somebody

Eg: She was criticizing the teachers for not looking after her sick child.

Conflict: a difference between two or more notions or ideas

Eg: For a woman, there is always a conflict between her family and career.



Exert: to put efforts

Eg: You would have to exert yourself to accomplish your goals.

Intrude: to enter a situation or place without permission

Eg: They intrude into my house when I am not around.

Decisive: making something final or certain

Eg: Our trip to Jaipur is decisive.





2. Describe a Time You Made a Promise to someone

You should talk about:

- Whom did you make the promise to?
- Why did you make the promise?
- What was the promise?
- Was the promise easy to achieve?

Sample Answer

It is easy to make promises, but it is always hard to keep them as the saying goes, "Never make a promise in haste." So, if you don't intend to keep promises, then avoid making them.

(Whom did you make the promise to?): I had promised my best friend that I would visit her once she's back from the United States and spend an entire day with her and recollect our college memories. **(Why did you make the promise?)** My best friend moved with her family to the United States after graduation, while I became busy in my daily routine. Thus, we didn't get a chance to have a good time. It was very difficult, even to call or text her. **(What was the promise?)** One day, she called to tell me that she's coming to India for a week. On hearing the news, I was so excited that, impulsively, I promised to spend a day with her. **(Was the promise easy to achieve?)** I decided to take a day off and spend the day with her. But to my surprise, on the very same day, my manager asked me to come to the office as another colleague of mine was on sick leave and informed me that I had to work as a substitute. Irked, I reached the office and started my work, and tried to complete it at the earliest. Although it was difficult for me to manage work at the office, I did my best to finish it quickly and keep my promise of spending more time with her. Later, I called my best friend and convinced her to spend at least half a day with me. She gladly agreed, and we had a great time in the evening.

Vocabulary

Recollect (verb): To remember or recall (call to mind)

Eg: She recollected her childhood memories.

Routine: A sequence of action that is regularly repeated or followed.

Eg: My mother's daily routine includes cooking and cleaning.

Impulsively (adverb): Doing something suddenly or without forethought.

Eg: She impulsively jumped into the still water.



Irked (verb): irritated

Eg: She got irked when the manager chose her best friend.

Substitute: A person or a thing that serves in place of another.

Eg: She used the meat as a substitute for chicken while preparing the dish.

Part 3

1 Do Indian parents make a lot of promises to their children?

Yes, most Indian parents make promises to their children such as gifting their favourite toys or taking them on a vacation only to motivate them to achieve good academic results and maintain healthy competition amongst other children.

2 Do children also make a lot of promises to their parents?

Obviously Yes. Children make a lot of promises to their parents as parents have high hopes for them. Children make promises such as securing good grades, being obedient and disciplined, and not idling away their time but utilizing it in the right way, and many others.

3 Are most people able to fulfill their promises?

Most people try to fulfill their promises. Few of them don't. For example, some people promise to be on time, but they don't happen to be on time. So it is better to avoid making promises.

4 How do you feel when others break their promises?

I would feel terrible if someone makes a commitment and is unable to fulfill it. It will become hard for me to trust them again. Most people make promises frequently but are unable to keep them, which is very disappointing. Therefore, I believe that people should not be fool others by making false promises and think twice before making one.

Vocabulary

Idling: to spend time doing nothing

Eg: After her exams, you can only find her idling.

Terrible: unpleasant

Eg: Coming back from the office, he met with a terrible accident.

Disappointing: feeling sad because of something bad



Eg: Her behaviour toward me was disappointing.

Befool: to make a fool of

Eg: I wanted to help him in the business but he tried to befool me.





3. Describe an art exhibition that you visited

You should talk about:

- When did you see this exhibition?
- Where was the exhibition held?
- What was on display?
- Explain your impression of the exhibition?

Sample Answer

(When did you see this exhibition?) Post lockdown, I wanted to break the monotony of my life. So my parents decided to take me to the art exhibition set up by one of the Non-profit organizations to raise funds for the needy. **(Where was the exhibition held?)** The art exhibition was spread over the rooftop of the ITC Grand Chola, Chennai. Art and culture are considered the pulse of Chennai, and a wide range of art galleries and exhibitions are open to all art aficionados. **(What was on the display?)** From art installations, photography to unique contemporary art forms, the art exhibition had works of both international and domestic artists, which would have drawn every visitors' attention. There was a lot of beautifully handcrafted art, which was mesmerizing to the visitor's eyes. **(Explain your impression of the exhibition?)** Although I am not an art connoisseur, I was totally impressed by the fact that the art exhibition was set up to raise funds for the needy people who are facing financial hardships. Moreover, the exhibition also conducts workshops. Overall, my visit to the art exhibition was worth it.

Vocabulary

Monotony (Noun): Lacking interests; tired of following the same routine.

Eg: Rose hated the monotony of her job.

Aficionados(Noun): Someone who is very passionate and knowledgeable about an activity or subject.

Eg: Keith is an art aficionado who loves spending time in art galleries.

Contemporary(adj): Living or occurring at the same time; can be a person or a thing.

Eg: The annual event was captured by a contemporary photographer.

Handcrafted(adj): Making something skilfully by the use of hands.

Eg: We have a handcrafted table in our house.



Mesmerizing(adj): Captivating to the human eye; gaining one's attention.

Eg: I was mesmerized by the beauty of the Taj Mahal.

Connoisseur(Noun): An expert who has great taste.

Eg: He's a food connoisseur.

Part 3

1 How could art exhibitions attract more visitors?

Art exhibitions can attract more visitors by improving accessibility for people from all walks of life. They can invest in social media management and interact with the people to know more about their penchant for arts and cultures and introduce workshops and events accordingly. This way, more visitors will be attracted to the art exhibition.

2 Are art exhibitions popular in your country?

Yes, India is a diverse country, and art exhibitions and galleries are very popular. These arts have cultural and religious influences that attract everyone. The rich culture of India is reflected in various art forms.

3 Do you think people should have to pay to visit art exhibitions?

This mainly depends upon who is organizing the art exhibitions. If such an event is organized by a multi-billion dollar organization or a billionaire artist, even if people don't pay to visit, it would be adequate. On the other hand, if the art exhibition is set up by non-profit organizations, it will be easier for them to generate and raise funds.

4 How will art exhibitions change in the future?

The future is uncertain, but there is a possibility for some changes in the art exhibitions. With the help of technology, the exhibitions will start adapting the computerized versions of the art forms. Through this, it will be easier to learn more about art and culture.

Vocabulary

Accessibility: to provide a way of entering or using something

Eg: Computers have given the accessibility to the internet.

Penchant: something that is liked a lot

Eg: I have a penchant for books.

Exhibitions: a collection of objects shown to the public

Eg: My city is organizing a movie exhibition.

Influence: a power to affect somebody

Eg: He is under the influence of medicines.



Uncertain: not sure

Eg: Whether I am joining my friends is uncertain.





4. Describe a bag you want to own

You should talk about:

- What kind of bag it is?
- Where do you want to buy it?
- How much will it cost you?
- Why you want this kind of bag?

Sample Answer

Bags play an important role in the life of modern women. A huge variety of stylish bags are available in the market. These bags are considered fashion statements that can either break or make your style.

(What kind of bag it is?): It is a tote bag that is stylish, durable, and convenient to use. They are not only fashionable but suitable for every occasion. It can hold a lot of stuff and is waterproofed which is a good advantage. **(Where do you want to buy it?)** Though the tote bag is available in many retail stores, I'd like to purchase it online when the amazon sale goes live. By this way, I can even get an additional discount for branded tote bags. **(How much will it cost you?)** Most branded tote bags are expensive ranging from INR 1600. But the usual cost of tote bags is INR 900. Therefore, it depends on the person whether they opt for branded or unbranded tote bags based on their budget. **(Why you want this kind of bag?)** I want a branded tote bag as it is a bag for every occasion be it for office purposes or any others. These bags complement our stylish looks. The best thing is tote bags can be reused and are environmentally friendly. Overall, I believe that Tote bags are all-rounder bags, the best option available for anyone.

Vocabulary

Durable(adj): able to withstand pressure and damage for a long time.

Eg: Larch is considered to be one of the most durable of coniferous woods.

Convenient(adj): fitting in well with one's needs, purposes, and activities.

Eg: It is very convenient for her to reach the station early as she lives in the same area.

Stuff(Noun): matter, articles, materials, etc of a specified kind that are being referred to.

Eg: Rose threw all his stuff out of the car.



Unbranded(adj): A product not having or bearing a brand name.

Eg: Sheela bought an unbranded camera from the local shop.

Complement(Noun): something that contributes extra features to something so as to improve its quality.

Eg: She chose a dress that would compliment her personality.

All-rounder(Noun): a versatile thing or person who can do both activities at the same time.

Eg: John is an all-rounder, as he can do batting and bowling.

Part 3

1 Why do you think women like to buy bags?

Women love buying bags because they have so many accessories to carry, and these bags are convenient and make a fashion statement too. Some women match their outfits according to their bags.

2 Is the backpack practical in life?

In comparison with other bags, backpacks are better because they're easy and comfortable and occupy less space. But if they are too heavy to carry or used incorrectly, they can cause muscles or joint strains.

3 Why are some people willing to buy expensive bags?

Some people tend to buy expensive branded bags because they focus on quality, design, and material rather than the price. In contrast, others believe in buying unbranded bags and using them for a few days, and throwing them away.

4 In the future, what changes will bags have?

I believe that the bags in the future may be more practical and convertible from a handbag to shoulder bag to backpack. Also, people will start using bags made of jute, canvas etc. On top of that, it is possible that bags would be bigger than what they are currently. Spacious bags would attract more women, considering the amount of things they carry along.

5 Why do children need to carry a uniform school bag?

This is to avoid discrimination amongst the children. Every child must be treated the same, irrespective of their financial status. Therefore, it is mandatory and obligatory for children to conform to a uniform school bag.



Vocabulary

Strains: a pressure put on something

Eg: Working consistently has put strain on my shoulders.

Convertible: capable of changing into another shape.

Eg: Our neighbour has purchased a convertible car.

Discrimination: treating a person worse than the other

Eg: Our school does not have any discrimination.

Mandatory: something that should be done

Eg: Attending the office tomorrow is mandatory.

Conform: to obey the law or rule

Eg: All of the students must conform to this new rule.





5. Describe an experience you had as a member of a team

You should talk about:

- Where was it?
- Who were the members of the team?
- What role did you play in this team?
- And explain how you achieved your goal?

Sample Answer

Teamwork is an ability where you need to work towards a common goal. It can be considered as a fuel that allows ordinary people to achieve objectives that were once out of reach.

(Where was it?) I usually take part in many contests and competitions and have faced many positive and negative experiences. Then, it was the second year of my college. My tutor selected 5 other students and me from our department to participate in a play. **(Who were the members?)** They were my seniors and juniors. As we were in the same department, we got along with each other. Also, there was no partiality between seniors and juniors. **(What role did you play in the team?)** We were asked to select a topic and enact it. Everyone was very anxious and uptight. I went ahead and chose a topic which was Women Safety. We were given 5 minutes to prepare. So we decided to do a Mime Act, and My role was to ensure that I narrate the scenes clearly so that the spectators find them easier to understand. **(And explain how you achieved your goal?)** My team members acted well, and I synchronized the same by narrating it. Luckily, we finished our play on time with cooperation from each other. To our astonishment, everyone gave a standing ovation and appreciated our mime act. Overall, it was one of the best experiences I've ever had, and I believe that it all comes down to having people who understand each other and work well together.

Vocabulary

Tutor(Noun): Someone who helps a student understand the concepts, guides him with proper instructions.

Eg: Rose is a tutor at the Imperial Coaching Centre.

Partiality(Noun): Unfair bias in favour of one person or group or thing; Favouritism

Eg: The professor is partial towards toppers.

Uptight(adj): Angry or nervous in an overly controlled manner.

Eg: Tina was uptight at the wedding hall.



Mime Act: Acting a play or a skit through body language and gestures without the use of speech.

Eg: Rose's performance consisted of Mime and Music.

Synchronized(verb): Occur at the same time.

Eg: The sound and the picture has to synchronize properly.

Standing ovation: It is a form of applause where seated audiences stand up and applaud.

Eg: The Auditorium gave a standing ovation for her dance performance.

Part 3

1 Would you like to work alone or work with a partner?

Although I like to work individually, I also enjoy working with a partner to build strong relationships. It is a common belief that two or more people are always better than one for solving problems, finishing off tasks etc, effectively and efficiently.

2 What type of people are good to use?

People who are resourceful, responsible, and honest are good to use. But in my opinion, I'd want to work with a sincere and positive person who would take accountability for his/her actions and work.

3 Do you enjoy team work or group studying?

Yes, I enjoy working with a team because I get along with people. Teamwork and group study enable sharing of ideas and information and help us to be productive. And when we work together, we learn faster and better.

4 What are the benefits of studying alone?

One of the benefits of studying alone is that we can concentrate better and pace ourselves. If there would be nobody around, we would not be spending more time chatting but studying. This will help us understand our strengths and weaknesses better. Therefore, studying alone is the best way to improve our focus.

5 What can children learn through teamwork?

Children can learn many social skills such as patience, communication, compromise, tolerance, etc., through teamwork. They can learn to build a good relationship with their team members, which will be valuable in future.



Vocabulary

Resourceful: to be good at finding something

Eg: My grandfather's experience makes him extremely resourceful.

Accountability: to take responsibility

Eg: I take the accountability for my mistakes.

Pace: a step

Eg: She has a faster pace than me.

Compromise: an agreement where both the parties get to fulfill their wishes

Eg: Unless both parties agree to compromise, there will be no resolution.

Tolerance: a capacity to endure hardship or pain

Eg: My risk tolerance is almost nil.





6. Describe a time when you feel bored

You should talk about:

- When was it?
- where was it?
- Why did you get bored?
- How you felt about it?

Sample Answer

(When was it?) I am an extrovert, and I don't get bored easily. But, two years ago, I was bored to death and got so annoyed by the situation. **(Where was it?)** It was during my sister's arrival at the airport. Everyone in the family was very eager and curious to meet her as she's returning to India after a long gap of five years. All the family members decided to pick her from the airport. I was reluctant, but my mother insisted that I come, so we finally gathered at the waiting area at 2 PM as her flight would reach around 12.30 PM. **(Why did you get bored?)** When everyone was busy talking, I was killing my time on my phone. Suddenly there was an announcement that the flight has been delayed and will reach only at 5 PM. We were all astounded as we had already been waiting for an hour. I was fed up with waiting, but there was no other alternative because it would take an hour to reach home due to the traffic. **(How you felt about it?)** I felt exhausted with boredom, while the other members of my family were also tired and fatigued. So we decided to have some refreshments and then waited impatiently for my sister's arrival. After a long haul, her flight finally reached the airport at 5.30 PM, and we met her at 6 PM. Despite being an extrovert, I found it challenging to spend time in the airport.

Vocabulary

Bored to death(idiom): Hit by boredom.

Eg: Despite being surrounded by her friends, she was bored to death.

Curious(adj): Eager to know or do something.

Eg: She was curious to know about his secrets.

Reluctant(adj): Hesitating and unwilling to do something.

Eg: Rose reluctantly told that she will come to the wedding.



Kill my time: to spend time by doing something

Eg: John and his friends killed time watching the haunted movie.

Astounded(verb): Shock or amusement

Eg: Keith was astounded when he was announced as a winner.

Fatigued(verb): causing someone to feel exhausted.

Eg: They were fatigued by their long journey.

Part 3

1 What kind of jobs are boring?

According to me, jobs where you have to do the same work for an extended period and follow the same routine will definitely make you get bored. So it is imperative to change the way we work and give more attention to it.

2 Do people get bored easily? Why?

Yes, Most people get bored quickly because of the monotony or repetition of the same thing. If people are not engaged in such activities that are interesting and would keep them hooked, boringness ought to happen. If we don't pay attention to what we're doing, we are likely to get bored.

3 What can people do to stop boredom?

Overcoming boredom is difficult. But we can consciously try certain things, like being productive and taking advantage of dull, lifeless situations. People can work on a task that they've been putting off or learn a new skill.

4 Do you think these boring jobs will be done by machines in the future?

Maybe, Yes! Machines may replace humans and start doing these boring jobs as they won't get tired. In fact, there are enough examples nowadays where machines have already replaced humans into everyday tasks. Machines will complete their jobs diligently and effectively.

5 Why people do boring jobs?

Most people keep on doing boring jobs because they don't want to lose their good pay scale. They chose money over satisfaction. It depends upon people and their personal traits. I believe that people mainly opt for boring jobs for financial benefits.



Vocabulary

Imperative: important

Eg: Sunlight is an imperative for the development of bones.

Monotony: the state of being the same

Eg: The monotony in my professional life makes me sick.

Diligently: persistently

Eg: I have achieved everything in life diligently.

Traits: a quality in a person

Eg: Hiding things from her parents has become one of her traits.

Effectively: in a way that generates desired results

Eg: He dealt with his divorce effectively.





7. Describe a person who you think is very open

You should talk about:

- Who is this person?
- How you know this person?
- Why do you think this person is very open?
- Explain how you feel about this person?

Sample Answer

(Who is this person) Being expressive and open is a rare virtue that only a few people possess. Nowadays, most people don't hesitate to convey their views. On the contrary, there are some who don't find it easy to express their views. Here I will talk about my next-door neighbour, John, a straightforward and opinionated person. **(How do you know this person?)** When I was just 8 years old, John had moved into our colony after making a lot of money as a public speaker in the US. During the colony meetings, he didn't rely upon others to discuss any issues. Instead, he kept his views open for everyone. Many people even shared their worries to him so that he would speak his mind and give a solution to it. **(Why do you think this person is open?)** Once, our colony was facing a significant issue of water shortage. Many of them wrote about it to the municipalities, but no steps were taken. When John came to know about this, he gathered everyone and asked them to go on a rally. The next day, everyone went on a protest demanding water. Later, the authorities assured that water would be supplied within the next 5 hours. Due to John's altruistic nature, he became everyone's favourite. **(Explain how you feel about this person?)** John is a decisive person who thinks for the betterment of people and doesn't hesitate to go beyond the conventional domains to solve people's issues. I idolize him for his straightforwardness.

Vocabulary

Virtue(noun): A trait or a quality that is deemed to be morally good.

Eg: Sheela instilled virtues in her child, by telling stories.

Hesitate(verb): being reluctant to do something.

Eg: She was hesitating to eat the pasta made by his brother.

Opinionated(adj): Expressing their ideas and views strongly without hesitation.

Eg: Rose was opinionated but undeniably smart.



Rely(verb): Dependent on someone.

Eg: Children rely upon their parents until the age of 15.

Rally: To come together for a common cause.

Eg: The farmers went on a rally.

Altruistic(adj): showing selfless concern for the well-being of others.

Eg: It was an altruistic act.

Part 3

1 Is it difficult for Indian people to express their feelings?

Yes, Many Indians hesitate to express their feelings in public because they are emotional, sensitive, and shy. Moreover, one of the major reasons behind this is that most of the Indians don't get the emotional support as required to open up. Thus, they feel that it is not worth sharing about the things going on in their minds.

2 Who do you think will talk more? Children or grown ups?

Of course, children will talk more as they tend to share every detail of what happened to them. Children don't have the strategy to calm themselves while talking. They also don't have a curtain. They cannot differentiate between what should be said and what should be avoided. In their tiny brains, they have millions of questions. So they are chatty.

3 What do you think is the difference between boys and girls in expressing their feelings?

Generally, girls become emotional when expressing their feelings, while boys express their feelings with anger and positive stimuli. Also, girls don't hide away from somebody they trust. On the other hand, boys keep everything inside. However, it varies on a case by case basis too.

4 Do you think people are more open than in the past?

Yes, People in the past were not allowed to express their views or opinions on anything. Only the men were allowed to make decisions. But nowadays, openness doesn't vary based on gender.

Vocabulary

Hesitate: to pause before doing something or pause before taking a decision because of uncertainty

Eg: I hesitate every time I talk to somebody I don't know.



Chatty: to talk in a friendly manner

Eg: Her extrovert personality has made her extremely chatty.

Stimuli: (plural of stimulus) something that causes interest or development

Eg: Books give me ideas and stimuli for my imagination.

Tend to: to usually do something

Eg: I tend to sleep early these days.

Varies: different

Eg: My personality varies from my sister.





8. Describe an energetic person you know

You should talk about:

- Who is this person?
- How do you know this person?
- Why do you think this person is energetic?
- And explain how you feel about this person?

Sample Answer

(Who is this person?) Nowadays, many people work long shifts by simply sitting without any physical activity, making them indolent. But some people are risk-takers. Though they have to sit for long hours and work, they manage to stay energetic by doing physical activities. I'd like to talk about my best friend Keith, who's an extremely enthusiastic person. **(How do you know this person?)** I first met Keith in my first year of college, and we hit it off immediately. He's a fitness freak. Till today, he maintains his body and is as fit as a fiddle. **(Why do you think this person is energetic?)** Despite working in a 9 to 5 job, he has an active lifestyle and a perfect physique. He regularly goes jogging in the morning, then walks 2 kms to reach his office. He takes the staircases instead of elevators, and in the evening, he uses the smart bicycle to return home. He also hits the gym and works out for 3 hours. Notably, he doesn't take any supplements but has a nutritious meal. On weekends, he goes hiking and loves playing outdoor games. **(And explain how you feel about this person?)** I envy his energy levels. The fact that he keeps going when everyone else gets exhausted after working for 9 to 5 hours is amazing. Keith is infectious when it comes to fitness and physical activities. I feel very motivated and inspired by him.

Vocabulary

Indolent(adj): wanting to avoid any physical activity; A lazy person.

Eg: After his retirement, John became indolent.

Risk-takers: a person who is willing to do anything that involves risk in order to achieve the goals.

Eg: An entrepreneur is more than a risk-taker.

As Fit as Fiddle: In good health; A healthy person.

Eg: Even after turning 70, Mr. Kapoor is as fit as fiddle.



Physique(noun): Size or development of a person's body.

Eg: Raj has a perfect physique.

Supplements(Noun): A product containing more than one or more vitamins.

Eg: Once you register in the Gym, you'll get your supplements and protein shakes.

Part 3

1 What kind of jobs need a lot of physical activity?

Nowadays, most of the jobs are desk-bound, and only a few prominent jobs require physical activities. Some of them are Fire Fighting, Military, Athletics, Construction Work and Landscaping.

2 What's the difference between payment for physical work and payment for mental work?

Mental work can be done by a large number of people whereas physical work can be done only by a few. But the importance is given to mental work over physical labour, and such jobs are paid high. Physical workers such as farmers, plumbers, and workers in factories are paid less.

3 Can physical workers have higher salaries in future?

According to me, physical workers may get even lesser salaries in the future. This is because the machines are gradually replacing manual work, and the need for manual labour might come down.

4 Do you think machines could replace manual labourers in the future?

Yes, It can be expected that the machines will replace manual labourers and if this happens, there will be a significant impact on physical workers who will lose their jobs and face financial challenges.

Vocabulary

Desk-bound: restrictions of working in an office

Eg: My desk-bound job is causing a lot of health problems.

Prominent: famous or important

Eg: This temple is the most prominent architecture of my city.

Gradually: slowly



Eg: After the accident, I gradually learnt how to walk again.

Significant: important or large enough to gain attention

Eg: There is a significant decline in the share market today.

Impact: an impression or effect

Eg: I hope the latest campaign of saving the girl child will have a positive impact on people.





9. Describe an old friend you got in contact with again

You should talk about:

- Who he or she is?
- How did you get in contact?
- What is he or she like?
- And explain how you felt about it?

Sample Answer

(who he or she is?) In today's fast-paced world, it is easy to lose contact with your friends. Over the years, as we grow older, it becomes normal to lose touch with friends due to hectic schedules. But it is always overwhelming to get in touch with them again. A couple of days ago, I experienced such a situation when one of my friends from school visited me. **(How did you get in contact?)** We studied in the same school until I decided to pursue my secondary education in a CBSE school in a different state. Soon, I had fallen out of contact with my classmates. But I was over the moon when she visited me that day. Seeing her again after the longest time gave me goosebumps. I warmly welcomed her, and she was cordial with my family members. **(What is he or she like?)** She was modest and courteous to everyone since the school days, and she's still the same. We had a gala time recalling our school memories. She was very good at singing, so she even sang one of my mother's favourite songs and everyone was mesmerized by her melodious voice. **(And explain how you felt about it?)** I felt like I had travelled back in time. Although it was a bitter-sweet feeling, I thanked her for visiting me again and promised to be in touch. I also realized that reconnecting with school friends will make you feel better.

Vocabulary

Fast-paced(adj): Moving or developing quickly.

Eg: This is a fast-paced thriller movie.

Overwhelming(adj): Very great in amount.

Eg: The opposition had an overwhelming support of the farmers.

Fallen out: To cut off relationships.

Eg: After John's divorce, he has fallen out with his wife's family.

Over the moon: very happy and pleased.



Eg: Keith was over the moon when he received his birthday gift.

Cordially(adverb): in a warm and friendly manner.

Eg: She cordially invited us to her wedding.

Bittersweet(adj): sweet with a bitter taste.

Eg: It was a bitter-sweet memory of his time in London.

Part 3

1 What is the influence of social media on friendship?

Social media has a great influence on friendship. We can easily communicate and connect with our friends who are just a click away. Apart from that, these connections strengthen the bond between friends.

2 Why do people lose contact with each other after graduation?

Losing contacts after graduation is a common thing, and this is because people start focusing on their career. They move to another city and inadvertently lose touch with their friends. Moreover, they make new friends and forget the old ones.

3 Do people in your country like to make new friends?

Of course, It doesn't matter where we live, friendships just happen. For example, if you have spent an hour talking to a new person while you're travelling, he/she is bound to become your friend.

4 Do you think old friends are more important to the old generation or young generation?

According to me, old friends are important to both generations. Talking to an old friend will make you realize how much your life has changed over the years. You may also want to reminisce.

Vocabulary

Influence: a power to control / change / effect something

Eg: Social media can have a negative influence on children.

Strengthen: to make something stronger or to become stronger

Eg: I workout 4 days a week to strengthen my muscles.

Inadvertently: unknowingly or without the intent



Eg: She inadvertently left the keys inside the car.

Bound to: be certain

Eg: Because of a new job offer, I am bound to leave my hometown.

Reminisce: to talk pleasantly about the things that happened in the past.

Eg: The last time I met my classmate, we reminisced about all the time spent in the school.





10. Describe a line that you remember from a poem or song

You should talk about:

- What is it?
- What poem/song is it from?
- How did you know about it?
- How do you feel about it?

Sample Answer

(What is it?) Whenever we get bored, we eventually listen to songs as it takes a person to some other world away from stress, eases and relaxes our mind. I'd like to talk about a peculiar song and one specific line from it which hits hard. The line is 'He said: 'One day you'll leave this world behind, So live a life you will remember'. **(What song is it from?)** This line is from the song 'The Nights' by Avicii, and it is one of my favourite songs. This line specifically conveys the message that one day we are all going to leave this world behind, and so we need to live a life that everyone will remember. This line was told by his father to Avicii when he was just a child. **(How did you know about it?)** I heard the song when I was with my cousins, and after hearing it for the first time, I was quite impressed as the song was super energizing, and the lyrics had a darker meaning. While I searched for the song on Google, I came to know that Avicii had committed suicide due to depression. **(How do you feel about it?)** Thereafter, I started listening to the song very often, whenever I felt low, as the song galvanized and motivated me. He has immortalized himself through meaningful lyrics. Although Avicii has left this world, people will always reminisce about him.

Vocabulary

Peculiar(verb): special or different.

Eg: Rose's peculiar behaviour worried her parents.

Convey(verb): transfer or transporting a message.

Eg: When her mother couldn't attend the wedding, she conveyed her regards.

Galvanized(adj): to stimulate or excite as if an electric shock.

Eg: The captain talked loudly and galvanized his team.

Depression: a mood disorder that affects a person's life.

Eg: When her wife expired, he went into depression.



Immortalized(verb): confer ensuring fame upon; commemorate.

Eg: The battle was immortalized in a famous poem.

Part 3

1 Are you good at memorizing things?

Honestly speaking, I don't have a photographic memory. I can memorize and remember things only to an extent. For this reason, I try to note down the vital details and information on my notepad, which I carry with me.

2 Do you think children like the rhythm of songs & poems?

Yes, Children like a poem or a song with a rhythm that makes them easy to grasp and learn. That is one of the reasons why we see toddlers thumping and moving to melodious tunes. They can understand these tunes much better with songs and poems. Moreover, they are receptive to new things and remember exactly how they're taught.

3 Do you think it's easier for children to learn songs or poems than adults?

Yes, Children tend to learn faster, be it a song or a poem, because of the unique characteristics in their brains. Their brains are not occupied with thousands of things at a time. Thus, they can concentrate better and learn more from the songs and poems that they hear. Adults are always preoccupied.

4 What can people learn from poems or songs?

There is so much to learn from poems or songs. To begin with, these artistic pieces define how imaginative somebody can be. Also, people can try to understand and learn the hidden meanings from songs and poems because they describe the author's experience in love, success, failure, betrayal, etc.

Vocabulary

Extent: the importance or length of something

Eg: I can handle ignorant behaviour only to an extent. After that, I cut off from the person.

Vital: important

Eg: Eating proper, nutritious food is vital for our immune system.

Grasp: to hold something firmly

Eg: My mother grasps my hand firmly before crossing the road.



Receptive: ready to hear new thoughts, ideas, etc.

Eg: When it comes to travelling, I am receptive to your thoughts.

Betrayal: breaking the trust

Eg: I cannot handle betrayal in a relationship.





11. Describe a tradition in your country

You should talk about:

- What is it?
- Who takes part in it?
- What activities are there?
- And explain how you feel about it?

Sample Answer

(What is it?) India is a country with rich culture and heritage, where people speak various languages. With several cultures, traditions, and religions, people in India live a peaceful life. There are many cultures and traditions followed in India. One among the traditions is touching the elder's feet which is considered a blessing. **(Who takes part in it?)** This is an age-old tradition, which is being practised all over India. The touching of the elder's feet originated in the Gurukul, where the students used to take the blessings of their gurus (teachers) by touching their feet. **(What activities are there ?)** On an occasion or during a festival, it is the duty of the younger people to seek blessings of the elderly people by touching their feet. This way, the elders are valued and respected. **(And Explain how you feel about it?)** This is a very common and well-practised tradition that helps us understand the importance of showing respect to elders. I feel very honoured to follow this tradition and keep it alive. Unfortunately, nowadays, most people don't practise and are getting detached from these habits.

Vocabulary

Heritage(noun): property that descends to an heir; legacy.

Eg: Rose tried to steal her grandmother's heritage.

Blessing(noun): God's protection and favour.

Eg: She went to the temple to seek God's blessings on her birthday.

Gurukul: A residential schooling system where a student and his teacher live in the same house.

Eg: Kapoor's Son studies in Gurukul.

Well-practised: having been habitually or frequently practised.

Eg: The tradition of Karva Chauth is well-practised in India.



Detached(adj): Separate or disconnected

Eg: She lives in a detached house.

Part 3

1 What is the importance of traditional festivals?

Traditional festivals play a significant role in our lives. They add structure to our social lives and connect us with our roots. Moreover, we get an opportunity of familiarizing ourselves with the culture.

2 What's the difference between festivals now and in the past?

Nowadays, people want to celebrate festivals for the sake of it. They don't care to understand its importance. They are self-centred and want to move away from the age-old traditions. Whereas in the past, festivals were celebrated by following all the customs and traditions.

3 Do you think western festivals like Christmas are replacing traditional festivals in your country?

Not at all. Although people are celebrating western festivals like Christmas, they are also keen on celebrating traditional festivals with the same energy and enthusiasm, as these bring everyone together.

4 Do you think it is wrong for children not to celebrate traditional festivals?

Yes. It is wrong to refrain from celebrating traditional festivals. They should start preserving traditional values. They should also follow their customs as it is one of the best ways to connect with their ancestors.

5 Do you think teenagers should learn about traditions?

Of course, teenagers should learn about traditions and keep them alive by practising. This is the only way to preserve what our ancestors have been following all these years. Slowly, these traditions will be shared with the next generation, and they will begin to follow them.

Vocabulary

Familiarizing: to learn something new or to teach somebody about something

Eg: I like familiarizing with different traditions and customs.

Self-centered: concerned only with the self's desires

Eg: There is no point in explaining him my thoughts as he is self-centered.



Keen: interested

Eg: I am keen on travelling to new places.

Refrain: to stop from not doing something

Eg: I refrain from letting you drink and drive.

Preserving: to keep something in a good condition

Eg: They have been preserving most of the wall paintings in the cave.





12. Describe a family that you like, but it's not your own

You should talk about:

- Where does this family live?
- Who are the family members?
- What does each person in the family do?
- Explain how you felt about it?

Sample Answer

(Where does this family live?) We come across a few people whom we consider an extended part of our families. Because of immense and unconditional love, they come closer to our hearts. One such family is Mr. John's, who are our next-door neighbours. **(Who are the family members?)** There are four members in the family, Mr. John, his wife Mrs. Rose, their daughter Emma, and their dog, Phoebe. They moved into the house about 2 years back and invited everyone to the housewarming party, through which we came to know about Mr. John's family. **(What does each person in the family do?)** Mr. John was HR manager in an MNC, Mrs. Rose was a teacher, and Emma was of the same age as me, and we both studied in the same school, and their dog Phoebe stayed in the house playing with other dogs. As the days passed, we became best friends, and we often spent our time together by taking Phoebe to the park, shopping, going to movies, and so many other things. **(And Explain how you feel about it?)** I am very comfortable with Emma's family, as they are generous, amicable, and don't differentiate between Emma and me when I am in their house. Emma has a very dynamic relationship with her parents. Even if she does something wrong, they tell her why it is wrong and motivate her to make right decisions. Despite being very influential, they don't show off, which is an exceptional quality I admire. I am very fortunate to know Emma and her family.

Vocabulary

Immense (adj): extremely large/huge in scale or degree.

Eg: Rose's house is immensely decorated with marbles and ceiling lights that shine through the lofty windows.

Next-door: those who live right next to our house in the neighborhood.

Eg: Keith and Alex are next-door neighbors.

Housewarming(noun): A party celebrated when shifting to a new house.

Eg: Rose invited the old man to her housewarming party.



MNC: Multinational Corporation; International organizations.

Eg: Capgemini is an MNC, where Rose works.

Amicable: friendly or peaceable.

Eg: Rose has an amicable relationship with everyone.

Dynamic(adj): Positive in attitude and full of energy.

Eg: John is a dynamic young advertising executive.

Show off: Displaying something with pride.

Eg: She was showing off her beautiful diamond necklace.

Fortunate(adj): Lucky or favoured by good luck.

Eg: John has been very fortunate to escape serious injury.

Part 3

1 Who is usually the leader in an Indian family?

Since India is a patriarchal society, the eldest male is considered the head of an Indian family. In a joint family, the grandfather rules the house, whereas, in the nuclear family, the father is the head of the house.

2 How do grandparents take care of their children?

When children have working parents, they are looked after by grandparents, who raise them with core and moral values. They tend to provide a safe, stable, fun-loving environment to the children by motivating them to follow the right path. In some ways, they even spoil the children by giving in to all their demands.

3 What's the most important quality of a good parent?

According to me, the most important quality of a good parent is providing support, showing love & respect, teaching responsibility, and flexibility. Parents need to be open-minded and easy-going to avoid conflicts.

4 How can new parents learn about parenting?

There are so many ways new parents can learn parenting, such as watching parenting videos, reading books, and getting guidance from their parents. Moreover, the internet is also filled with numerous tips and tricks that can further help them learn the latest things that have not been implemented yet.



Vocabulary

Patriarchal: passing power from one generation of men to the other in a family; controlled by men than women

Eg: The patriarchal nature of our society has killed dreams of numerous women.

Core: the important part of something

Eg: Treating guests with respect is the core value of our tradition.

Moral: linked to what is wrong or right

Eg: We must pass down moral values to our children.

Flexibility: an ability to bend or change

Eg: Regular exercises have improved my flexibility.

Conflicts: an argument

Eg: The newer and older generations have to always deal with conflicts of perception.





13. Describe a time you saw children behave badly in public

You should talk about:

- What was it
- What were the children doing?
- How did the others react to it?
- And explain how you felt about it?

Sample Answer

(What was it?) Children are known for their mischief and innocence, which are understandable only if they are a toddler or a preschooler. But if the child is 5 or 6 years old, it's the parents' responsibility to inculcate basic manners. Pranks are acceptable at home and not in public places which embarrasses their parents. I'd like to talk about an incident when I saw a few children misbehaving at the theatre. **(What were the children doing?)** My friends and I were eagerly waiting for the movie to begin when a family with two children sat beside us. They were equally excited as we were. But within an hour, the children started screaming and fighting with each other. **(How did the others react to it?)** Everyone was disturbed and requested earnestly to control them. But the children were least interested and paid no heed to their parents' words and behaved obdurately, which embarrassed the parents. **(And explain how you felt about it?)** I felt horrible for the parents as they found it difficult to control the children. Due to their misbehaviour, people criticized the upbringing.

Vocabulary

Mischievous(adj): Causing or intend to cause trouble in a playful way.

Eg: John's children are mischievous.

Inculcate(verb): Instil or teach (can be an idea or manner or a habit).

Eg: Parents should inculcate good manners.

Notorious: Well-known for something bad.

Eg: Rose was notorious for playing pranks on teachers.

Embarrassed(verb): to cause shame or confusion.

Eg: John was embarrassed by his boss's actions

Rage(noun): Violent or uncontrollable anger.



Eg: Looking at the children's mischievous actions, John shouted in rage.

Earnestly(adverb): not lightly or casually.

Eg: I earnestly requested my parents for a night out with my friends.

Paid no heed: to ignore or disregard something.

Eg: When the teacher was taking the lesson, Rose paid no heed to her.

Obdurately: Not changing in response to an argument.

Eg: Even after getting criticized by his teacher, he copied obdurately in the exams.

Upbringing(noun): Parenting or raising.

Eg: Rose had a royal upbringing.

Part 3

1 What bad behaviour do children usually have?

Children usually break things, disregard and disrespect the elders, bully others, scribble on the walls, cheat in the exam, etc. These are some of the bad behaviour which children usually have.

2 How should parents stop their children from behaving badly in public?

Parents should be strict and stop their mischievousness at home itself so that the same can be followed in public. They should make children differentiate between right and wrong. Also, they should encourage children by giving gifts for their good habits.

3 Are parents these days stricter than in the past?

In my opinion, parents today are lenient towards their children because they have to face legal consequences if children are punished physically. Thus, many parents allow their children to do whatever they want.

4 Whose influence on children is more? Parents or friends?

At an early age, the parents' influence is more on their children. But as they grow older, there's no denying that children are more influenced by their friends as they spend more time with their friends.

Vocabulary

Disregard: to treat something or someone unimportant

Eg: Not every time students disregard their teachers' instructions.



Scribble: to write

Eg: I carry a notepad everywhere to scribble my thoughts.

Mischievousness: the quality to behave in a bad manner

Eg: The child's mischievousness irritates me.

Lenient: not strict

Eg: My parents have always been lenient towards me and my sister.

Denying: to say that something is untrue

Eg: I am denying the way you treat your parents.





14. Describe an area of science that you are interested in

You should talk about:

- What is it?
- What do you learn from it?
- When did you get interested in it?
- And explain why you enjoy it so much?

Sample Answer

(What is it?) Science has hidden mysteries, and when they unfold, they fascinate human beings and widens their knowledge about everything that surrounds them. It is through science subjects that we start to think logically and find answers to the questions. Every branch of science has made an immense impact on our lives. My favourite branch was Biology. **(What do you learn from it?)** I was very keen on learning about living organisms, their structure, and vital processes. Through biology, I discovered many astonishing facts about the human body, plants, and animals. Darwin's Evolution Theory was an eye-opener, and our human body functioning seemed to be quite interesting. **(When did you get interested in it?)** It was during class 8th, when I found myself interested in Biology. My exceptionally knowledgeable teacher introduced me to Biology, and it's fascinating facts. I came across some of the incredible facts about human anatomy. **(And explain why you enjoy it so much?)** I learned that the most wonderful yet most complicated structure on Earth was the Human Body. I understood how life on Earth is balanced, and with the help of biology, many scientists have determined the leading cause of the diseases. Overall, learning biology always enthralled me and still does.

Vocabulary

Unfolds(verb): To spread or open an information.

Eg: She unfolded the Ghost house mystery.

Mysteries: Something that is difficult or impossible to explain.

Eg: Rose tried very hard to solve the mystery.

Fascinates(verb): To attract someone strongly.

Eg: The beauty of Burj Khalifa fascinated me.

Eye-opener(Noun): An event or situation that proves to be unexpectedly enlightening.



Eg: It was an eye-opening moment for me when I discovered the animal kingdom in the ocean.

Enthralled(verb): capturing the attention.

Eg: John was enthralled by the beauty of Niagara falls.

Part 3

1 What's the best invention in the past hundred years?

Many inventions have transformed the way we live, but computers and Internet services can be considered the best. Without these inventions, there would be no computer chips, game consoles, laptops, or digital lifestyle, and no fingertip information. Perhaps these are the most influential inventions of the last 100 years.

2 What's the influence of science on human life?

Science has a significant influence on human life as it creates logical thinking and reasoning. It reduces the impact of superstition and illogical beliefs by making humans open-minded. Science has increased the quality of our lives by making us think from a different perspective.

3 What can individuals do for scientific research?

To do scientific research, Individuals must develop an idea, observe it, think logically, test the hypothesis, collect data accordingly, analyse the results, draw conclusions, and report the results. Otherwise, they can simply donate to the scientific community and fund the research.

4 What influence can international cooperation in science bring about?

If international cooperation is achieved, then it promotes mutual respect and trust around the world. Thus, International collaboration can help gather funds and give access to more information and aid scientific research.

Vocabulary

Influential: having influence or power

Eg: He is considered an influential personality in his community.

Logical: something that is sensible or reasonable

Eg: I need a logical reasoning to this problem.



Beliefs: a feeling of something being true

Eg: My belief is that everybody should be treated equally.

Hypothesis: an idea that might be possible for something that is not declared true

Eg: The scientists have been working on several hypotheses.

Collaboration: working together

Eg: Our collaboration shall reap fruitful results.





15. Describe an ambition you have for a long time

You should talk about:

- What is it?
- What did you do for it?
- When can you achieve it?
- Explain why you have this ambition?

Sample Answer

(What is it?) Everyone needs to have a desire or aim in their life. It pushes them to work hard and pursue their dreams. Without ambition, life becomes meaningless, and our growth as a person may come to a standstill. Some people keep working hard to achieve, while others fail and lose their motivation. Even though I have achieved a few of my aims, I am still working on the rest of them. One such is to become a translator. **(What did you do for it?)** I have always been keen on learning new languages. Though I knew 9 languages, I wished to learn French. So, I enrolled myself on a French course in an Academy, a stone's throw away from my house. Everyday after college, I attended the classes without skipping them. **(When can you achieve it?)** It has just been two months since I have started learning. The French course is for 4 months, and I am trying to translate a few English words into French. I hope I'll be able to communicate in French when this course completes smoothly. **(Explain why you have this ambition?)** There are two reasons for me to learn French. The first reason is that I have always desired to go to Paris, where I can easily communicate with people. And the second reason is I aspire to become a Translator and work for the foreign ministry of India. Therefore, I believe that everyone must identify their passion, set goals, and diligently work towards attaining them.

Vocabulary

Desire(noun): A strong feeling of wanting to do something.

Eg: She had a burning desire to win the competition.

Meaningless(adj): have no meaning or significance at all.

Eg: After her husband's demise, Rose led a meaningless life.

Academy(noun): A place of study or training in a specific field.

Eg: John had enrolled in a sports academy to win the championship.

Stone's throw: A short distance



Eg: My school is just a stone's throw from Rose's house.

Aspire: to seek to attain something or accomplish a specific goal.

Eg: She aspired to become a Doctor and serve the needy people.

Part 3

1 What kinds of ambitions do people have?

There are many kinds of ambitions that people have, and they often vary with age. Each person is unique, and their aspirations differ. During schools, we have a different aim, and it continually keeps changing. In the office, we work hard to achieve name and fame. Many people dream of being doctors, teachers, engineers, programmers, actors, etc.

2 Why should parents encourage children to have ambition?

Parents should encourage their children to be ambitious. Infact, they should help their children in achieving those ambitions. Parents should guide and motivate their children to set goals at an early age, take the risk, work hard, and feel the satisfaction that comes from achieving the goal.

3 Should parents interfere with their children's ambitions?

In my opinion, parents should not interfere and become a hurdle to their children's ambition. If parents keep on interfering with their children's ambitions, then the child will not live his dreams. If a child wants to be an artist, he must follow his passion, and parents shouldn't object to it.

4 Is there any difference in the ambition of grown-ups and children?

There's a huge difference between the ambitions of grown-ups and children. While children usually dream for grade-based goals, adults aim for the goals depending on their personalities, lifestyle, and beliefs. And there are few people who just aim to live life to the fullest instead of worrying about the future.

Vocabulary

Ambition: something that you want to do or have

Eg: My ambition is to become a popular writer.

Aspiration: a desire

Eg: She has an aspiration to become a successful model.



Continually: often / regular

Eg: For the past one week, she has been continually visiting me.

Hurdle: complication

Eg: She has to face a lot of hurdles to achieve success.

Object: to be against something

Eg: Her parents object to the sleepovers.





16. Describe an event you attended in which you didn't like the music played

You should talk about:

- What was the event?
- Where were you?
- What was the music like?
- Explain why you didn't like the music?

Sample Answer

(What was the event?) People from all walks of life, listen to music as it gives peace and rejuvenates a fatigued mind. In fact, I love listening to fusion and pop songs even when I am cooking or cleaning. I'd like to talk about an event where I was not too fond of the music as it wasn't apt for that situation. It was one of my bosom friend's reception. **(Where were you?)** Since the reception was at 7 PM, I reached a little earlier to check on my friend. I was really impressed seeing the glittery decorations. Being a dance enthusiast, I went up to the DJ and asked him to play the song which I had recommended so that I can dance my heart out at my friend's reception. **(What was the music like?)** To my surprise, the DJ was hesitant to play the song and told me that my friend's family had given strict instructions to play only those songs recommended by my friend's grandparents. All my excitement went down as I was not acquainted with the song that was being played. **(Explain why you didn't like the music?)** I thought of dancing in a party song, but only cultural songs were played, for which I was not prepared. I felt disheartened as I couldn't dance at my friend's reception due to the song. That was the very first time I didn't enjoy the song.

Vocabulary

People from all walks of life: people having jobs in various fields.

Eg: This movie is suitable for people from all walks of life.

Rejuvenate(verb): give new energy or vigour to; revitalize.

Eg: She went to the spa to rejuvenate herself.

Bosom(noun): very close.

Eg: Rita wanted to meet her bosom friend in the town.

Enthusiasts(noun): a person who is very interested in specific activity.



Eg: John is a sports car enthusiast.

Disheartened(adj): Having lost determination and confidence.

Eg: Rose was disheartened when she heard about the accident.

Part 3

1 Why do so many young people spend a lot of money on concerts?

The main reason is that most young people are huge fans of National and International music artists. They'd go to any heights to watch them perform live. Therefore, young people spend a lot of money to enjoy these one-time events.

2 Do you think older people like the same music as younger people?

No. Be it music or any other domain, the tastes and choices of people vary. Older people usually prefer listening to soft, slow melodious music with meaningful lyrics, while younger people listen to pop and rock music.

3 Do you think music concerts are suitable for old people to attend?

I was of the opinion that music concerts are not for older people as they wouldn't be able to stand for long hours, but nowadays most of the concerts also offer chairs to sit and enjoy the show. So older people can also enjoy them.

4 Why do shopping malls have background music?

Shopping malls have background music to enhance the experience of shopping. Instead of listening to the chaos, we can enjoy the soft tunes. This practice also helps those people who feel suffocated in the crowd to feel calm and make decisive purchases. The entertainment factor also counts.

Vocabulary

Prefer: to choose one thing than the other

Eg: Would you prefer tea or juice?

Melodious: pleasant to listen

Eg: Her voice is melodious.

Suitable: appropriate or right

Eg: This content is not suitable for children.



Chaos: utter disorder or confusion

Eg: After losing the job, I have to face a lot of chaos.

Enhance: improve

Eg: Good lighting can enhance the appearance of my living room.





17. Describe a clever decision someone made

You should talk about:

- What was the decision?
- How did it work?
- Explain how you felt about it?

Sample Answer

(What was the decision?) In life, we confront many situations where we feel helpless. Some people lose hope and give up, while others try to understand and solve the problems. I'd like to talk about my younger brother who made a smart decision. In the evening, my brother and I were on our way back home on our bicycles. As usual, the lane was congested with traffic, and people were hustling. And suddenly, two young men in a two-wheeler snatched the chain from the woman's neck who was passing by. She started yelling in the middle of the road. **(How did it work?)** My brother had a clear-cut vision, and as the two-wheeler passed beside him, he noted it down very quickly. Later, along with the woman, my brother and I went to the police station and complained about the incident and gave the number-plate of the two-wheeler. Within an hour, they were able to track the rider and pillion rider. **(Explain how you felt about it?)** Everyone in the station, including the woman, appreciated my brother for his cleverness, wisdom, and presence of mind. They also promised him a memento on the upcoming Independence Day on August 15. I was pleased and felt proud of him.

Vocabulary

Confront(verb): Come face to face.

Eg: John confronted his ex-fiance.

Congested: too full or crowded with something.

Eg: Big Bazaar was congested with too many people.

Hustle(verb): Push roughly or jostle.

Eg: There's always hustle and bustle in metro cities.

Clear cut: Sharply outlined.

Eg: While you reach the top of the mountain, you can see the clear cut picture of this city.

Pillion rider: The one who's seated behind the rider.

Eg: The pillion rider was wearing a mask.



Memento: an object kept as a reminder of a person.

Eg: You can purchase a memento of your visit at the jewellery store.

Part 3

1 How to become a smart person?

We can become smart by being conscious of our surroundings, managing our time perfectly, talking to others, and conveying information effectively. Also, to become smart, we will first have to learn. We must acquire as much knowledge as possible. This can be done through the internet, books or by talking to experienced people.

2 What can schools do for students' intellectual development?

Schools play an essential role in the development of a student's personality. Schools help a student to identify his/her hidden talents, skills, and abilities. Therefore, schools should motivate and guide students for self-grooming.

3 What suggestions will you give schools to develop their potential?

Schools can develop children's potential by identifying the student's strengths and weaknesses. They should mainly focus on academic performance. Schools should also assess the growth of students after every learning activity.

4 What do you think is more important – Nature or Nurture?

Nature is something that we inherit from our parents, while nurture is what parents do. According to me, nature is more important than nurture as the former determines who we are. Though our environment influences us, our nature determines the way we react.

5 Do you think smart students are happy?

This depends upon the student. Even under the constant pressure of learning more and scoring well, they are happy. They can solve problems quickly and manage any amount of pressure. These abilities make them successful, which in turn keeps them happy.

6 Why do you think some people are really good at something?

According to me, some people are experts in certain areas because they are hardworking and have used their presence of mind from an early age. But it can also be due to genetic factors. Another reason could be that they must have learnt a lot to be an expert in the field. In the end, experience also matters.



Vocabulary

Conscious: noticing the existence of something

Eg: You don't seem conscious of the fact that you may lose.

Conveying: to communicate ideas, thoughts and feelings to somebody

Eg: These films are produced to convey information.

Assess: to judge something

Eg: I would like to assess the quality of the product before buying it.

Inherit: to receive something from somebody

Eg: She belongs to a rich family and will obviously inherit a lot.

Nurture: to look after

Eg: If we don't want another pandemic, we must nurture our environment.





18. Describe an intelligent person you know

You should talk about:

- Who is the person?
- What does he/she do?
- How do you think he/she is smart?
- How do you feel about him/her?

Sample Answer

(Who is the person?) Everyone is born with intelligence, but only a few of them choose to use it. Out of all the intelligent persons I admire, the first place goes to my father. **(What does he/she do?)** My father is an Entrepreneur, and he has vast knowledge in his field. At a very young age, he set-up his start-up and worked really hard. Though it took some years to build his company, he stood on his feet and proved his capabilities. **(Why did you consider him an intelligent person?)** In my opinion, he's an intelligent person because he knows well about his profession, has excelled in his life, and has become a role model for other people. Whenever I feel low, he motivates me and boosts my self-confidence. He always remains up-to-date with current affairs. Recently, he was also awarded the title, 'Best Entrepreneur across India.' **(How do you feel about him?)** I am proud to be his daughter because he has vast general knowledge and is a great human being. I will try my best to follow his principles and make him proud one day.

Vocabulary

Admire(verb): look at something impressive or attractive with pleasure.

Eg: I admire soldier's courage.

Entrepreneur(noun): An individual who creates a new business.

Eg: Rose got an award for being the best entrepreneur.

Start-up: A company founded by a group of entrepreneurs.

Eg: At a very young age, he started a start-up.

Stood on his feet: To be strong and independent.

Eg: He proved his father wrong and stood on his feet.

Opinion: a view or a judgment about something.

Eg: When she asked for help, I gave her an opinion.



Excelled: be exceptionally good at something.

Eg: John excelled in his life.

Part 3

1 Are most intelligent people happy? Why?

Not necessarily. Intelligent people have high hopes and expectations, and if they don't fulfill those expectations, they may feel unhappy. But intelligent people also know that happiness is a state of mind, and so they may try their best to be consciously happy at all times.

2 Do you think intelligent people are selfish?

According to me, not all intelligent people are selfish because selfishness and intelligence are unrelated. It varies based on the individual too. An intelligent person who is successful may seem selfish because he looks after his interests and tries to achieve them. But a person cannot be branded "selfish" just because he concentrates more on his success.

3 Do you think intelligent people are helpful?

Well, helping tendency has nothing to do with intelligence. Character differs, and it does not depend on intelligence. I have seen intelligent people being selfish while I have also seen illiterate and dumb people being extremely helpful in certain situations. So, it mainly depends upon the person and their values.

Vocabulary

Necessarily: to explain that something cannot be avoided

Eg: The number of seats in the MBA class are necessarily limited.

Consciously: awareness of existence

Eg: After meeting with an accident, he was talking to the police consciously.

Selfish: only thinking about own needs

Eg: He is a person of selfish behaviour.

Intellectual: an ability to think in a logical way

Eg: Years of experience has made her an intellectual person.

Branded: to say somebody having a bad character

Eg: She has been branded as a troublemaker after she stood for her rights.



19. Describe a photo that you remember well

You should talk about:

- Which photo was it?
- Why do you remember it?
- Why is it special?

Sample Answer

(Which photo was it?) Everything is digital, from smartphones to cameras in the modern technological world, so taking a photograph has become more common than it did ten years back. I vividly remember a photograph that was taken ten years back when I was just five years old. The picture captured a rare moment of my grandparents and me, who are no longer alive. **(Why do you remember it?)** The photograph is very close to my heart, as it has been captured with all those people who were very special in my life. We are all standing under a maple tree in my grandparent's house in a village. Those olden days were the golden days of my life. **(Why is it special?)** It is very special because I was in my natural self without any artificial expressions. I also consider this photograph as a blessing from my grandparents. It is a memory that I will cherish. Whenever I look at it, my mind alters between happiness and sadness.

Vocabulary

Captured: to record

Eg: She tried to capture the moment.

Rare: not occurring very often.

Eg: This is one of the rare species found in the museum.

Maple tree: A tree or a shrub of genus *Acer*.

Eg: This is an old maple tree.

Regards: consider or think in a specified way.

Eg: She regarded London as her base.

Cherish: holding something very dearly.

Eg: John cherished the moments spent with his mother.

Part 3

1



1. Do Indian people like to take photos of themselves?

Yes, Not only Indian people but everyone across the world love taking photographs and selfies. Since smartphones have become economical, most people own one, due to which selfies have become an everyday affair.

2 What kinds of devices do people like to use for taking photos these days?

Nowadays, most people use smartphones to take photos and selfies. They also use high-end digital cameras. I have also seen people using the latest tablets, such as iPads to capture pictures.

3 Why do some people like to keep photos?

Some people like preserving photographs because they are memories of the past that will always bring a smile. As they say, people change but pictures don't. Even if the person doesn't exist anymore, photos always help keep him/her alive.

4 Has the way people take photos changed?

Well, Yes, the way people take photographs has changed a lot, and with the digital cameras being handy, most people use these to capture moments. Even a four-year-old child clicks photographs using a smartphone.

Vocabulary

Economical: something that costs less

Eg: I am looking forward to going on an economical trip.

High-end: expensive or advanced products

Eg: Apple is known for its high-end products.

Preserving: to keep something in a good condition or safe

Eg: I like preserving old memories as they signify good times.

Handy: easy to use

Eg: An electric toothbrush is extremely handy for me.

Capture: to take something

Eg: You can capture these beautiful animals in the camera and sell their pictures at a high cost.



20. Describe a time when you received good news

You should say:

- What was the good news?
- How did you receive the news?
- Who was the news about?
- Explain your reaction on hearing the news?

Sample Answer

(What was the good news?) Life is not always a bed of roses. Sometimes we meet with hardships, and at other times it seems like everything is perfectly fine. I'd like to talk about a time when I heard the good news that my sister is getting married to her best friend. **(How did you receive the news?)** In today's fast-paced technological world, everything is updated on social media, and that's how I received the news. She had updated it on her Instagram page. My joy knew no bounds when I saw the post. Immediately, I called and congratulated her. **(Who was the news about?)** Although her parents are strict, they are open-minded as well. My sister and her fiancé were childhood friends, and it was her childhood dream to get married to him, and the wish was being fulfilled. **(Explain your reaction to hearing the news?)** I was pleased that she had found her soulmate, and only a few fortunate ones get to marry their best friends. And they will enjoy the rest of their lives.

Vocabulary

Life is not a bed of roses: Not as pleasant as it seems.

Eg: She knew that life would not be a bed of roses in London.

Turmoils: a state of disturbance or confusion.

Eg: John was in a deep turmoil.

Broke the news: to tell something very important to someone.

Eg: She broke the news through WhatsApp.

Knew no bounds: feeling strong or intense

Eg: The passion of cricket fans knew no bounds.

Roller-coaster: having ups and downs.

Eg: Life is like a roller-coaster ride.



Part 3

1 Is it important to read the news?

Yes, It is imperative to read news and keep ourselves updated about day-to-day affairs so that we come to know what is happening around us and the entire world. With newspapers, we figure out how bad or good our society is. Thus, we can protect our loved ones accordingly.

2 What kind of news do people in your country like to read?

There are plenty of sections that newspapers in my country cover. There will be a dedicated section for every category of news. Generally, people like to read the news on sports, weather updates, politics, employment, recruitment, entertainment, etc.

3 Why do some people like to share news on social media?

Some people like sharing news on social media as it has a very great impact on the younger generation. Sharing news helps people know what is happening around them even if they're least interested in reading newspapers.

4 Is it important to keep reading up to date news?

Yes, We must update ourselves with daily news to be prepared for any unforeseen event in the future. E.g., Evacuation plans in case of a flood. Not just that, but it also helps us come out of the bubble of imagination and meet the reality.

5 How do people in your country get news?

It depends on the age-group. These days, in my country, youngsters get news directly on their mobile phones with notifications telling them what is happening. On the other hand, older people get their news from TV, Radio, Newspapers, etc.

Vocabulary

Imperative: important

Eg: It is imperative to finish this task by end of the day.

Affairs: a situation or event

Eg: The current affairs show how bad the situation of our country is.

Recruitment: to hire

Eg: A lot of global companies are going to start their recruitment process this month.

Impact: effect



Eg: The impact of this earthquake was so severe that most of the buildings got shattered.

Unforeseen: unexpected

Eg: The flood in the coastal area was unexpected.





21. Describe an exciting book that you recently read

You should talk about:

- When did you read it?
- What type of book is it?
- What is it about?
- Why did you find it useful?

Sample Answer

(When did you read it?) It is a well-known fact that books are best friends. Some people get motivated while reading books, and others read to drain the stress and anxiety. I am an avid reader, and out of all the books I've read, the one which I loved was 'The Wings of Fire' by Dr. A.P.J. Abdul Kalam. **(What type of book is it?)** My sister gifted me the book on my birthday as she knew that I was fond of reading autobiographies. And this book by Dr. Kalam had a great influence on me and still inspires me, and I began devouring it on the same day. The book explains how Kalam started his career and became the best rocket Engineer. **(What is it about?)** The book is about his journey, accomplishments, and about he managed to overcome his obstacles. He describes his presidential post as a piece of luck, and his achievement as a rocket Engineer was because of sheer hard work. Throughout the book, one thing that stands out is Kalam's positive thinking and his secret to success hidden in his ability to ignore negative things. That is why he had contributed and accomplished a lot in his life. **(Why did you find it useful?)** Kalam's journey in the book inspires us to achieve our dreams by beating all the odds. A fable in the book emphasizes the importance of family, relatives, and friends in helping accomplish each other's goals and turning dreams into realities.

Vocabulary

Anxiety(noun): a feeling of worry or nervousness.

Eg: John's anxiety reduced on coming out of the hospital.

Avid reader: a reader who is eager to get hold of the latest books.

Eg: John is an avid reader. He has read almost every novel.

Autobiography: an account of a person's life written by that person.

Eg: Rose gives a vivid description of her childhood in her autobiography.

Influence: the capacity to have an effect on the character of someone.

Eg: Her mother's influence on her is very obvious.



Accomplishments: something that has been achieved successfully.

Eg: Her accomplishments were praised by her family.

Piece of luck: something that happens by chance that helps to achieve success.

Eg: He considers his HR post as a piece of luck.

Beating all the odds: to succeed despite struggling a lot.

Eg: She beat all the odds to win the league.

Fable: a short story conveying a moral.

Eg: She reads fables to her daughter.

Part 3

1 Do people in your country like to read books?

Yes, a majority of people in my country love reading but not all of them have the same interests. Some of them opt for novels, while others read magazines to idle away their leisure time. And then there are students who don't get enough time out of their textbooks to read anything else.

2 What kinds of books are most popular in your country?

Well, everyone has different tastes and preferences. But romantic novels, autobiographies, fashion and lifestyle magazines are very popular in my country. Textbooks are much in demand as well, considering the huge population that my country has.

3 Do you think reading is important?

Reading is essential as it develops our imagination and builds vocabulary and language skills. With reading, we can also dive into other people's imagination and think of ideas that might not be true. This activity also improves our brain functioning and allows us to think logically and intellectually.

4 Do you think children should be encouraged to read?

Definitely, Yes. Children should start reading books and newspapers to enhance their knowledge and develop their reading skills, creativity, and all-round personality. More than gifting them gadgets or other things, parents should stock up books for them.

5 Do you think gifting a book is a great option?



Books are great options for gifts as they can be preserved and read in leisure. But if the books are hand-written, it's even better as it has an emotional value. Gifting somebody a book from their favourite author can bring a wide smile on their face instantly.

Vocabulary

Opt for: to choose

Eg: I am going to opt for humanities in my 11th standard.

Idle away: to spend time doing nothing

Eg: On weekends, I prefer to idle away than spend my time working on anything.

Leisure: free time

Eg: I like playing online games during my leisure time.

Preferences: choices

Eg: My preferences are different from my siblings.

Enhance: improve

Eg: Practising daily can enhance your reading and writing skills.





22. Describe a volunteering experience you have had

You should talk about:

- What was it?
- Where was it?
- Why did you volunteer?
- How did you feel about it?

Sample Answer

(What was it?) Humanity is one of the traits that is required in modern society. Many people help and support the needy. There are umpteen non-governmental organizations that work for the welfare of society. I have also volunteered for many causes. One such work was converting a garbage dumping zone into a playground. **(Where was it?)** The garbage dumping zone was in our locality, which spread foul odours and people feared mosquitos and infections. So, my uncle, who's also a member of the council, directed everyone to come forward and extend helping hands. **(Why did you volunteer?)** I decided to contribute and volunteer for a good cause. Around 30 volunteers were allocated different activities. Everyone donated funds, through which plant saplings, small trees were planted. A basketball court was built, and swings were placed. The dumping zone was completely transformed into a mini playground. **(How did you feel about it ?)** It took around two weeks to complete, and my uncle inaugurated the playground. I was extremely satisfied as this was the first time everyone united for a common cause.

Vocabulary

Umpteen: indefinitely or many.

Eg: She has been to Kerala umpteen times.

Odours: a distinctive smell.

Eg: John loves smoking but hates the odour of cigarettes.

Volunteered: freely offered to do something.

Eg: She volunteered during the pandemic covid-19.

Contribute: to give something (especially money)

Eg: Rose contributed for a good cause.

Allocated: distribute (resources or duties) for a particular purpose.



Eg: The teacher allocated some responsibilities to the student leader.

Part 3

1 What qualities are required for being a volunteer?

Ideally, special qualities are not needed for being a volunteer. It is upto the individual to do the work (mostly for a good cause) selflessly and willingly without any hesitation and expectation. However, if signing up for being a volunteer, then the person should be ready to take up every type of work whenever assigned.

2 What type of personality does a volunteer have?

A volunteer must be friendly and wear a smile on his face. He must also be easy-going and approachable. If the volunteer has logical and rational thinking, it would be a cherry on the cake. He should also be helpful in nature.

3 How can companies engaging in volunteering help our society?

Companies engaged in volunteering can help society in many ways, such as providing free food to poor people, donating funds to local schools and hospitals etc. They can also take up the responsibilities of underprivileged people and provide a better lifestyle to those who are not in a position to improve their standards of living.

4 Do you think people nowadays should participate more in volunteering?

Yes, It's high time that people should volunteer as they are living a self-centred lifestyle. By volunteering, people can get in touch with the local community and help them develop their potential.

5 How do modern technologies assist volunteers and volunteering experiences?

Modern technologies can improve the volunteering experience through social media marketing strategies. This way, everyone will know about the cause of volunteering and come forward to help them.

Vocabulary

Volunteer: a person who does something without being forced or paid

Eg: "Is there any volunteer who would like to serve our NGO?"

Ideally: perfectly

Eg: Ideally, there should not be more than 20 students in a class.

Selflessly: a way that takes care of others' needs



Eg: He selflessly gave away everything he earned to his brother.

Willingly: to do something without force

Eg: She willingly accepted to teach my child.

Approachable: somebody who is easy to talk to

Eg: Despite dealing with so much in life, she is approachable and friendly.





23. Describe a programme or an app on your laptop

You should talk about:

- What is the programme/app?
- When/where did you find it?
- How do you use it?
- How do you feel about it?

Sample Answer

(What is the programme/app) Nowadays, people around the world rely on technology to communicate with their favourite ones. Social media platforms such as Instagram, Facebook, Twitter, WhatsApp, etc. have made life easy. Amidst the pandemic covid-19 circumstances, when the lockdown was imposed, and millions of people were forced to stay home, the video conferencing app Zoom shot to fame. **(When/Where did you find it?)** When everything came to a standstill during the pandemic, video conferencing was the only way to communicate. Many applications like Microsoft teams, Google Meet, Zoom, FaceTime, Houseparty became part of our lives. But zoom gained popularity amongst all of them. **(How do you use it?)** Zoom can be installed on a PC or a smartphone. I installed it on my laptop to collaborate and converse with my colleagues about work. We had it all through Zoom, with the regular formal meetings to virtual coffee catch-ups and after-work drinks. Many people even attended weddings, birthday parties, observed Christmas, Ramzan, etc., through virtual platforms. **(How do you feel about it?)** According to me, it is an excellent app in work-from-home scenarios. Zoom is cost-effective and provides the same experience for all the devices. Overall, I feel that virtual platforms such as Zoom are more like a boon for its users. It has let the business community grow with its reliability and stable performance even during the pandemic.

Vocabulary

Pandemic: an epidemic occurring worldwide.

Eg: The world has been hit by the pandemic covid-19.

Circumstances: a fact or condition connected with or relevant to an event.

Eg: John and Ruby wanted to marry each other, but circumstances weren't favourable.

Collaborate: work together for a project.

Eg: Byju's collaborated with SRK for brand endorsements.



Socialise: participate with others.

Eg: She doesn't like socializing with colleagues.

Reliability: the quality of being trustworthy or of performing consistently well

Eg: The product competes with others for its quality and reliability.

Part 3

1 What is the importance of apps in a person's life?

Applications have acquired a significant place in every person's life. Because of the development of the apps, information is available at our fingertips. With the help of these apps, we can learn various things at any time and from anywhere. These apps have made several tasks easy.

2 Are there any drawbacks of apps?

There are drawbacks of apps such as insufficient transport layer protection, poor authorization & authentication, malware attacks, security resolutions through untrusted inputs, wrong session handling, side channel data leakage, etc.

3 Are these apps helpful in making honest relations?

Although these apps help make relations, they can't be trusted. This is because some people try to deceive others by making fake ids and providing fake information on apps. Therefore, an individual must be very cautious while making relationships through these apps.

Vocabulary

Significant: important

Eg: There is a significant difference between the manners of both the twins.

Fingertips: the tip of a finger

Eg: She can calculate everything on her fingertips.

Drawbacks: disadvantages

Eg: Every technology has its benefits and drawbacks.

Insufficient: not enough

Eg: I cannot store more data as the memory is insufficient.

Deceive: to make somebody believe something that is untrue

Eg: She deceived me with her sugar-coated words.



24. Describe a time when you invited someone for a dinner at home or restaurant

You should talk about:

- When did you invite them?
- Where did you have dinner?
- Why did you invite them?
- How did you feel about this dinner?

Sample Answer

(When did you invite them?) I am a very sociable person and love to connect with people. Either I invite people to my place for dinners, or we go to restaurants. Recently, one of my cousins from Australia had returned to India. So, I decided to take her out for dinner. **(Where did you have dinner?)** She insisted on trying all the new dishes, so I took her to 'Absolute Barbeque,' located a million miles away from my home. We took a cab and reached the place, and to our astonishment, there were many people. With zero options, we also waited. **(Why did you invite them?)** She visited India rarely and deeply missed Indian food. So I decided to take her to this place where one can enjoy many delicacies, and also have unlimited food. Soon, we grabbed a table, and she was startled to witness the restaurant's contemporary theme and the unique concept of the flag on the table. I explained to her about it and the unlimited food concept.

(How you felt about this dinner?) Later, we enjoyed the Indian, Arabian, and Chinese delicacies alongside the Live Cricket Match from IPL Tournament. She thanked me for taking her to such a fantastic restaurant as she missed these dishes in Australia. Overall, It was a wonderful evening that we enjoyed. I believe that everyone should often go out for dinners as it's an excellent way to build healthy relationships.

Vocabulary

Sociable: Willing to talk friendly and engage in activities with other people.

Eg: Rose is a very sociable woman.

Supper: an evening meal.

Eg: John eats his supper at 6 PM.

Millions miles away: Very far; distant.

Eg: The department store is millions miles away from my house.



Zero options: No other choice or options.

Eg: With zero options, She chose the blue outfit.

Contemporary: conforming to modern or current ideas in style.

Eg: Her new house had a contemporary theme.

Delicacies: an expensive food item that is pleasing to eat.

Eg: This hotel serves one of the best delicacies in town.

Part 3

1 Where do people in your country usually eat? At restaurants or at home?

Most people in my country usually eat food prepared at home. One in a hundred may eat in the restaurant. This is because food prepared at home is highly nutritious and healthy. In contrast, the food served in restaurants is high in fat and contains bad cholesterol and calories.

2 Why do more and more people like to eat at restaurants rather than at home?

Any people like to eat at restaurants because of two reasons. They might not know how to cook or maybe are too lazy to buy groceries and cook the food at home. In the case of restaurants, you're just an order away, and the food is on your table.

3 What are the advantages and disadvantages of eating at home?

Advantages of eating at home are you get nutritious food which is fewer in calories and fats. It is less expensive, and properly spiced. But there are disadvantages too. Cooking takes a lot of time and will not be immediately ready when you are hungry. Also, you need to buy groceries, prepare the dish, and wash the utensils. Therefore, some people might think it's convenient to eat outside.

4 Do you think it is possible that everyone will eat at restaurants instead of at home in the future?

Not necessarily! Nowadays, many people are becoming health conscious, so they prefer eating home-cooked food that is nutritious and healthy. Restaurant foods are high in calories, cholesterol, and sugar. When consumed in large quantities, they can spoil our health.

Vocabulary

calories: unit of energy

Eg: Rita bought some low calorie food products.



Nutritious: good for you

Eg: Fruits are nutritious and should be consumed everyday.

Convenient: something that does not cause difficulties

Eg: Travelling by car is more convenient for me than travelling by the bus.

Conscious: having knowledge of something.

Eg: Tina was fashion conscious

Spiced: flavoured with spice.

Eg: The spiced bacon was delicious.





25. Describe a programme or an app that you think is useful

You should say,

- what it is
- how you know it
- how to use it
- And explain why it is useful

Sample Answer

(what it is) (how you know it) I always had a tough time buying groceries. After a hard day's work, it was tiring to stand in a long queue at the supermarket and purchase them. I was vigorously looking for alternatives when a friend of mine told me about this prepaid app called "Fresh to Home". I installed it from the playstore.

(how to use it) After the initial registration, there was an option called "Wallet". You have to fill your wallet and then place orders. I filled the wallet with a sum of Rs. 500. Then I proceeded to the store to select vegetables. They sell a variety of items ranging from diced banana stem to grated coconut, from bakery products and confectionaries to cosmetics. Also, you can decide the frequency of delivery with the "subscribe" button which will list options like 'daily', 'alternate days', 'weekends' or 'custom schedule' where you can custom your own schedule. The only thing to remember is to ensure that your wallet is not empty. You have to place orders before 8:00 PM the previous day to get it delivered at your doorstep the next morning at 6:00 AM.

(And explain why it is useful) It has saved a great deal of time. I'm relieved of the nightmare of waiting in the long queues. Also, their service is excellent. They deliver it on time every day. It is an easy-to-use and friendly app, and I'm thankful to my friend who told me about this.

Vocabulary

Prepaid (verb) - pay for in advance

Eg: She gifted the couple with a prepaid gift card.

Playstore (noun) - Google's official pre-installed app store on Android-certified devices. It provides access to content on the Google Play Store, including apps, books, magazines, music, movies, and television programs.

Eg: I installed the English learning app from google playstore.

Wallet (noun) - a pocket-sized flat folding case for holding money and plastic cards.



Eg: Her Wallet was full of money.

Nightmare (noun) - a very unpleasant or frightening experience or prospect. **Eg:** It was a great nightmare for her to find her way through the crowd.

Part 3

1 What is the importance of apps in a person's life?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Apps can easily be installed from the play store. They serve various purposes. **(Give an example)** For example, an app called Urban Company offers household doorstep services like haircuts, repair of electrical appliances, plumbing, etc. There are apps for learning English, paying electricity bills, delivering food items, grocery, etc. They can be used from anywhere, anytime. So, they have become indispensable to human life.

2 Are there any drawbacks to apps?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Some apps consume a lot of storage. So, it becomes a problem when installing new ones. So, you have to clear your cache constantly. Apart from this, there are no drawbacks.

3 Are these apps helpful in making honest relations?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Some apps promote friendship. But there is no credibility to the information provided. It is up to the user to be smart when establishing relationships through apps.

4 How can technology make our life easier?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Technology, if used wisely, is a boon. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** They help us a great deal in our daily lives. **(Give an example)** For example, air-conditioners and refrigerators are very helpful in hot countries. The former transforms your atmosphere by making it cool while the latter helps to keep the food safe. They help us to improve our lifestyle.

5 Why are mobile phones gaining popularity?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) They are easy to carry and can be used from anywhere in the world. Besides, their costs are affordable. They have a lot of built-in features that make life easier. People use it not only for communication



but also to listen to music, watch movies, and play games. So, it is quite natural that they are gaining popularity.

Vocabulary

Indispensable (adj) - absolutely necessary.

Eg: Water is indispensable to human life.

Constantly (adv) - continuously over a period of time; always.

Eg: Sheela was constantly battling with her fears.

Promote (verb) - support or actively encourage (a cause, venture, etc.); further the progress of.

Eg: Kevin was advised to promote his product by making campaigns.

Boon (noun) - a thing that is helpful or beneficial.

Eg: The newly constructed lane will be a boon to the pedestrians.

Popularity (noun) - the state or condition of being liked, admired, or supported by many people.

Eg: In the 1960s, the actor was at the peak of popularity.



26. Describe a recent goal you set yourself

You should say,

- what it was
- why you wanted it
- what you did to get your goal
- And explain how you felt about it

Sample Answer

(what it was) (why you wanted it) I seldom make new year resolutions because I don't have the determination to make them come true. So I'm usually very far from setting goals. But I did get a demanding situation in my life, where I had to take serious steps. It was my weight gain. Due to lack of physical activity, I gained 5 kgs which I noticed when my clothes did not fit properly. I was not able to put on my favourite dresses, and I became worried. So I decided to work out a plan to get rid of the 5 kgs.

(what you did to get your goal) As a first step, I decided to fight against my sugar cravings. I searched the internet, left, right and centre and found some useful tips from a nutritionist. I learnt that it is because of protein deficiency that a person craves for sweets. So I decided to cut my breakfast and replaced it with a protein smoothie. Then I consulted a physician, who advised me to do yoga. He warned that I could see results, only gradually. I joined a yoga class and stuck to the schedule religiously. Every morning, I got up at 5:00 AM in the morning, because the class was at 5:30 AM. Previously, I used to sleep at ungodly hours when I had to meet my deadlines at work. I focused more on my work and tried to complete the work within office hours. Since I had my yoga classes in the morning, I made it a habit to wake up early. I spent about an hour at the yoga class. The yoga teacher enlightened me on the importance of sleep and also advised me to cut down on my caffeine intake. She advised me to go to bed on time because it was needed for the repair of the muscles. **(explain how you felt about it)** Surprisingly, I began to get results within a month. The first that improved was the fat on my cheeks. I was not chubby cheeks anymore! I noticed that my body became flexible as a result of yoga. I was confident that I would shed my 5kgs soon, and it did happen after six months. At last, I achieved something, and I was on cloud nine when I got out of the weighing machine at the hospital. I thanked my doctor for his guidance.

Vocabulary

Resolutions (noun) - a firm decision to do or not to do something.

Eg: She made a resolution to stop eating chocolates.



Determination (noun) - the quality of being determined; firmness of purpose.

Eg: She succeeded in becoming a Singer because of her determination.

Gradually (adverb) - in a gradual way; slowly; by degrees.

Eg: The saint assured him that his situation would improve gradually.

Religiously (adverb) - with consistent and conscientious

regularity. **Eg:** He works out religiously for five hours everyday.

Being on Cloud nine (noun phrase) - Blissfully happy

Eg: Ever since the marriage was fixed, she was on cloud nine.

Part 3

1 Do people need to write down goals or simply memorize them?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Writing helps. **(Explain your reason or reasons)**

When a person puts down his thoughts in writing, he gains more insight into it. As you write, you get more ideas, and later they serve as a reference. At moments of exhaustion, when we feel like giving up, these notes help. They serve as a driving factor.

2 Do Indian people usually set goals?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, a lot of them set goals. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Most Indians are very resolute when it comes to achieving what they want. Mostly, goals will be related to the creation of wealth. Indians not only set goals but also work hard until it is materialized. **(Give an example)** A clear example of this would be the number of Indian students studying abroad. They have set goals for themselves during their period of study here, pursued them seriously, and also were successful in making them come true.

3 What are the kinds of goals that are unrealistic?

(Give a direct answer to the question) **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Goals that are beyond the person's capability and passion are unrealistic. **(Give an example)** For example, an average student hailing from a middle-class family cannot dream about getting into a top university without a scholarship. Scholarships are reserved for high performers, and fees would be unaffordable. It will be an unrealistic goal.

4 What is more fulfilling working towards a goal or achieving it?

(Give a direct answer to the question) **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Both of them equally fulfilling. When working towards a goal, one may encounter a lot of hurdles, and overcoming them builds confidence. The person gets one step closer to the goal. After achieving the goal,



it is a sense of accomplishment. The person will become more confident and will be ready to face more challenges.

5 Should parents set goals for their children?

(Give a direct answer to the question) No. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Parents should help children achieve their goals. But the goals should be set by their children. **(Give an example)** For example, if the child has a passion for life Sciences, then his goal would be to become a doctor as a teenager. The parent can help the child by paying the fees. But if the parent has already set a goal that his child should become a marine Engineer and forces the kid to pursue it, then the outcome may not be positive.

Vocabulary

Reference (noun) - the use of a source of information to ascertain something.

Eg: He used the poetries of Wordsworth for reference.

Give up (phrasal verb) - cease making an effort; admit defeat.

Eg: Due to political pressure, he gave up his efforts of establishing a school in the area

Encounter (verb) - unexpectedly be faced with or experience (something hostile or difficult).

Eg: The computer scientists encountered a strange problem called Y2K.

Unrealistic (adj) - not realistic [realistic(adj) - having or showing a sensible and practical idea of what can be achieved or expected]

Eg: It is unrealistic to expect an overnight change in Tom's behavior.

Outcome (noun) - the way a thing turns out; a consequence.

Eg: It is easy to predict the outcome of the meeting.



27. Describe a large company that you are interested in

You should say,

- what it is
- what business it does
- how you know about it
- And explain how you feel about it

Sample Answer

(what it is) (what business it does) There are many large companies in the world today. One that I'm interested in is "AT&T". "AT&T" stands for "American Telephone and Telegraph Company". It is a pioneer in the field of telecommunications. They have carved a niche for themselves in offering broadband and fixed-line telephone services across the world.

(how you know about it) I got to know about it from my cousin who served in the company for nearly five years. He was always my inspiration, and I want to follow his footsteps.

(Explain how you feel about it) We had discussed many things about the company, which increased my desire to work for it. They have a fantastic work culture and ensure work-life balance. I have witnessed it because my cousin took part in the county tennis matches, while he worked there. I had never seen him complaining about work. Also, I have my own plans for settling abroad and amassing wealth. Since my cousin was able to work for five years, it is obvious that the attrition rate is less. I have a fairly good amount of experience with an Indian division of a Korean telecommunications company. So, I'm sure I will be able to crack the interview with "AT&T". Currently, I'm working on an important assignment upon completion of which, I will apply for "AT&T".

Vocabulary

Telephone (noun) - a system for transmitting voices over a distance using wire or radio, by converting acoustic vibrations to electrical signals.

Eg: She made a telephone call to her aunt.

Telegraph (noun) - a system for transmitting messages from a distance along a wire, especially one creating signals by making and breaking an electrical connection

Eg: Initially the use of Telegraph was confined to the Railways.

Work life balance (noun) - the division of one's time and focus between working and family or leisure activities

Eg: Tim quit the company due to poor work life balance.



Telecommunications (noun) - The branch of technology concerned with telecommunication

(communication over a distance by cable, telegraph, telephone, or broadcasting.)

Eg: She graduated from Cambridge in Telecommunications

Part 3

1 Are there many big companies in your country?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, there are a lot of them. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** India is home to several IT Giants like Infosys, Wipro, TCS, and Tech Mahindra. There are also many foreign investment banks like Société Generale, Goldman Sachs, and Wells Fargo.

2 What are the good things about working for a big company?

(Give a direct answer to the question) **(Explain your reason or reasons)** The pay package would be very high. Attrition rates would be low. There would be a lot of opportunities for international travel. There would be many additional benefits like insurance, perks, and bonuses.

3 Should big companies donate more to charities?

(Give a direct answer to the question) They should. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Now CSR or Corporate social responsibility is made law in India. The aim is to pressurize society's wealthier sections to help the poor and help eradicate social inequalities in the nation. There are many trusts set up by the wealthy industrialists to build schools and Universities.

4 Is it difficult to get a promotion in a large company?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Not at all. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Be it a large company or small company, it is up to the person to get himself noticed. Large companies have many divisions within them. So, if one project does not offer the required growth, there is no need to quit the company. You can switch to another project with ease, which is not possible in a small company.

5 Should big companies be punished more seriously if they break the law?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Undoubtedly, yes. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Big companies generate more revenue and are symbols of national pride. So, they should be more responsible in ensuring that they abide by the law. They should be punished harder because they bring down the nation's image in the international arena.



Vocabulary

Giant (adj) - of very great size or force, gigantic.

Eg: Mittal is a giant in the steel manufacturing business.

Pressurize (verb) - attempt to persuade or coerce (someone) into doing something.

Eg: Her father pressurized her to study maths.

Eradicate (verb) - destroy completely; put an end to.

Eg: The political party came to power with the promise that it will eradicate poverty.

Abide (verb) - accept or act in accordance with (a rule, decision, or recommendation)

Eg: John agreed to abide by the rules of the organisation.

Image (noun) - the general impression that a person, organization, or product presents to the public.

Eg: The actor had a good image.



28. Describe an article you read about healthy living

You should say,

- what it was about
- when you read it
- where you read it
- and explain what you learnt from it

Sample Answer

(what it was about) (when you read it) (where you read it) I've come across several videos in youtube. I subscribed for many cookery videos last year, and interestingly one of the chefs had an interview with Mrs X, a nutritionist. It was very impressive that I looked for her articles on the internet and found that she had a website called "abc.com". **(explain what you learnt from it)** I studied the website every nook and corner and found the tips to be very useful. I especially like the way she has categorised the information into "myths", "facts" and "truths". I learnt that if you are craving for something sinful, like sweets and savouries all through the day, you ought to find a healthy alternative and work on analysing why you've got such a craving. I also learnt that not all fats are bad for health. I got to know the difference between trans fat and saturated fat. It was surprising to know that we need some fats like Omega3 and Omega6, and it is too much trans fat that leads to conditions like a heart attack. Also, the website strongly stated that being slim doesn't mean a person is healthy and that we should not judge anyone's health by their weight. There were many such myths and explanations given which clarified many of my doubts on health. I found the website very informative.

Vocabulary

Nutritionist (noun) - a person who studies or is an expert in nutrition

Eg: In an interview with the press, the nutritionist gave some tips on weight loss.

Craving (noun) - a powerful desire for

something. **Eg:** Tina had a craving for sweets.

Alternative (noun) - one of two or more available possibilities.

Eg: Nuts are a healthy alternative to snacks.

Trans Fat (noun) - An unhealthy substance that is made through the chemical process of hydrogenation of oils.

Eg: Trans fat is found in microwave popcorns and non-dairy coffee creamers.



Slim (adj) - (of a person or their build) gracefully thin; slender.

Eg: Margaret had a slim figure.

Part 3

1 Why do different people like to read different magazines?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Tastes, passions, and pursuits differ from person to person. Also, there are magazines for every field. Tech-savvy people read magazines like PC Quest. For general reading, people choose magazines like Reader's Digest. Those interested in films read magazines like Filmfare.

2 What kind of magazines do teenagers like to read?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Generally, they like to read about sports, fitness, and movies. Some prefer to read technical stuff. Girls would be interested in reading about what is trending in fashion.

3 What's the difference between the news on TV and news in magazines?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) On the television, you just get a gist of the news. But in magazines, it will be analyzed in detail. There would be an exhaustive coverage provided. **(Give an example)** For example, in case of a murder, news on TV would just brief that such a thing has happened, whereas in magazines they probe into the causes, analyze various factors, and it would be more or less like a detective report.

4 Do people like to read news from the Internet?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, a lot of them do. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Almost all major newspapers have an internet version. Some of the content will be free, and when you want to read in detail, they will ask you to pay for it.

5 Do you think the people today are healthier than those in the past?

(Give a direct answer to the question) No. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Even when there are many campaigns on health, and there is increased awareness, the average lifespan has decreased. People of yesteryears lived until their nineties. Now sixty has become the average age. Though medical facilities have improved, people today suffer from a lot of diseases.

Vocabulary

Tech-savvy (adj) - well informed about or proficient in the use of modern technology, especially computers.



Eg: The youth of today are very tech-savvy.

Trending (adj) - currently popular or widely discussed online, especially on social media websites.

Eg: Ashley's murder was trending in today's evening news.

Gist (noun) - the substance or general meaning of a speech or text.

Eg: It was hard to get a gist of the saint's speech.

Awareness (noun) - knowledge or perception of a situation or fact.

Eg: There was an increased awareness of pandemic among the public.

Lifespan (noun) - The length of time a person or animal lives or a thing function.

Eg: The lifespan of a mosquito is very short.





29. Describe an interesting animal you have seen

You should say,

- what it was
- where you saw it
- what it was doing
- and explain why it was interesting.

Sample Answer

(what it was) (where you saw it) My Company had organised a trip to Thekkady in Kerala. On reaching there, we had boating around a river. While we were on the boat, we saw beautiful landscapes, tall trees and the whole area was just splendid. It seemed more like a forest, and suddenly one of my friends started jumping in joy. We turned towards her and were equally surprised to see a tiger roaming in the woods. We were at a safe distance from the bank. So we enjoyed seeing the wild animal without fear.

(what it was doing) (explain why it was interesting) It was around 3:00 PM. I was looking keenly into its eyes. Those powerful ones, capable of nocturnal vision. I've watched the tiger pounce on its prey on the television, but never got a chance to see it live. It roamed hither and thither and seemed to be searching for something. Slowly, it came near the water and then went back to the tall trees. It kept doing the same thing for over three times. Then it sat down on the grass, opening its mouth wide open. The canines were very much visible. The yellow and white stripes on it were glistening. It was such a spectacular sight. Slowly, it got up and moved towards the tall trees and into the woods. As the boat moved further, we lost sight of it.

Vocabulary

Roaming (adj) - moving about aimlessly or unsystematically, especially over a wide area.

Eg: The herds of deer were roaming near the grasslands.

Woods (noun) - an area of land, smaller than a forest, that is covered with growing trees.

Eg: The peacock quickly vanished into the woods.

Nocturnal (adj) - done, occurring, or active at night.

Eg: There are many nocturnal animals.

Glistening (adj) - shining with a sparkling light.



Eg: The golden sculpture was glistening.

Part 3

1 Why do people like to keep pets?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Pets such as dogs and cats show unconditional love for their masters. Some people keep them for fun while others keep them to ward off their loneliness. Some people love them so much that they provide for pets in their will.

2 What should we do to protect endangered animals?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Many animals are endangered. **(Give an example)** For example, it is estimated that only 3500 tigers are remaining in the world. Hunting should be abolished. Blue cross societies should be strengthened. Also, we should increase awareness among the public.

3 Is experimenting on animals harmful to them?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Undoubtedly, yes. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Scientists should be forced to look for alternatives. The experiments conducted on animals should be deemed unacceptable. There should be strict rules in place to avoid using animals for experiments.

4 Why do some people refuse to eat animals?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Some are vegans from birth. Some people stop eating animals after being influenced by vegan communities. Some people fear that they would fall prey to the diseases that animals may have. So, they stop eating animals.

5 What would happen when some species disappear on earth?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Balance of the ecosystem would be disturbed. It would have an indirect impact on human lives, which we would realize much later. Also, we would miss out on some exquisite creations of nature.

Vocabulary

Pet (noun) - a domestic or tamed animal kept for companionship or pleasure.

Eg: John had a cat as his pet animal.



Ward off (phrasal verb) - to keep it from happening.

Eg: The mother advised the child to eat a lot of fruits to ward off diseases.

Endangered (adj) - (of a species) seriously at risk of extinction.

Eg: The Government has enforced strict laws to protect the endangered species of birds.

Vegan (noun) - a person who does not eat or use animal products.

Eg: John was a strict vegan

Ecosystem (noun) - a biological community of interacting organisms and their physical environment.

Eg: The pond ecosystem was disturbed due to the release of effluents from a nearby factory.





30. Describe a (school or company) uniform you have worn

You should say,

- what it was
- how you got it
- what it looked like
- and explain how you felt about it

Sample Answer

(what it was) (how you got it) (what it looked like) Uniforms enforce discipline, wherever they are worn. I work for a company, and we don't have any uniforms here. But I did wear uniforms when I was in school. My parents purchased a new set of uniform every year because I grew up very fast. We got it stitched from the tailor in the school. We wore white shirts and white skirts on Mondays. From Tuesday to Thursday, we wore white shirts with grey vertical stripes on it and grey pinafores. On Fridays, we wore coloured shirts and white skirts. The colour depended on the sports group you belonged to. There were four different sports groups called Red Roses, Blues, Green leaves and Violets. I belonged to the Violets and hence wore a violet shirt. We were all given metal badges bearing our school emblem, and we pinned it on our uniforms.

(explain how you felt about it) I had a great sense of pride whenever I wore them. Infact, they distributed first rank badges for those who secured first in class. It was a metal badge painted in red with the letters "FIRST RANK" inscribed on it. I always topped the class. So I wore it along with my school badge. I always wore neat and ironed uniforms, and my teachers appreciated me for it. I was especially fond of Fridays because I loved the violet shirt. I thought It made me look pretty. As I was living in the southern part of India, which had a tropical climate, we did not have separate uniforms for winters.

Vocabulary

Uniform (noun)- the distinctive clothing worn by members of the same organization or body or by children attending certain schools.

Eg: The employees of ABC company wore brown uniforms.

Pinafore (noun) - a collarless sleeveless dress worn over a blouse or jumper.

Eg: Sheela's uniform was a blue shirt and a grey pinafore.



Badges (noun) - a small piece of metal, plastic, or cloth bearing a design or words, typically worn to identify a person or to indicate membership of an organization or support for a cause.

Eg: The committee distributed green badges for its volunteers.

Emblem (noun) - a heraldic device or symbolic object as a distinctive badge of a nation, organization, or family.

Eg: The school's emblem was a golden trumpet.

Inscribed (adj) - (of a surface or object) marked with characters

Eg: The complex was inscribed with beautiful poetries

Part 3

1 Why should students wear uniforms?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) It creates a sense of uniformity among children. You would never get to know who is poor and rich because everyone will be wearing the same dress. This is the best thing about uniforms. Apart from this, uniforms instill discipline among students. It creates an identity for them. So, uniforms are necessary.

2 On what occasion should people wear uniforms?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Uniforms are not meant for occasions. They don't serve the purpose if worn only for events. Also, it is not cost-effective when worn only for occasions. It makes more sense if worn every day.

3 Should companies ask employees about the design of their uniforms?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, they can take the opinion of the employees. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** They would participate eagerly because it is the dress that they are going to wear every day. They will look forward to wearing the uniforms they designed and will carry a sense of pride.

4 Can people tell someone's personality by his or her clothes?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Of course, "Dress maketh a man." We are indeed judged by what we wear. But this may not be applicable in all circumstances. **(Give an example)** For example, a brilliant guy who is working on an important project with a tight deadline may not tend to notice much on what he is wearing to the office. But he may be the go-to person in that project. On completion of this assignment, he may concentrate on his dress. So, you cannot always judge a person by his or her clothes.

5



5. What colour would catch people's attention most?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) It depends on the occasion. Dull pastel colours are appreciated in the office whereas bright colours attract attention in a party or wedding. But there is a psychology behind colours. Once upon a time, blue was considered to attract everybody. But it keeps changing.

Vocabulary

Instill (verb) - to put a feeling, idea, or principle gradually into someone's mind, so that it has a strong influence on the way that person thinks or behaves.

Eg: A parent must instill confidence in his kids.

Occasions (noun) - a particular time, especially when something happens or has happened

Eg: John met Kim on several occasions to discuss the partnership.

Circumstances (noun) - a fact or event that makes a situation the way it is

Eg: Under no circumstances, were the workers allowed to approach the union.

Go-to person (noun) - used to describe the best person to deal with a particular problem or do a particular thing.

Eg: Ram was the go-to person in his office.

Attract (verb) - (of people, things, places, etc.) to pull or draw someone or something towards them, by the qualities they have, especially good ones

Eg: Roses attracted the little girl.



31. Describe an important text message you received

You should say,

- what it was
- when you got it
- who you got it from
- and explain what you did after reading it

Sample Answer

(what it was) (when you got it) (who you got it from) This is the era of smartphones. But some people still use messaging services. My aunt is one of them. She is a retired customs officer. She has a daughter who has moved to the US. I was so fond of her from my childhood, mainly because my mum influenced me to think highly of her. Last month, my phone beeped. When I looked at it, it was a message from my aunt. She had typed that since she needed to take a steroid injection for which she will be anaesthetized, she needed someone to help her in the hospital at 3:00 PM, to hold her belongings and to attend to the request of the nurses. **(explain what you did after reading it)** I never gave a second thought. I immediately replied saying I'll be there at her home in the next half-an-hour and we could go to the hospital together. I dressed up and rushed to my parking area, picked up my two-wheeler and hurried to her place. I was there by 1:00 PM. She greeted me with herbal tea. She was 70 and seemed a bit worried about the injection procedure. I comforted her, eased her tension, ensured that I would be there all along and would drop her home. I could see that she felt better. I accompanied her to the hospital, and waited until the entire procedure got over. She regained consciousness by 6:00 PM. The doctor immediately discharged her. Then I dropped her home and stayed with her till 9:00 PM and got back home by 10:00 PM. I felt very happy to have got a chance to help her.

Vocabulary

Smartphone (noun) - a mobile phone that performs many of the functions of a computer, typically having a touchscreen interface, Internet access, and an operating system capable of running downloaded apps.

Eg: She bought a brand new smartphone out of her first salary.

Beeped (verb) - (of a horn or electronic device) produce a beep (a short, high-pitched sound emitted by electronic equipment or a vehicle horn.).

Eg: The phone beeped loudly.



Text message (noun) - an electronic communication sent and received by mobile phone.

Eg: She sent a text message to her boyfriend.

Discharged (verb) - tell (someone) officially that they can or must leave a place or situation. **Eg:** She was discharged from hospital after three days of her surgery.

Part 3

1 How do people in India deliver important information?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Most people in India use email nowadays. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** As smartphones are available to everyone, people use apps like WhatsApp to deliver important messages. There are some exceptions who write letters too.

2 Are traditional paper mails valued in the present days?

(Give a direct answer to the question) **(Explain your reason or reasons)** They are used only by people who do not have access to the latest technology. The concept of traditional paper mails has become outdated. Even in rural areas, people prefer electronic mails over paper mails. They are handwritten, which makes them very special. Apart from this, they don't carry any other significance.

3 Have our ways to communicate with each other changed in recent years?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, there is a drastic change. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Earlier, people used handwritten letters or typed them in a typewriter. It took a considerable amount of time to reach the intended person. Nowadays, email reaches the recipient in no time. Electronic mails have made communication easy.

4 What are the advantages of sending messages via social applications?

(Give a direct answer to the question) **(Explain your reason or reasons)** It helps people to stay connected. **(Give an example)** For example, a person may be working in a company in India, and his friend in school may be living in Australia. It is social media that helps them to communicate efficiently. They can share photos of families, trips that they have been to, chat, or make video calls. So social media helps both of them to be updated on what each other is doing.

5 What is the information that cannot be communicated via text messages?

(Give a direct answer to the question) **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Certain confidential information related to Military secrets cannot be shared via text messages. There are many hackers, and one can even probe information bypassing the encryption protocols.



Vocabulary

Letters (noun) - a written message from one person to another, usually put in an envelope and sent by post

Eg: Sita wrote a letter to the bank.

Access (noun) - the right or opportunity to use or look at something

Eg: The internet cafe gave limited access to its customers

Typewriter (noun) - a machine with keys that you press to produce letters and numbers on paper

Eg: The Company still uses a typewriter.

Confidential (adj) - secret or private, often in a formal, business, or military situation

Eg: The manager discussed some confidential information with Sam.

Encryption (noun) - the process of changing electronic information or signals into a secret code (= system of letters, numbers, or symbols) that people cannot understand or use without special equipment

Eg: The ATM uses secure encryption software that enables secure money transactions.



32. Describe a successful small company

You should say,

- what this company is
- how you know about it
- what it produces
- and explain why you think this company is successful

Sample Answer

(what this company is) (how you know about it) (what it produces) The world has plenty of new ideas. Last week, I received a video from my friend on Whatsapp. The video started with a man placing orders in a hotel and waiting for his meal. His waiting time increased and out of hunger, he started eating the spoons, cups, and plates on the table. Then there was a voice which said that they were meant for edible purposes only. They were edible cutleries, manufactured by two housewives in Bangalore. I became interested in the business and watched the video completely.

(explain why you think this company is successful) The raw materials required for this business are very cheap. They are organic natural ingredients like wheat, jowar, rice powder, millets, grains, pulses and spices. They started making this at home where they made moulds of cups and spoons manually. When they became confident, they started it as a business named "ABC". The manufacturing involves simple processes like preparing the concoctions, moulding by hand and by machines and placing them in an oven. It is a zero-waste, biodegradable, no plastic venture. Even if the person throws it into the environment, it gets dissolved within 40 minutes and gets converted to manure. I think the success of this business is due to the disasters caused by plastic. They have started this business at just the right time when the government has banned the use of plastics and hotels and supermarkets are looking for an alternative.

Vocabulary

Edible (adj) - fit to be eaten (often used to contrast with unpalatable or poisonous varieties).

Eg: Those berries are edible.

Raw material (noun) - the basic material from which a product is made.

Eg: The interior decorator purchased his raw materials from a wood cutter.



Moulds (noun) - a hollow container used to give shape to molten or hot liquid material when it cools and hardens

Eg: The shopkeeper poured hot liquid into mould to prepare the Ganesha idol.

Concoctions (noun) - a mixture of various ingredients or element.

Eg: It was a delicious smelling concoction of various flower essences.

Biodegradable (adj) - (of a substance or object) capable of being decomposed by bacteria or other living organisms and thereby avoiding pollution.

Eg: Bacteria can process wastes into biodegradable materials

Part 3

1 What do you think can be considered as emerging industries?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Emerging industries are those that are formed around a new product or centred around a new idea and are in the early stages of development. They are often centred around new technology. For example, AI health care is an emerging industry.

2 Is market research important for export business?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Market research is essential for success in the export business. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** You have to research your target market and understand its characteristics to reach better. If market research is not done, it leads to mistakes that result in losses.

3 In business, do companies need to be competitive?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Undoubtedly, yes. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** You need to be aware of what your competitors do and then improve your product. The more your product is chosen over your competitors, the more grateful you become and pressurized to maintain the quality of your products.

4 How can businesses benefit the community in which they are located?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Firstly, they create employment opportunities. There are other benefits, as well. Business owners may donate to the needy, participate in charity events, contribute to local non-profit organizations, and motivate youngsters by giving lectures.

5 What kind of small businesses are the most popular?



(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Businesses related to clothes such as boutiques, in food such as cafes, in transport such as pick up and drop services, in e-commerce such as doorstep delivery services are very popular.

Vocabulary

Emerging (adj) - growing and developing, esp. in business investment.

Eg: The United Nations should pay more attention to emerging democracies.

Target (noun) - a person or a particular group of people that something is directed at, or that something is intended for

Eg: The target audience for the cricket match is young people aged between 16-19.

Grateful (adj) - showing or expressing thanks, especially to another person

Eg: Sita was grateful to Sheela for all that she had done.

Donate (verb) - to give money or goods to help a person or organization

Eg: People were asked to donate generously to the red cross.

Boutiques (noun) - a small shop that sells fashionable clothes, shoes, jewelry, etc.

Eg: Sita purchased some dresses from the new boutique



33. Describe an ideal house or apartment you would like to live in

You should say,

- where it is
- what it looks like
- what features it would have
- and explain why it would be ideal for you.

Sample Answer

(where it is) (what it looks like) (what features it would have) Currently, I live in an apartment. But in future, I would like to live in a Villa. There's one coming up near Krater Ram Railway junction, and I'm eyeing on it. From the exterior, it looks like a Spanish bungalow. In the interior, it looks perfectly Indian. Everyone knows that a Villa would have facilities like the swimming pool, mini gym, private spa area, home theatre, games room, mini-garden, tennis court, yoga area and outdoor lounging area. Additionally, I will create space for a reading room.

(explain why it would be ideal for you) I would enjoy the serenity that is inherent in the Villas. I would decorate my garden with rare species from the plant kingdom. In the mornings, I would meditate in the yoga area. In the afternoons, I would relax in the lounge or watch movies in the home theatre. In the evenings, I would play virtual games with the Xbox gaming console. On weekends, I would enjoy a relaxing head massage in the spa. I would be able to live in a world of my own. I would be able to sense and appreciate the tranquility of the space. In the apartment, you would have to approach the association for every silly thing. But I would reign my space in the Villa. As I think of it, I get a feel of an Empress. I guess that's my ideal living space.

Vocabulary

Villa (noun) - (especially in continental Europe) a large and luxurious country house in its own grounds.

Eg: She purchased a serene Villa in the outskirts of a city.

Bungalow (noun) - (in SE Asia) a large detached house with more than one storey.

Eg: She lived in a bungalow near the lake.

Lounging (verb) - lie, sit, or stand in a relaxed or lazy way.



Eg: He was lounging about sipping tea.

Ideal (adj) - satisfying one's conception of what is perfect; most suitable. **Eg:** She found her ideal man.

Part 3

1 Do most Indian people live in an apartment or house?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) It depends on whether you are in the City or countryside. Most people in cities live in apartments as there is not much space available. People in the countryside live in big independent houses.

2 Do young people in your country like to live with their parents or by themselves?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Most young people prefer to live with their parents. But once they finish school, they relocate to another country or city for education or career pursuits.

3 Do Indian people like to rent a place to live?

(Give a direct answer to the question) No. (Explain your reason or reasons) The majority of them like to live in their own homes. They are willing to buy a house on loan and pay the EMIs rather than living in one for rent.

4 How is modern home design in your country different from that of the past?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) It is very different from that of the past. People used cement constructions in the past. But it is slowly being replaced by plywood. **(Give an example)** For example, nowadays, we don't have cement lofts or Almiras. Instead, we have wooden ones. We have false ceiling roofs instead of the plain ones.

5 Do people prefer to live in Modern Homes or the older style homes (for example from 50 years ago)?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Nobody wants to live in old-style homes. Even if the exterior is traditional, they ensure that they have all the modern facilities inside. The main advantage of modern homes is that they have better facilities for fitting electronic gadgets.

Vocabulary



Countryside (noun) - land not in towns, cities, or industrial areas, the land is either used for farming or left in its natural condition

Eg: Tom visited the countryside every summer.

Relocate (verb) - to (cause a person or Company to) move to a new place

Eg: The old couple relocated to India.

EMI (noun) - Equated monthly installment, as the name suggests, is one part of the equally divided monthly outgoes to clear off an outstanding loan within a stipulated time frame.

Eg: Ram paid his EMIs on time.

Ceiling (noun) - the inside surface of a room that you can see when you look above you

Eg: Ceilings are usually painted in white.

Gadgets (noun) - a small device or machine with a particular purpose

Eg: He purchased new kitchen gadgets for his modular kitchen.





34. Describe a job you would not like to do in the future

You should say,

- what it is
- how it is done
- how you know about it
- and explain why you would not like to do this job.

Sample Answer

(what it is) (how it is done) (how you know about it) After completing my Bachelors in India, I moved to the US to pursue my Masters in Computer Science. The scholarship I got was meagre and was just enough for the college fee. I got to know from my professor that there was a vacancy in a medical laboratory nearby. So I took up a job as a medical lab assistant to supplement my expenses. I worked in the evenings. I opted for it because I had no choice. The job involved analysis of samples of body tissue taken from patients, like blood. The key ability required was good eyesight because you have to work on fine samples. I wore spectacles, and as my power increased, I wore thick lenses.

(explain why you would not like to do this job) I had to strain myself to do the job. It was very taxing. As I worked on the samples, I was always at the fear of giving a wrong analysis. I never trusted my findings and re-checked them over and over again. This way, I was very slow. I took more time to complete one analysis. It was not a highly paid job, but it did require some skills. Though my analysis was correct most of the time, I did fewer samples in a day than what was expected. I was being supervised by a chinese lady. She always complained that I was not upto the mark. I tried to explain my situation, but she would not listen to it. After a hard day at the university, this job made my life more strenuous. It was a tough and testing time of my life. I was determined not to quit on my own. Somehow, I managed to finish the two years of my Masters. But I would never take up the job of a medical lab assistant.

Vocabulary

Meagre (adj) - (of something provided or available) lacking in quantity or quality. **Eg:** She had meagre income from her job as a typist.

Supplement (verb) - add an extra element or amount to.

Eg: She did stitching to supplement her husband's low income.



Lab assistant (adj phrase) - Lab Assistants are responsible for helping technologists and scientists during lab tests and research.

Eg: She worked as a lab assistant for nearly fifteen years.

Samples (noun) - a small part or quantity intended to show what the whole is like.

Eg: The investigation involved analysing the samples of blood.

Strenuous (adj) - requiring or using great effort or exertion.

Eg: She made strenuous attempts to learn maths.

Part 3

1 Which do young people generally prefer – boring jobs with higher pay or interesting jobs with lower pay?

(Give a direct answer to the question) I think it is tough to generalize. It varies from person to person. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** There are people who work for money and also people who work for passion. If their goal is money-making, they will be able to bear with a tedious job. If they work for passion, then money does not matter.

2 Which do you prefer, physical work or work involving thinking?

(Give a direct answer to the question) I prefer to think and work rather than doing something which requires manual effort. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** It is not that I disrespect physical work, but it is just that I won't be the right fit for it. Nowadays, there are hardly any jobs that require physical labour. Everything is automated.

3 How do young people today decide their career?

(Give a direct answer to the question) **(Explain your reason or reasons)** I think the younger generation today makes brilliant career choices. They are more mature. There is a lot of material available on the internet. Social media like Facebook and YouTube assist them in their research. So, they don't have to look up to their elders for suggestions. There are also many career advices given in schools and colleges, which helps them decide on the right career path.

4 What factors should be considered when choosing jobs?

(Give a direct answer to the question) **(Explain your reason or reasons)** First of all, a person needs to analyze if they have the required skills for the job. Then, the salary package and growth opportunities should be taken into consideration. If a job is chosen based on these factors, there is no need to switch jobs often.

5 Some people will lose their jobs because of technology, how to deal with it?



(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Everyone must upskill themselves time and again. People should keep themselves updated with the latest changes and observe the trends in their respective jobs. This way, they can remain safe, even if their current technology becomes outdated.

Vocabulary

Generalize (verb) - make a general or broad statement by inferring from specific cases.

Eg: It is tough to generalize which category is poor.

Money making (noun) - the action of earning a lot of money.

Eg: The main aim of the political party was money-making.

Automated (adj) - operated by largely automatic equipment.

Eg: ABC company automated 75% of its operations.

Upskill (verb) - (of an employee) learn additional skills.

Eg: Ram received an increment because he upskilled himself in the latest technology.

Outdated (adj) - out of date; obsolete.

Eg: Some computer languages have become outdated.



35. Describe a practical skill you learned

You should say,

- what it was
- how you learned it
- why you learned it
- and explain how you felt about it.

Sample Answer

(what it was) I learned to drive.

(how you learned it) (why you learned it) I take a bus to my office every day. My office starts at 10:00 AM in the morning, but I start from home at 8:00 AM. The bus stop is a fifteen-minute walk from my house. After reaching there, I had to wait for a minimum of ten minutes for my bus to arrive. It was a journey of 15 minutes. Upon alighting, I had to walk about 15 minutes to reach my office. This was a very tiring exercise. So I decided to learn to ride a two-wheeler. Though I was scared of the traffic in the city, the dull daily routine of boarding the bus made me stubborn. My determination to ride a two-wheeler increased day by day. I requested my neighbour to teach me to ride. He gladly agreed to it. Initially, I fell down, not being able to bear the weight of the vehicle. After the initial hiccups, he finally succeeded in teaching me how to control the throttle. I was able to drive.

(explain how you felt about it) I felt like I was driving a celestial vehicle. I got used to the roads, its speed breakers, and my balance improved day by day. I developed a sense of pride. My confidence increased. I felt like a new human being altogether. I enjoyed it whenever I finished my ride successfully. It was a sense of accomplishment. As days passed by, I was able to get more balance and was enjoying it even as I was driving. I got rid of my road fears completely. Nowadays, I start from my home at 9:30 AM only. So I have plenty of time to do other things.

Vocabulary

Drive (verb) - operate and control the direction and speed of a motor vehicle. operate and control the direction and speed of a motor vehicle.

Eg: She learnt to drive the vehicle.

Hiccups (noun) - a temporary or minor problem or setback.



Eg: He just had a bit of hiccups in his otherwise wonderful service.

Throttle (noun) - a device controlling the flow of fuel or power to an engine.

Eg: The bike was in its full throttle.

Speed breaker (noun) - a speed bump.

Eg: Speed breakers can help reduce the accidents.

Part 3

1 What age will make it difficult for a person to learn a skill?

(Give a direct answer to the question) In my perception, there is no age limit for learning. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Some people read newspapers at the age of 80. Also, it depends on how important that skill is for them. But I agree that under normal conditions, as a person gets older, he or she may develop some health problems that may reduce their capacity to concentrate.

2 Will the age of 5 or 20 be better?

(Give a direct answer to the question) **(Explain your reason or reasons)** I feel age five would be better to acquire any skill. **(Give an example)** For example, I have seen singers and dancers train their kids from the age of 3. They become masters at a very early age of 15. At 5, you are flexible, and your mind is more capable of absorbing things.

3 What is the difference between children learning what they like and learning what they have to learn?

(Give a direct answer to the question) **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Kids must go to school and get a good grasp of Maths, Science, and Languages. But, when they find it difficult to learn these, the parents have to identify their inborn talent. If allowed to pursue, they may shine in it.

4 Do you like to learn new skills constantly?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, of course. I would love to. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** I recently learnt how to play the guitar. I also learnt a new computer language called Python. It is refreshing when you learn it and fills you with a sense of accomplishment when you have finished learning it.

5 Why do boys tend to have better critical thinking skills?



(Give a direct answer to the question) I don't think so. It does not vary based on gender.
(Explain your reason or reasons) Instead, it varies from person to person. It may vary between boys and girls. Also, there is no scientific evidence that boys have better critical thinking skills.

Vocabulary

Age limit (noun) - is the oldest or youngest age at which you are allowed under particular regulations to do something.

Eg: There is no age limit to join the actor's fans club

Acquire (verb) - learn or develop (a skill, habit, or quality).

Eg: You must acquire the fundamentals of Grammar.

Master (adj) - having or showing very great skill or proficiency.

Eg: Raman became a master in dance at the age of twelve.

Refreshing (adj) - welcome or stimulating because new or different.

Eg: It was a refreshing walk in the garden.

Proof (noun) - evidence or argument establishing a fact or the truth of a statement.

Eg: There was no proof of his crime.



36. Describe a road trip you went on

You should say,

- where you went
- who you went with
- what happened on the trip
- And explain how you felt about it

Sample Answer

(where you went) (who you went with) One of my friends had bought a new car with a sunroof. We gathered at this place to have a look at it. Suddenly, he volunteered to take all of us to a bird sanctuary located on a mountain. I was a two-hour drive from his place. All of us agreed to the plan. Our plan was to shout out loud by standing on the sunroof. We decided to do this as we moved atop the mountain. I had some fear of heights. But I did agree to the plan.

(what happened on the trip) After about an hour, we reached downhill, had some refreshing tea and headed upwards. Slowly we were going up the mountain. I was able to sense the height. A chill ran down my spine. But it was only a few minutes, and my fears vanished when my friends started talking about the beautiful scenery. As we drove higher up, one of them reminded us of the sunroof. One of them opened it, peeped through it and shouted loudly "Hip Hip Hurray". One after the other tried it. The car was on the move, though. Then came my turn. I thought I better get the guts to try it out. Initially, it was nervous, but when I peeped out through the sunroof, the beautiful flowers and the soft winds changed my mind. I shouted out loud. Then we tried it in groups of three. There were seven of us altogether. One of them was driving.

(explain how you felt about it) I felt great. My fears vanished. It was a memorable experience. Now that I have gained deep insight into a car with a sunroof, I can advise anyone who wants to buy one.

Vocabulary

Sunroof (noun) - a panel in the roof of a car that can be opened for extra ventilation.

Eg: He bought a brand new car with a sunroof.

Mountain (noun) - a large natural elevation of the earth's surface rising abruptly from the surrounding level; a large steep hill.

Eg: He was afraid to drive on the mountains.



Chill ran down my spine (phrase) - used to say that someone feels very thrilled, frightened, etc.

Eg: A chill ran down her spine as she entered the exam hall.

Peeped (verb) - look quickly and furtively at something, especially through a narrow opening.

Eg: She peeped in through the narrow entrance.

Nervous (adj) - easily agitated or alarmed.

Eg: She became nervous on seeing the operation theatre.

Part 3

1 Why do people need to travel every day?

(Give a direct answer to the question) They travel for several reasons. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** The majority of people travel for work. Also, some people travel to buy daily needs like dairy, grocery, etc. People also travel to meet their friends and relatives.

2 Some people say that daily journeys like these will not be so common in the future. Do you agree or disagree? Why?

(Give a direct answer to the question) **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Yes, with the ever-advancing technology, companies are heading towards work from home. You will have official meetings conducted online, and physical presence will no longer be required. So, this will largely reduce the daily journeys people make.

3 Can travel make a positive difference to the economy of a country? How?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, travel can make a positive impact on the economy. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Notably, there will be a boom in tourism. When it attracts a large number of tourists, it will slowly create opportunities for foreign settlement areas. This will directly impact the foreign relationships with that country, which improves trade agreements, thereby bringing a positive difference to the country's economy.

4 Is it a good thing that everyone owns cars?

(Give a direct answer to the question) **(Explain your reason or reasons)** In advanced countries, everyone owns a car. But it is not good for the environment, and it becomes difficult to regulate traffic as well. Roads become crowded. Besides being a sign of an improved economy of a country, it does not carry any other benefit.

5 Do many families own private cars in your country?



(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, some families do. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** But the trend seems to be positive. It is estimated that many families would own private cars soon. Many people have stable jobs in our country, and hence there is a significant improvement in the lifestyle as well.

Vocabulary

Daily needs (noun) - The fact of being necessary or indispensable; indispensability

Eg: He found a one-stop store for all his daily needs.

Impact (noun) - a marked effect or influence.

Eg: The saint's words made an impact on the crowd.

Agreements (noun) - a negotiated and typically legally binding arrangement between parties as to a course of action.

Eg: There was an agreement signed between the two countries on the trade of spices.

Regulate (verb) - control (something, especially a business activity) by means of rules and regulations.

Eg: The council regulates the operation of the institute.

Lifestyle (noun) - the way in which a person lives.

Eg: Yoga made a positive impact on his lifestyle.



37. Describe a city you have visited and want to go back to in the future

You should say,

- which city it is
- where it is
- what you did there
- And explain why you want to go back

Sample Answer

(which city it is) (where it is) I can say that I have travelled to quite a lot of places. Every summer vacation, we used to go on a trip within India. After I graduated, I moved to the UK and have been to several places here. But there is a sweet haunting city in India, which refuses to move out of my memory. It is Calcutta. Be it patriotism or culture or spirituality; it stands apart. From Rabindranath Tagore to Saurav Ganguly to Satyajit Ray, it has carved a niche for itself in every field. I have visited the city with my parents and friends.

(what you did there) I don't go to Calcutta as a regular tourist. I go with the aim of exploring something, and it turns out to be marvellous expeditions. First time I went there with my parents, my project was exploring Shantiniketan. I was amazed at the concept of open-air learning. I appreciated the fact that a free mind learns better. Later I visited the same city with my friends when I was in college. This time I explored the Missionaries of charity. I got an autograph from the then Superior General.

(explain why you want to go back) It keeps calling me time and again. I have always wondered why. But I'm not able to find an answer to the question. It may be my passion for History that drives me mad to visit this place often.

Vocabulary

Travelled (adj) - having travelled to many places. [Travel- verb : make a journey, typically of some length]

Eg: He was widely travelled and was very wise.

Haunting (adj) - bringing strong images, memories, or feelings to mind.

Eg: He had haunting memories of his first wife.

Carved a niche (phrase) - Succeeding, achieving and fulfilling, accomplish.



Eg: She carved a niche for herself in the Literary field.

Passion (noun) - strong and barely controllable emotion **Eg:** She had a passion for physics.

Part 3

1 What are some of the problems of long-distance travelling?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Whether you are travelling alone by car or train, you tend to get bored after a while. But if you are travelling with a group of people, be it, friends or family, it makes the travel lively. If in a car, you can plan on the kind of music you need to play while travelling. If there are older people in the group, you need to know how to keep the travel engaging so that they forget their health problems and enjoy the trip.

2 Has the way people travel changed over the last few decades?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Yes, it has changed a lot. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** The lifestyle of people has improved, and so has the economy of the country. Flight rates have come down, and there are luxury trains and buses introduced. So people travel with better comfort compared to yesteryears.

3 What is the best way to save money while travelling?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) The best way is to research on the internet. You can compare prices between flights, trains, and buses and decide which is the cheapest mode of transport to a particular destination. Also, you need to plan much ahead of travel, so that tickets are available in all modes of transport. Sometimes there may be offers, which may expire if you book tickets at the last moment.

4 What kind of tourist destinations do you usually prefer?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) I prefer places with a historical background. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** I love to explore the work of our ancestors and take a photocopy of all of them. I prefer to go to Konark Sun temple in Odisha, to the jungles in Karnataka, to Rani Gayatri Devi's Palace in Jaipur, TajMahal in Agra, to name a few. All of them have a rich history associated with them. I got to know about these places from books, newspapers, and magazines.

5 Has a foreign visitor ever stayed at your home?



(Give a direct answer to the question) No, not until now. But I look forward to it, and it will be exciting to have a foreign visitor. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** The main reason would be because of the number of ideas we can exchange. I will guide him/her about places in India and get to know places of special interest in his or her country. It is exciting when I think of it.

Vocabulary

Bored (adj) - feeling weary and impatient because one is unoccupied or lacks interest in one's current activity.

Eg: Tom got bored with playing tennis.

Lively (adj) - intellectually stimulating or perceptive, full of life and energy.

Eg: Sita made the conversation lively.

Luxury (noun)- a state of great comfort or elegance, especially when involving great expense.

Eg: There was a new luxury bus introduced from Punjab to Pakistan.

To name a few (idiom) - To provide only a few examples, though there are copious amounts from which to choose.

Eg: There are many problems in this house. To name a few, the lights are not decorative; there is leakage in the pipes, and there are a lot of mosquitoes.

Eager (adj) - strongly wanting to do or have something.

Eg: The kids were very eager to receive their gifts.



38. Describe a place you visited that has been affected by pollution

You should say:

- where it is
- what kind of pollution it has
- what causes pollution
- And explain how you feel about that place

Sample Answer

(where it is) A thing of beauty is a joy forever. But it would not be joyful to see the beauty fade in front of your eyes. It so happened to me with the pink city Jaipur in India. It is no more pink. It has turned to some sort of a shade of orange.

(what kind of pollution it has) (what causes pollution) The report published by the World Health Organisation attributes the majority of pollution to the improper channelling of energy from industry and transport sectors, coal-fuelled power plants, desert dust and burning of wastes. The air quality index in Jaipur has come down. The place which was once the abode of English Royals is now strewn with garbage. There are no proper arrangements to sort and dispose of it. There are no strict rules in place for open air emissions. There are no programs to shift to cleaner options for electricity and discontinue the use of coal. The negligence from the government has given the city a pathetic look.

(explain how you feel about that place) I was heartbroken. It did not feel good to see the city in ruins. I was so enraged that I wrote a column in the local newspaper to control the air pollution in Jaipur. I vented out with my friends. I'm hoping that the city will return to its royal pink very soon.

Vocabulary

Fade (verb) - gradually grow faint and disappear.

Eg: The light faded and there was darkness all over.

Air quality index (phrase) - index for reporting how clean or polluted your air is, and what associated health effects might be a concern for you. For each of these pollutants, EPA has established national air quality standards to protect public health.

Eg: Before moving to a new place it is better to check the air quality index of the place.

Strewn (adj) - untidily scattered

Eg: The place was strewn with dried flowers.



Heartbroken (adj) - suffering from overwhelming distress.

Eg: She was heartbroken on hearing the death news.

Part 3

1 Why do people throw waste materials on roads?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) I think it is due to their laziness and lack of moral responsibility towards safeguarding the environment and the beauty of the city. A large number of people are ignorant about what they are doing to the environment.

2 How can the government encourage people to keep their city clean?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) They can conduct awareness programs. The program must reach all kinds of people in a city. They can make advertisements and as well as circulate videos on YouTube and Facebook. The program should tell the people the current state of the city. Also, it must project how the city will look like in another ten years if they do and don't follow cleanliness standards.

3 What do you think? Is it a good idea or a bad idea to establish limited factories in a city?

(Give a direct answer to the question) It is a very good idea to restrict the number of factories in a city. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** As the government is responsible for reducing global warming effects, controlling pollution, and maintaining the air quality index in a place, they should enforce strict rules in place regarding the establishment of factories.

4 What kinds of pollution are serious in your country?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) We have almost all kinds of pollution. Air pollution is due to fuel emissions by vehicles and factories. Water pollution is caused when factories let out their waste products to nearby water bodies.

5 What can individuals do to protect our environment?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) As the literacy rate is increasing, most of them are aware of the disaster caused by plastics. So, they can shift to some environmentally friendly products. Now that the government has officially banned it, people have no choice. But even otherwise, any small effort towards protecting the



environment should be voluntarily taken by every individual like not littering on roads and using eco-friendly modes of transport.

Vocabulary

Moral responsibility (noun) - the status of morally deserving praise, blame, reward, or punishment for an act or omission performed or neglected in accordance with one's moral obligations. Deciding what counts as "morally obligatory" is a principal concern of ethics.

Eg: Everyone has moral responsibility towards reducing global warming.

Standards (noun) - a level of quality or attainment.

Eg: Ram had set high standards for the project.

Enforce (verb) - cause (something) to happen by necessity or force.

Eg: The sports committee enforced strict laws for its players.

Literacy (noun) - the ability to read and write.

Eg: Kerala is a state which has a high literacy rate.

Disaster (noun) - an event or fact that has unfortunate consequences.

Eg: There are many disasters caused by releasing industrial effluents into water bodies.



39. Describe a crowded place you have been to

You should say,

- where it was
- when you went there
- why it was crowded
- and explain how you felt about the place.

Sample Answer

(where it was) (when you went there) Soon after my graduation, I got a job in Bangalore. I stayed in a hostel in BTM in Bangalore. On the weekend, my friends and I decided to explore Commercial street. We travelled by bus. It was more than an hour's travel from BTM to Commercial street. The street is famous for selling a variety of things ranging from clothing, footwear, jewellery and electronics. I have read about it in the papers but experienced the real crowd that afternoon. I was almost squeezed. I managed to follow my friends, who moved aimlessly. We halted at a food joint to have pani puri. By the time I put the puri on my mouth, I was hit ruthlessly by a stout, tall person. My puri fell on the ground.

(why it was crowded) Later I learnt that the place contained only 75 parking slots for four-wheelers which causes the area to become very crowded, especially on weekends.

(explain how you felt about that place) Since it was afternoon, the street was bustling with activity. It is true that you get to shop on a variety of things, but you have to bear the crowd. It is easy to get lost. One must be careful about one's belongings. I enjoyed it, though. The place was very entertaining. Time just flew. It was hard for us to realise that it was evening. One of my friends was smart enough to find her way through the crowd, and we followed suit.

Vocabulary

Street (noun) - a public road in a city, town, or village, typically with houses and buildings on one or both sides.

Eg: The streets in his place were very narrow.

Crowd (noun) - a large number of people gathered together in a disorganized or unruly way.

Eg: He got hurt due to the stampede in the crowd.

Squeezed (verb) - manage to get into or through a narrow or restricted space.

Eg: John squeezed in beside Jim.



Ruthlessly (adverb) - without pity or compassion for others.

Eg: He was treated ruthlessly by his friends who lent him money.

Entertaining (adj) - providing enjoyment
Eg: Fredrick was an entertaining companion.

Part 3

1 Is there a completely quiet place?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) There are many such places. There are quite a lot of hills and mountains which are calm. Also, there are places in the city, like museums and libraries, where it is very peaceful. Also, I have observed that post office hour the residential areas remain calm and quiet. For example, my colony is very quiet from 10:00 to 12:00 PM.

2 What are the places which attract many people in your country?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) There are places like Chandni Chowk in Delhi, Commercial street in Bangalore, which attract a lot of people. There are a variety of products being sold in these places and people from all strata of society find some store which suits their expectations.

3 What kind of places do people want to go to when they want to be alone?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) When they want to be alone, people usually go to meditation halls. Some people find their homes to be the best places to spend time alone. Some of them like to drive to a nearby lake or hill where it is very serene. These places allow people to think better.

4 Do people like to go to crowded places? Why or why not?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Well, it depends on the person. It also depends on the income of the person. There are posh areas which are not crowded and where goods are sold at a higher price. But not everyone can afford it. So, the low and middle-income groups tend to go to places where things are affordable and don't bother about the crowd.

5 Is there a place in your country which is overpopulated?



(Give a direct answer to the question) I think it is Mumbai. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** It is commonly believed that anyone can earn a living in Mumbai. There are several businesses thriving in that area. So, people from different parts of the country flock to Mumbai.

Vocabulary

Residential area (noun) - is a land used in which housing predominates, as opposed to industrial and commercial areas. These include single-family housing, multi-family residential, or mobile homes.

Eg: There are many residential areas near ABC mall.

Strata (noun) - a level or class to which people are assigned according to their social status, education, or income.

Eg: Their behavior is poor because they are members of other social strata.

Posh (adj) - elegant or stylishly luxurious

Eg: Leela Palace is a posh hotel.

Afford (verb) - have enough money to pay for.

Eg: I could afford to live only in a single bedroom.

Thriving (adj) - prosperous and growing; flourishing.

Eg: Tim had a thriving umbrella business in the west of the City.



40. Describe a school you went to in your childhood

You should say,

- where it was
- What it was like
- What the teachers were like
- and explain how you felt about it.

Sample Answer

(where it was) (what it was like) The first thing that strikes you when you talk about childhood is your school. I studied in "ABC Matriculation", Chennai. It was one of the top schools in the area. The school was in CIT Nagar, Chennai, which was a kerala settlement. The school had a huge square area of concrete road at the entrance with a stage at its end. There were also tall Ashoka trees near the entrance. There were separate buildings for primary and secondary students. **(what the teachers were like)** Most of the high school teachers were kerala christians. For pre primary classes, we had Anglo Indian teachers. The Vice-Principal was from Calcutta. Great importance was given to English. The teachers were dedicated to their work. Be it Science or Math or English, the classes were very interesting. The teachers were skilled in their respective fields. Apart from Academics, they encouraged students to participate in skits, elocutions and dramas. We also had science exhibitions, once in a year. They created an atmosphere, very conducive to learning. **(explain how you felt about it)** I feel proud to have studied at ABC. After schooling, when I was thrown out into the world, I realized the importance of English. My teachers were right in emphasizing its importance, from childhood. I feel blessed to have attended this school. I owe all my achievements to my dear teachers.

Vocabulary

Childhood (noun) - the state or period of being a child.

Eg: He spent most of his childhood with his grandmother.

Primary school (noun) - a school for children between the ages of about five and eleven.

Eg: There was a primary school being established in Dehradun

Secondary school (noun) - a high school or a school of corresponding grade, ranking between a primary school and a college or university.



Eg: Jim was required to fill details of marks secured in his secondary school, in his college application.

Owe (verb) - be under a moral obligation to give someone (gratitude, respect, etc.). **Eg:** She owed a lot to her mother.

Part 3

1 What is the difference between being taught by teachers and being taught by AI?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) AI or Artificial Intelligence has its advantages. Through AI education is made possible in remote corners of the world. But a teacher has unique qualities that AI cannot replace. Teachers can give individual attention to a student and identify his/her weak and strong areas. But AI will just let the student know if his answer is right or wrong.

2 What's the difference between the present and the past teachers?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) In ancient times, India had the Gurukul system where a student stays in the Gurukula or Ashram as a hosteler without paying any fee but offering services. The Guru was treated with great respect, and they got trained in almost all aspects of life. **(Give an example)** For example, students would not only be trained in studies but also archery, boxing, etc. But in the present day, schools are money minded and teachers too. They teach for what they are paid. Students also are not very affectionate towards them.

3 What are the most common types of schools in India?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) In India, there are many types of schools. Most common among them are the CBSE or Central Board of Secondary Education, ICSE or Indian Certificate of Secondary Education, IB or Indian Baccalaureate, and Matriculation systems.

4 Which do you think is more important: primary school education or university education?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Undoubtedly, it is a primary school education. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** It lays the foundation for a student. A student may or may not be able to pursue University education. But it is mandatory to know how to read and write without errors and know the basic concepts of Mathematics and Science, failing which survival would become very difficult.

5 Do you think young people today are burdened with study?



(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes. (Explain your reason or reasons) But it is because the world is getting very competitive and they need that syllabi to cope with the world. It is true that they are burdened, but there is no choice. They have to go through this to be able to become successful citizens of the world.

Vocabulary

Artificial intelligence(noun) - the theory and development of computer systems able to perform tasks normally requiring human intelligence, such as visual perception, speech recognition decision-making, and translation between languages.

Eg: Nowadays, Artificial Intelligence is used in agriculture and farming.

Gurukula(noun) - a type of education system in ancient India with shishya ('students' or 'disciples') living near or with the Guru, in the same house. The word gurukula is a combination of the Sanskrit words guru ('teacher' or 'master') and kula ('family' or 'home').

Eg: It is believed that Gurukulas of ancient times were far more superior than IITs of today.

Archery (noun) - shooting with a bow and arrows, especially at a target as a sport.

Eg: John was skilled in archery.

Foundation (noun) - an underlying basis or principle.

Eg: Einstein's principles laid the foundation for modern physics.

Cope (verb) - (of a person) deal effectively with something difficult.

Eg: The doctor gave tips on how to cope with stress.



41. Describe a place where you read and write (not your home)

You should say,

- where it is
- how often you go there
- what you do there
- and explain how you feel about this place.

Sample Answer

(where it is) Though I prefer to read and write at the comfort of my home, I do have one other interesting place which is the Leeds Garden near my house. I usually go there at twilight when there are none. The garden has got securities operating both at night and day. So It is a safe place. **(how often you go there) (what you do there)** I go there whenever I get up early. That is the best time to write poetry. I consider poetry to be a sudden outpour of thoughts. I should feel the urge in my hands. Whenever I visit this garden, the little flowers on the wayside seem to whisper something to me. The sweet fragrance of flowers from various trees is inviting. I choose a corner where there is a cemented chair which is surrounded by enchanting Ixora flowers. Mostly, I write poetry. The atmosphere makes me want to write one. Thoughts come one after the other in some order, and I pen them all. Later, when I look at it, I would be amazed at where the words and ideas originated from. Whenever I read a book on which the theme would be set in some English Village, the garden will seem like one. I will get absorbed in the book.

(explain how you feel about this place) I think it is a magical place. It can change your mind. Creativity would pour in. The silence of the place at twilight is something divine and ideal for reading and writing poetry.

Vocabulary

Twilight (noun) - The soft glowing light from the sky when the sun is below the horizon, caused by the reflection of the sun's rays from the atmosphere.

Eg: She stepped out at twilight.

Garden (noun) - a piece of ground adjoining a house, in which grass, flowers, and shrubs may be grown.

Eg: Tom gifted us Roses from his garden

Outpour (verb) - To pour out

Eg: There was an outpour of sympathy in Ram as he looked at the poor people in the Ashram.



Enchanting (adj) - delightfully charming or attractive.

Eg: The distant blue sky was an enchanting view.

Divine (adj) - very pleasing; delightful

Eg: He had a divine smile.

Part 3

1 At what age children start reading and writing?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Children start reading and writing at the early age of 3. Some parents begin teaching even before that. Nowadays, playschools start accepting admissions at the age of two. Children are taught craftwork and basic arithmetic skills. Children are often taught with the help of toys, which makes learning fun to them.

2 What is more important, reading, or writing?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Well, I think you must be able to read to write. They are intertwined. The first word a kid writes is what he learnt, probably in their own spellings. Reading improves writing. At a later stage, it is writing that builds confidence.

3 Who needs to have good writing skills?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Almost everyone in the world. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Everyone should know how to read and write a letter or compose an email, which is the basis of communication. It is a wrong notion that only poets or people involved in the literary world need writing skills. Writing improves thinking, which results in better expression. Writing paves the way for better learning.

4 From what can people get more information – words or pictures?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) I think it is pictures. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** People tend to infer more from pictures than from words. But there is a hidden danger with pictures. People can interpret it in their own ways, which would often cause misunderstanding. **(Give an example)** For example, when looking at modern art, the artist might have created it with some perception, but the person who looks at it may perceive it differently. Whereas writing is precise, and its interpretations cannot vary.

5 Is it the sole responsibility of the school to take care of reading and writing?



(Give a direct answer to the question) It is indeed true that children learn to write and read at school. But parents should take equal responsibility. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** In fact, it is at home that a child begins to scribble and later moves on to better versions of writing. So, it is the responsibility of parents to take care of the reading and writing of a child. School comes in at a later stage.

Vocabulary

Playschool (noun) - a playgroup.

Eg: Seema put her two-year-old child in a play school.

Intertwined (verb) - connect or link (two or more things) closely.

Eg: Fact and fiction are intertwined in that novel.

Notion (noun) - a conception of or belief about something.

Eg: Sita and Ram had different notions of right and wrong.

Infer (verb) - deduce or conclude (something) from evidence and reasoning rather than from explicit statements.

Eg: From Galileo's theory, we can infer that it is earth that revolves around the sun.

Scribble (verb) - write or draw (something) carelessly or hurriedly.

Eg: Tom scribbled the equations in his notebook.



42. Describe an interesting place you remember well that was full of colours

You should say,

- where it was
- what it was like
- why you went there
- and explain why you remember it well.

Sample Answer

(where it was) When I was in second grade, I travelled to Mumbai to meet my cousins. Since I was in second grade, my exams were over by the 10th of March.

(what it was like) (why you went there) We travelled in a first-class train, and I was excited to meet my cousins. On reaching there, I saw floors decorated with rangolis. Later, I learnt that the reason was the fast-approaching Holi. My cousins were living on the 10th floor of a multi storeyed building and had friends all over the place. They made grand preparations. Every time, I went out, I saw people standing in groups and talking about Holi. At last, the much awaited day arrived. I got dressed up and went out with my cousins. My cousins were being pulled by their friends and sprayed with different colours, and they did not spare me either. They put all sorts of colours on my face, and the whole place turned colourful. The walls contained all the VIBGYOR colours. The floor was filled with colourful sprays. I was not able to figure out anyone because they had colours on their face. The whole earth seemed colourful to me.

(explain why you remember it well) When I returned home, I saw my face in the mirror. My face was red and yellow and violet and blue. My frock, which was a dark green, had been sprayed deep indigo. When I looked out of the balcony, the air was coloured. I felt I was breathing in yellow and breathing out green. I'd never seen anything so colourful as the Holi. I enjoyed it to the fullest and carried home warm memories of Holi. I remember it till date. I have preserved that green frock which was sprayed with indigo. I didn't allow my mum to wash it. It is still lying in the corner of my wardrobe.

Vocabulary

Rangolis (noun) - traditional Indian decoration and patterns made with ground rice, particularly during festivals.

Eg: Sita learnt to draw new Rangolis.

VIBGYOR (adj) - the sequence of hues commonly described as making up a rainbow.



Eg: Rainbow consists of VIBGYOR colours.

Sprays (noun) - liquid that is blown or driven through the air in the form of tiny drops.

Eg: Sita used organic pesticide sprays to protect her plants.

Frock (noun) - a woman's or girl's dress.

Eg: Tina bought a new frock.

Part 3

1 What colours are commonly used for the decoration of people's homes?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Nowadays, people tend to decorate their homes with Feng Shui colours. **(Give an example)** For example, Fengshui emphasizes colours based on directions. On the other hand, the painter would suggest colours that can reflect light. Generally, people tend to paint their kitchens in shades of red or orange. Living rooms will be painted with lighter shades such as pale white or pale yellow.

2 Can colour have any influence on people and their mood?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Definitely, yes. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** I've read it in books. There is psychology behind painting bedrooms, living rooms in soft, light colours and kitchens with vibrant colours. Colours have an impact on our mood. **(Give an example)** For example, kitchens are often painted in shades of red or orange because it is an area of high activity. Bedrooms are for relaxation and sleep and hence painted with light colours.

3 What colours are important when people buy things?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) I don't think there aren't any hard and fast rules regarding colours when buying things. It depends on the person's mood at that particular time. **(Give an example)** For example, when shopping for clothes, people tend to choose dull pastel colours for office wear and bright ones for parties.

4 Is colour really important in advertisements?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Undoubtedly, yes. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** You have to attract people and colours are the best means by which it could be done. Eye-catching colours are the first thing that attracts a person to a product. It is only later that they look into the product specifications. Generally, art directors working in advertisements use colours which are appealing to the masses.

5 Are pictures in textbooks really important?



(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** There is a concept called pictorial learning. It helps the mind to imagine better. **(Give an example)** For example, if the textbook has a passage on roses, it would be better to have a picture of them. This way, preference increases for the textbook, which will increase the sales factor.

Vocabulary

Reflect (verb) - (of a surface or body) throwback (heat, light, or sound) without absorbing it.

Eg: Glass surfaces usually reflect light.

Psychology (noun) - the scientific study of the human mind and its functions, especially those affecting behavior in a given context.

Eg: Flowers affect human physiology.

Hard and fast rule (adj) - indicating that there are no fixed or definite rules or facts.

Eg: The manager has no hard and fast rules, so his employees don't finish the work on time.

Pastel (noun) - a soft and delicate shade of a colour.

Eg: Lolita picked up dresses with dull pastel colours.

Advertisements (noun) - a notice or announcement in a public medium promoting a product, service, or event or publicizing a job vacancy.

Eg: There are huge advertisements for the new product of ABC company.



43. Describe a historical building you have visited

You should say,

- where it is
- what it looks like
- why you went there
- and explain how you felt about this historical building

Sample Answer

(where it is) (what it looks like) India has a rich blend of eastern and western constructions. One such source of admiration is the Taj Mahal in Agra. On the exterior, it has rich calligraphy of Persian poems, abstract forms and vegetative motifs. Passages from the Holy Quran are inscribed all over the complex. On the interior, it has exquisite flower carvings and intricate pierce works in marble.

(why you went there) My friends and I got tired of the monotony of life. We wanted some escape from the daily routine. So we planned for a trip to Agra and explored the iconic Taj Mahal. Taj Mahal was built by Shah Jahan in memory of his wife Mumtaz. It stands as a testimony to the Mughal architecture. We arranged for a guide who told us that materials for construction of Taj Mahal were bought from across the world. He told us that twenty eight types of precious stones were studded on the white marble and that the total cost of construction was estimated to be thirty two million rupees.

(explain how you felt about this historical building) While I was there, I could not take my eyes off the building. It was a Mahal of love built out of love. It seemed to spread vibes of love all around. I was wondering where they derived the inspiration from. We took a lot of photographs in the evening and I treasure them all. On our way back to the hotel, I purchased a tiny plastic doll of Taj Mahal which I have placed in my reading room.

Vocabulary

Calligraphy (noun) - the art of producing decorative handwriting or lettering with a pen or brush.

Eg: She watched the sculptor carving beautiful calligraphy.

Motifs (noun) - a decorative image or design, especially a repeated one forming a pattern.

Eg: The sofa in John's house had prints of colourful motifs.



Monotony (noun) - lack of variety and interest; tedious repetition and routine.

Eg: Kim was tired of the monotony of being a software Engineer.

Studded (adj) - decorated or augmented with studs [a large-headed piece of metal that pierces and projects from a surface, especially for decoration.]

Eg: The wedding invitation was studded with colourful metal pieces.

Part 3

1 What kind of buildings are popular in India in the present time?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Tall skyscrapers. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Due to space crunch, people go for tall vertical structures. Independent houses are demolished and are replaced with tall multi-storey buildings. Builders are also promoting these types of buildings.

2 Compare old buildings and modern buildings. Which out of the two people prefer to live in?

(Give a direct answer to the question) **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Old buildings are spacious, well ventilated, and well lit. New buildings offer these features moderately. People are not given a choice. Due to the demands of the current situation, people tend to opt for modern buildings.

3 How do people in India feel about old buildings?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Overall, the trend is positive. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** They are moving towards preserving old buildings. Just like in foreign countries, where houses of poets and Scientists are preserved as museums, India has also taken steps towards it. Many people are interested in History, and hence they want to preserve the old buildings and view them as symbols of national pride.

4 Do older people and young people in India have the same attitudes towards old buildings?

(Give a direct answer to the question) **(Explain your reason or reasons)** There is a mixed opinion among the youth. Some of them who have been taught by their ancestors on the importance of old buildings or are interested in History want to preserve their heritage. Others don't value it so much. Older people are reminiscent of old buildings.

5 Is it important to design a plan for a building?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Undoubtedly, yes. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** It is very important to make a plan because it lays the foundation for constructing buildings. A



plan can be circulated for approval and, if rejected, can be modified. All major constructions have a plan.

Vocabulary

Skyscrapers (noun) - a very tall building of many storeys.

Eg: Skyscrapers are very common in New York city.

Ventilated (verb) - cause air to enter and circulate freely in (a room, building, etc.).

Eg: Paul's new house was well-ventilated.

Moderately (adv) - to a certain extent; quite; fairly.

Eg: He was moderately successful as an actor.

Mixed opinions (noun) - some people say they like it or agree with it, but others dislike it or disagree with it.

Eg: People had mixed opinions about the government's military agreement with ABC country.

Reminiscent (adj) - tending to remind one of something.

Eg: On seeing his old school, Tim's grandfather grew reminiscent.



44. Describe a friend who is a good leader

You should say,

- who this person is
- how you know them
- how they behaved
- and explain why you think they are a good leader

Sample Answer

(who this person is) (how you know them) Some people are born influential. They have a knack of dealing with people. I believe it is inborn. Of course, there are classes conducted to inculcate leadership qualities, but not everybody becomes one. My friend in school, Susan had some special qualities, and I always admired her. We became friends from sixth grade. Her parents worked for the Central Government and were deputed to the southern part of India. So, she joined our school.'

(how they behaved) She was exceptional. She was very sincere in her studies and was also very good at tennis and kho kho. Infact, she was the captain of the kho kho team. She was very helpful and was always ready to lend her notebooks when someone who was on leave asked for them. When students struggling in math approached her, she would gladly help. She never lied. She also helped the teachers carry the pile of notebooks to the staff room. She was appointed as the leader of the class. We became thick friends and are in touch till date.

(explain why you think they are a good leader) If someone could become a leader of a class in sixth grade, they could definitely become the school pupil leader in twelfth grade, and she did become one, but in another school. She could motivate people and get things done from them. She was a doer with a positive attitude. If someone could be a leader of a school, I believe that they can definitely climb the leadership ladder in any field that they choose.

Vocabulary

Influential (adj) - having great influence on someone or something.

Eg: Tony was a very influential person in ABC company.

Inborn (adj) - natural to a person or animal.

Eg: Linda had an inborn talent for painting.

Captain (noun) - the leader of a team, especially in sports.

Eg: Jane was the captain of the basketball team.

Doer (noun) - a person who acts rather than merely talking or thinking.



Eg: Jack was a doer.

Leadership (noun) - the action of leading a group of people or an organization. Eg: She soon reached the leadership position in ABC company.

Part 3

1 Who is the head of the family in your culture?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Generally, the oldest male is the head of the family. But in cases of death of the male, the oldest female becomes the head.

2 Are men better at decision making in a family?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Usually, older people are considered to be good at making decisions because of their experience and wisdom. It includes older men and women in the family. Also, there is no scientific evidence that men are good decision-makers. Women are equally good at making good decisions. In fact, it depends on how much knowledge they have on a particular topic. **(Give an example)** For example, if the wife is a chartered accountant, she may make better decisions w.r.t making investments.

3 Do you think that in the future there will be more women leaders?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Women are indeed encouraged more. As society is supportive, there may be more women leaders. Also, there are reservations for women in every field. **(Give an example)** For example, corporate companies and major investment banks have made it mandatory to have at least a few women leaders on board.

4 Should a leader discuss with team members when making decisions?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, of course. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Every team member must be consulted before arriving at a conclusion. But the leader should also have a hold on his/her team members. The leader must not let anyone dominate him. The leader's decision should be final; however, the opposition it may face. In fact, the leader should be able to convince everyone.

5 How do you see a leader now and in the future?



(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Leadership qualities remain the same, whether it is past, present, or future. A good leader will have admirable traits like honesty, integrity, helpfulness. So, there would not be much difference between leaders now and in the future. In fact, as we take examples from leaders of our past, so would the future generations.

Vocabulary

Wisdom (noun) - the quality of having experience, knowledge, and good judgement; the quality of being wise.

Eg: He listened to his grandfather's words of wisdom.

Topic (noun) - a matter dealt with in a text, discourse, or conversation; a subject.

Eg: She spoke spontaneously on the topic given.

Reservations (noun) - the action of reserving something. [Reserving (verb) - arrange for (a room, seat, ticket, etc.) to be kept for the use of a particular person].

Eg: Some colleges have reservations for scheduled tribes.

Have a hold (phrase) - Have a controlling influence over.

Eg: Ashley's father had a hold on her.

Convince (verb) - persuade (someone) to do something.

Eg: The doctor convinced the patient for surgery.



45. Describe the person you spend the most time with

You should say,

- who this person is?
- what kind of person he or she is?
- what you usually do together
- and explain why you spend the most time with this person.

Sample Answer

(who this person is) I love my Dad. I spend the most time with him. Though I have moved to the UK, after my graduation, we exploit the internet to the fullest. I chat with him on WhatsApp, Skype and also over a prepaid calling card.

(what kind of person he or she is) He is a warm person full of love for me. Though he is friendly, he never hesitated to advise me on important things. He would be so kind to the extent that he won't even hurt the ants that bit him hard. He never pressured me to score high marks. His helping tendency was well known in our area. He always got the best things for me, from bags to dresses and books.

(what you usually do together) We used to take long walks and play carrom whenever we got together. He did pay a visit to the UK. But I could see that he had become old. Though he couldn't walk for a long time, he never complained about it. He was careful not to let me know of his illnesses. But I figured out that his left arm had a problem.

(explain why you spend the most time with this person) He is my friend and guide. I feel easy to confide anything with him. He would advise me from the bottom of his heart. His sense of humour would lighten even the toughest moment. I used to talk to him about my career plans and get his opinion on it. As a retired banker, he taught me how to invest money. And the list is never-ending.

Vocabulary

Friendly (adj) - kind and pleasant.

Eg: Ken was a friendly person.

Complained (verb) - express dissatisfaction or annoyance about something.

Eg: Sara always complained of the chilliness during winters.

Confide (verb) - tell someone about a secret or private matter while trusting them not to repeat it to others.

Eg: The boss confided the company secrets with Jim.



Sense of humour (noun) - a person's ability to perceive humour or appreciate a joke.

Eg: Tom had a great sense of humour.

Part 3

1 How many generations usually live together in India?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) India did have a joint family system where up to three generations lived together. But it is no more in place. The latest trend is parents living in India and children living in foreign countries. After the death of one parent, the other lives separately or joins their children abroad. In cases where the children are in India, they choose an apartment near their companies, which would usually be on the outskirts of the city, while the parents will be living separately in their home in the city or town.

2 Is it important to visit family members?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, it is very much important to visit family members. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Maintaining a bond with the family members is essential because the family defines our identity. They are very supportive during tough times.

3 What are the values of family in your country?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) An Indian family is based on the core principle of sacrificing one's needs for the welfare of the family. Especially, the mother in the family is an embodiment of sacrifice. It is for this reason that women are regarded with great respect in India. There are also other values like respect for elders, affection towards siblings, etc. **(Give an example)** For example, it is very common in India for an elder brother to contribute a major share for his sister's marriage. This would be considered as his duty and will not be repaid.

4 Why is family bonding necessary for happiness in life?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) It is family bonding that ensures happiness in life. The love and affection towards our family members will bestow a sense of security. It also gives us a sense of belongingness.

5 Do you think the support from a friend is different from the support from a family member?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, it is different. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** There will be a reason for a friend to support you. It may be a win-win situation. But a family



will offer support without expecting anything in return. So, support from a family is far more superior than support from a friend.

Vocabulary

Joint family (noun) - (especially in India) an extended family, typically consisting of three or more generations and their spouses, living together as a single household.

Eg: Sneha married Kalpesh and was living in a joint family.

Tough times (noun) - Times of trouble, struggle, or unhappiness.

Eg: John had a tough time after quitting his job.

Sacrifice (noun) - The act of sacrificing something [sacrificing (verb) - give up (something valued) for the sake of other considerations].

Eg: Sita was aware of the sacrifices that her mother made.

Duty (noun) - a moral or legal obligation; a responsibility

Eg: Ram considered that it was his duty to provide good education to his children.

Win-win situation(noun) - one that is good for everyone who is involved

Eg: ABC company offered work from home facility because it was a win-win situation for the Company and its employees.



46. Describe a person who taught you something important

You should say,

- who this person is
- how you know this person
- what this person taught you
- and explain why you thought this was important.

Sample Answer

(who this person is) (how you know this person) (what this person taught you) I have learnt something from every person I have met. One such interesting thing I learnt from my college mate Lakshmi is to draw mehndi designs. Though it seems simple, you have to work hard to learn the art of drawing minute designs on a human hand with a cone. There may be other perceptions, but I think it is one of the most important things I learnt.

(explain why you thought this was important) It was my cousin's wedding. She had arranged for a beautician to help her and others with decoration. The wedding was in Dubai. We planned to reach there early in the morning. But due to flight delays, we reached only at 8:00 AM. The beautician was busy draping the wedding saree to my cousin and did not even look at me. I waited. But after draping the saree, she began adjusting the makeup for my cousin. She never got satisfied. She did it over and over again. Time was running out. My cousin seemed to be in a world of her own. Nobody bothered to help me. So I began decorating on my own. I started drawing my own mehndi, which I learnt from Lakshmi. I put on some simple Arabic designs. It came out well. At the wedding, everyone appreciated me for my mehndi. Infact, my cousin's mum apologised to me for the behaviour of the beautician and gave me special gifts as well.

Vocabulary

Mehndi (noun) - The English word for "Mehndi" is "Myrtle". It is a paste obtained from grinding the leaves of the Myrtle shrub. It is also called, "Henna" or "Heena".

Eg: Hasina was an expert in drawing mehndi designs.

Beautician (noun) - a person whose job is to give people beauty treatment **Eg:** Shahnaz was a famous beautician in Delhi.

Drape (verb) - arrange (cloth or clothing) loosely or casually on or round something.

Eg: She draped a georgette saree on her own.



Makeup (noun) - cosmetics such as lipstick or powder applied to the face, used to enhance or alter the appearance

Eg: The actress wore heavy makeup.

Appreciated (verb) - recognize the full worth of.

Eg: The teacher appreciated the student for scoring full marks in maths.

Part 3

1 What qualities do you think a good teacher should have?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) A good teacher should be skilled in her field. He/She should concentrate more on children who don't perform well. They should be impartial and patient. They should pay individual attention to every student, understand their strengths and weaknesses, and encourage them to pursue their strengths. **(Give an example)** For example, a student who isn't good in academics may be talented in sports. The teacher must encourage the student to excel in sports.

2 Who do you think can learn better? Older people or youngsters?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) In my opinion, youngsters can perform better. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** They are good at grasping things. Older people may have developed some health complications, which would make them take more time to learn something new. But again, it varies from person to person. Few older people are healthy and compete with young people in learning new things. But a majority of them learn slowly.

3 What do you think is the best age for children to go to school?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) I think 5 is the right age to admit a child to school. 3 or 4 would be too early for the young brain to learn Language and arithmetic. At 5, learning would not be a burden to them. They will look forward to going to school.

4 What do you think parents should teach their children?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Parents should teach moral values. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** They should be taught to share things with others, respect elders, be friendly, and be truthful. They should also train their children to get up on time, wear uniforms and shoes by themselves, keep things in the proper place after usage. They should also help with the homework.

5 Do you think children can learn anything from other children?



(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, they do. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** **(Give an example)** For example, one of my friends' kids resisted drinking milk at home. But when a friend in the physical training class told him that he stayed active because of drinking milk, this kid also started drinking milk. Friends influence them more than their parents.

Vocabulary

Impartial (Adj) - treating all rivals or disputants equally.

Eg: Judges are supposed to be impartial.

Majority (noun) - the greater number.

Eg: The political party won with a thumping majority.

Look forward (noun) - to feel pleased and excited about something that is going to happen

Eg: She looked forward to the birthday party.

Homework (noun) - schoolwork that a pupil is required to do at home.

Eg: The teacher told Seema that she must allow her child to do the homework on her own.

Resisted (verb) - try to prevent by action or argument.

Eg: The opposition resisted the government on its decision to provide subsidies to the poor.



47. Describe a friend who is good at his or her job

You should say,

- who this person is
- How do you know them
- What this person does
- And explain why this person is good at his / her job.

Sample Answer

(who this person is) (how do you know them) (what this person does) In every field, some people stand apart. My cousin is one such person. She is an English professor at the Holy Cross College, Bangalore. She was weak in math when she was in school. She never got disheartened because of it. She graduated in English Literature and pursued a Masters in it. She later finished her research and is now a visiting Professor at Harvard. She has got bright chances to settle abroad.

(explain why this person is good at her job) She works hard. She is innovative and creative. She has been a key factor in establishing a language lab at her college. She has also paid visits to many colleges within India and gained immense knowledge on the methodology of the study of the English Language. She has been to many schools and observed the students. She has produced many research papers on the language. She is very famous in her college among the student community. The one thing they admire in her is that she spends more time with people who struggle to learn the language. She conducts phonetics classes in the evening, for those interested. She also does social work by associating herself with the NGOs. They teach English to poor people, free of cost. She has taught English to children in the slums as well. Though many students don't opt for arts, she boldly pursued it and has proved herself in the field.

Vocabulary

Professor (noun) - a teacher of the highest academic rank in a college or university, who has been awarded the title Professor in a particular branch of learning.

Eg: Raman was a Physics Professor at Stanford university.

Innovative (adj) - (of a person) introducing new ideas **Eg:** Rex was famous as an innovative artist.



Admire (verb) - regard with respect or warm approval.

Eg: Indira Gandhi was admired for her courage.

Prove oneself (phrase) - to show that one is able to do something or to succeed.

Eg: Hilary proved herself in Politics.

Part 3

1 How should new workers perform in their first jobs?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Be it any industry, new workers should work hard. They must be patient enough to learn the skills. They must be punctual. Nowadays, companies have smart cards to detect how many hours a person spends inside the premises. New workers should ensure that they don't default in all these areas. They should also be diligent in their work. Over a period of time, these qualities will help them to succeed.

2 How can workers improve their work performance?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Workers must continuously upskill themselves. They must attend various training sessions related to their field. For example, a computer software professional must use the training and seminars that his/her Company offers. This will also help him/her to understand where they stand in terms of their technology. If there are any updates in their current technology, they must be aware of them.

3 What jobs are well paid in India?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) IT sectors and investment banks pay well. Nurses and teachers also receive a good pay package. Jobs that involve creativity, like designing and advertising, are also paid well. The marketing sector is also booming nowadays. So, there are chances that they might pay well.

4 What jobs are poorly paid in your country?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) People who live on daily wages are not paid well. This includes people working in quarries, janitors, plumbers, electricians, workers who handle human waste, or sewage.

5 If someone is bored with their job, is it easy for them to change to a different job?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Absolutely, yes. (Explain your reason or reasons) There are so many opportunities nowadays. Also, there are a lot of companies. Especially,



people in the IT sector switch jobs often. **(Give an example)** For example, my friend, who was working on Java for five years in a company, got bored with it. So, she learnt a new update in her technology called Spring boot. Later she moved to an IT division of an investment bank and is quite happy to be there.

Vocabulary

Default (verb) - fail to fulfill an obligation, especially to repay a loan or to appear in a law court.

Eg: It is for the third time that the bank warned Tom not to default in payments

Seminars (noun) - a conference or other meeting for discussion or training.

Eg: Ram attended all the seminars on his technology.

Creativity (noun) - the use of imagination or original ideas to create something; inventiveness.

Eg: The manager was keen to encourage creativity.

Wages (noun) - a fixed regular payment earned for work or services, typically paid on a daily or weekly basis.

Eg: The workers did not receive wages for the day.

Update (noun) - an act of updating something or someone or an updated version of something.

Eg: There was a new update on the recently published tax rates.



48. Describe a performance you watched recently

You should say:

- What it was and when you watched it
- Who you were with?
- And explain why you watched it

Sample Answer

(What it was and when you watched it)

Well, **when it comes to** watching live performances or music shows, the very experience that **springs to my mind** is the play 'Romeo & Juliet' by William Shakespeare that I enjoyed at the city theatre three years ago. Romeo and Juliet is a play written by William Shakespeare. The **setting** is in Italy and is about the love between two young people from **noble** families that are enemies. "Romeo and Juliet" has always been one of Shakespeare's most popular plays. It has also been **adapted** to opera, ballet, television productions, and movies.

(Who you were with)

I watched this play with my closest friend, Jennie. At that time, we were studying for a Masters Degree in London in the same university, and when we heard that a team would come to London to perform "Romeo and Juliet", we planned to watch it **without hesitation**. It was quite **cumbersome** to book the tickets as the play was so popular, but we managed eventually.

(And explain why you watched it)

Several factors made this play a worth-watching theatrical performance. The professional acting, **captivating** dialogues, intense romantic tale, **wrenching** separation and the tragic twist of the tale made the play unforgettable. The costumes of the performers were just the way they should be. Their dresses, stage, music, their makeup, their accent, and the **passionate** acting created the illusion of the real Romeo-Juliet era. The production and acting were superb and worthy of **commendation**. I still remember a news article which acclaimed the actors, and actresses of the London team for their professionalism.

Vocabulary

the setting

Meaning: where the action takes place

Example: It's a historical novel and the setting was a fictional town called Casterbridge.

when it comes to [expression]: as for something; speaking about something.

Eg: When it comes to fishing, John is an expert.

spring to mind [expression]: to come quickly into your mind.



Eg: Say the word "Australia" and a vision of beaches and blue seas immediately springs to mind.

noble [adj]: (especially in former times) a person of noble rank or birth.

Eg: The great nobles essentially use poets and poetry in the early seventeenth century to wage a war of prestige.

adapt [v]: make (something) suitable for a new use or purpose; modify.

Eg: Davies is busy adapting Brinkworth's latest novel for television.

without hesitation [expression]: if you say that someone does something without hesitation, you are emphasizing that they do it immediately and willingly.

Eg: The great majority of players would, of course, sign the contract without hesitation.

cumbersome [adj]: difficult to do or manage and taking a lot of time and effort.

Eg: Critics say that the process for amending the Constitution is cumbersome, but others defend it.

captivating [adj]: holding your attention by being extremely interesting, exciting, pleasant, or attractive.

Eg: Her voice was utterly/absolutely captivating.

wrenching [adj]: extremely stressful.

Eg: It was the most wrenching decision of the president's life.

passionate [adj]: having very strong feelings or emotions.

Eg: The child's mother made a passionate plea for help.

commendation [n]: praise, or an official statement that praises someone.

Eg: Several of the firefighters received commendation for their bravery.

Part 3

1 What's the difference between watching the performance live and watching it on TV?

(Give a direct answer to the question) In my opinion, attending a live performance and watching a TV broadcast are two completely different ways of fun. **(Give an example (often a personal example))** As we all know; live exhibitions and events are festive occasions. Think about the claps, cheers, hoots, hollering, laughter and song along with a live performance which is absent when watched on a TV set. It creates a recreational aura whereby people



forget the hurdles of life and upheave their morals. In other words, these occasions are best suited for extroverts, social people, who enjoy the crowd.

2 Which do you prefer: traditional performance or concert?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Well, a concert would be my choice. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Seeing your favourite band, artist or DJ is such a life-changing and exhilarating experience. **(Give an example (often a personal example))** If you've ever been to a concert, you'll know the sense of **togetherness** you get from the rest of the crowd. Out of a huge crowd, every single fan is there for the same reason, and when the crowd erupts for the artist or a favourite song, it's a sense of community you won't get anywhere else.

3 Should the government provide financial support to promote traditional performance?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, I reckon so. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** The gradual decline of traditional performances is at the expense of national culture. Therefore, the government should give financial incentives to traditional artists to preserve the diversity of traditional forms of entertainment.

4 Is learning drama or dancing helpful for children?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, it is. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Art instruction helps children with the development of motor skills, **musical talent**, language skills, social skills, decision-making, risk-taking, and inventiveness. Besides, art education connects students with their own culture as well as with the wider world.

Vocabulary

extrovert

Meaning: an energetic person who likes the company of others

Example: I'd say I tend to be an extrovert.

musical talent

Meaning: skilled at music

Example: Her musical talent is beyond imagination.

aura [n]: the distinctive atmosphere or quality that seems to surround and be generated by a person, thing, or place.

Eg: There was an aura of pride surrounding him, a glow that made him look happy and that ended up making me feel a little better too.

exhilarating [adj]: making you feel very excited and happy.

Eg: Hong Kong in the late seventies was an exhilarating place to be.



togetherness [n]: the state of being close to another person or other people.

Eg: The sense of family togetherness was strong in the past.

at the expense of [expression]: in a way that harms (something or someone).

Eg: Malls flourished at the expense of small stores downtown.

incentive [n]: something that encourages you to do something.

Eg: In my country, there is literally no incentive for people to save fuel.

preserve [v]: maintain (something) in its original or existing state.

Eg: We need to preserve our liberties as free citizens.





49. Describe something you bought but difficult to use at first

You should say:

- What it was
- Where you bought it
- How you used it successfully and how you felt about it

Sample Answer

(What it was)

I'm going to describe an item I bought but confronted a lot of difficulties in using at first, because of certain reasons. It was a Macbook Air 2018, which I **set aside** a lot of money to purchase for my 20th birthday. For a student like me, the price of such a high-end product was quite **exorbitant**. However, everything from the chassis to the user **interface** was beautifully designed on a Mac, so I think it was well worth the money.

(Where you bought it)

It was months ago when I visited the FPT shop and chose this laptop by myself. I remember being **on cloud nine** when bringing it from the store to my room. At that time, I was quite overwhelmed by the size and product variety of the store, and I wished that I could be a billionaire to buy everything there. For **computer buffs**, the place would truly be heaven.

(How you used it successfully and how you felt about it)

Excited as I was to possess such an item, I found myself experiencing certain **discomfort** to **familiarize** myself with the Mac system. The keyboard shortcuts are completely different from that of Windows. It's easy to learn Command-C instead of Control-C, but it took me quite a while to figure out there was a shortcut for deleting a file. At that time, my work was considerably **hindered**, and my productivity was also affected. I remember doing a **thorough** search about the differences between the two systems and practised using the new laptop regularly with great determination. Over time, I **grew accustomed to** using Mac and made use of it a great deal, so I feel a sense of accomplishment whenever I recall this experience.

Vocabulary

a computer buff:

Meaning: an expert computer user

Example: I wouldn't call myself a techie or a computer buff but I enjoy using computers.

set aside [v]: to save something, usually money or time, for a special purpose.



Eg: He had some money in an account that he'd set aside for his kids.

exorbitant [adj]: (of prices and demands) much too large.

Eg: The hotel charges were exorbitant.

interface [n]: a point where two systems, subjects, organizations, etc., meet and interact.

Eg: The key account manager acts as the primary interface between the supplier organization and the customer.

on cloud nine [expression]: to be extremely happy and excited.

Eg: "Was Helen pleased about getting that job?" "Pleased? She was on cloud nine!"

discomfort [n]: a feeling of being uncomfortable physically or mentally, or something that causes this.

Eg: You may feel a little discomfort for a few days after the operation.

hinder [v]: to limit the ability of someone to do something, or to limit the development of something.

Eg: High winds have hindered firefighters in their efforts to put out the blaze.

familiarize [v]: give (someone) knowledge or understanding of something.

Eg: To familiarize yourself with something is to learn about it or become comfortable with it.

thorough [adj]: detailed and careful.

Eg: They did a thorough search of the area but found nothing.

(be)/ grow accustomed to [expression]: familiar with something.

Eg: She quickly became accustomed to his messy ways.

Part 3

1 What kinds of products do young people think are useful but older people may not?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Well, young people are often attracted to innovative gadgets, while older people often find them unnecessary. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** As I see it, most seniors find using technological devices an arduous task. Many products and services are not appropriate to the needs of older users, exacerbating the sense of frustration and leading to a dependence on other people **(Give an example (often a personal example))**)) For example, my grandmother often turns to my sister and me for help with her smartphones, because she is not familiar with the keyboards.



2 Do you think product instructions are useful for users to use products better?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, I think they are. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** The instruction manual is one of the most important sets of details provided to the customer. Its sole purpose is to ensure the customers uses the product properly. Clear artwork should be provided to the supplier at the time of the purchase order.

3 What do you usually do if you don't know how to use the things you have bought?

(Give a direct answer to the question) I would try to figure out how to use it instead of leaving it behind. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Normally, I would do a thorough search about the item and practice using it with great determination. Of course, I have experienced certain discomforts with complicated products, but in most cases, I managed to familiarize myself with them.

4 Do you think it is necessary to produce many new products nowadays?

(Give a direct answer to the question) It is quite necessary nowadays. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Regarding economic merits, customers now can enjoy inexpensive purchases of diverse types of goods, which is particularly **favourable** for households with limited financial **backgrounds**. Also, the availability of more low-priced products offers consumers more spending choices and boosts overall consumption.

Vocabulary

gadget

Meaning: a technological tool like a mobile phone or camera

Example: Such a gadget would help you considerably in studying.

arduous [adj]: difficult, needing a lot of effort and energy.

Eg: In those days, a trip to the West was an arduous journey.

exacerbate [v]: to make something that is already bad even worse

Eg: This attack will exacerbate the already tense relations between the two communities.

properly [adv]: correctly, or in a satisfactory way.

Eg: I'm not properly dressed for this kind of weather.

thorough [adj]: detailed and careful.

Eg: They did a thorough search of the area but found nothing.



discomfort [n]: a feeling of being uncomfortable physically or mentally, or something that causes this.

Eg: You may feel a little discomfort for a few days after the operation.

familiarize [v]: give (someone) knowledge or understanding of something.

Eg: To familiarize yourself with something is to learn about it or become comfortable with it.

favourable [adj]: to the advantage of someone or something.

Eg: Old, mature fig trees can grow at least 40 feet tall in favorable climates.

background [n]: the conditions that existed before a particular event happened, and that help to explain why it happened.

Eg: These decisions have had to be made against a background of high unemployment





50. Describe a difficult challenge you met

You should say:

- What it was
- When you met it
- Where you met it
- And explain why you think it is a challenge

Sample Answer

(What it was)

Today I'm going to describe a challenge I **confronted** recently. I usually go out for a walk in the evening every day and sometimes play some outdoor games. Still, the outdoor activity that I did for the first time last month was mountain climbing which was of another level of difficulty.

(When you met it and where you met it)

At that time, after completing the **arduous** end-of-term examination, I was invited by a friend to go climbing on a mountain. He'd been doing it for about six months, and I had asked him about it once as I was curious whether mountain climbing requires a lot of **stamina**. At that time, I wanted to **get away from it all** and preferred going somewhere **off the beaten track**. I accepted his request **without hesitation** and even bought some suitable clothes for this activity. It was great fun. Although I was a little scared at first, **apprehensive**, to be exact, my special instructor was experienced, and I started practising on the ground and very low on the wall to gain confidence. However, the reality did not seem that easy, as the route to reach the mountain peak was **in twists and turns**. We almost felt the terminal point was approaching, but it was endless. I got a little exhausted and had to lean against a tree. My friend encouraged me to hold on, take a deep breath and only think about the mountain peak to continue to climb.

(And explain why you think it is a challenge)

Well, first of all, it was a wholly new and somehow **adventurous** experience for me. Climbing a mountain is as similar as overcoming each obstacle in your life. When I reached the top of the mountain, I felt a great sense of **refreshment** and my mind was momentarily away from all burdens and other **distractions**. Though undeniably exciting, mountain climbing requires a level of advanced preparation and physical fitness that few other activities can **equal**. I have gained more confidence after conquering such a demanding challenge.

Vocabulary

to get away from it all:

Meaning: to take a holiday to escape a busy or stressful lifestyle

Example: How can I get away from it all and just simply relax at the end of the day?



off the beaten track:

Meaning: in or into an isolated place

Example: The farmhouse we stayed in was completely off the beaten track.

confront [v]: to face, meet, or deal with a difficult situation or person.

Eg: It's an issue we'll have to confront at some point, no matter how unpleasant it is.

arduous [adj]: difficult, needing a lot of effort and energy.

Eg: Domestic work remained especially arduous since, even in the 1970s, a large part of rural housing lacked basic amenities.

stamina [n]: the physical and/or mental strength to do something that might be difficult and will take a long time.

Eg: The triathlon is a great test of stamina.

without hesitation [expression]: if you say that someone does something without hesitation, you are emphasizing that they do it immediately and willingly.

Eg: The great majority of players would, of course, sign the contract without hesitation.

apprehensive [adj]: feeling worried about something that you are going to do or that is going to happen.

Eg: I'm very apprehensive about tomorrow's meeting.

twist and turns [expression]: curves and frequent changes of direction.

Eg: The road through the mountains has many twists and turns.

adventurous [adj]: exciting and often dangerous.

Eg: Instead of staying in the hotel all the time, we wanted to go out and be adventurous.

refreshment [n]: the fact of making somebody feel stronger or less tired or hot.

Eg: Minh is trying to find a place for rest and refreshment.

distraction (n): something that prevents someone from giving their attention to something else:

Eg: You can turn the television off if you find it a distraction.

equal [v]: to achieve the same standard or level as someone else, or the same standard or level as you did before.

Eg: We raised over \$500 for charity last year and we're hoping to equal that this year.



Part 3

1 Do you think parents should give kids challenges?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Well, I do think so, and the reasons are **manifold**. (Explain your reason or reasons) Young people must be pushed by their parents to be the best they can be, in whatever **pursuit** they take part in (Give an example (often a personal example)) Challenges and **cut-throat competition** prepare children for the real world. If you want a good job or a good salary, you have to compete with others.

2 What challenges do you think children might have to face up to? What is the most challenging thing for kids?

(Give a direct answer to the question) There are many difficulties youngsters are presented nowadays. (Explain your reason or reasons) For me, they are under **intense** pressure to find a productive place within society – either within the mainstream education system or satisfactory employment. The emphasis on acquiring **accomplishments**, status and wealth at a young age is **by no means** easy for them.

3 Can parents reduce the challenges that kids have? Why?

(Give a direct answer to the question) They should, to a certain extent. (Explain your reason or reasons) They should **adequately** ensure that their children, foremost, have fun, which will encourage them to stay interested and motivated in the achievement activity. Otherwise, by providing their children with challenges in which they are overmatched, parents may be **inadvertently** inhibiting, rather than facilitating, their interest, achievement, and enjoyment in the activity.

Vocabulary

cut throat competition

Meaning: intense competition

Example: Entering the national football team is a cut throat competition for all.

manifold [adj]: many and of several different types.

Eg: Despite her manifold faults, she was a strong leader.

pursuit [n]: the action of following or pursuing someone or something.

Eg: All those who ran or walked the first fixture collected three points and will now have target times to chase in pursuit of the overall title.

intense [adj]: of extreme force, degree, or strength.



Eg: His head slammed against the window; breaking the glass before he flew forward, his ribcage hitting the steering wheel with intense force.

accomplishment [n]: something that is successful, or that is achieved after a lot of work or effort.

Eg: Getting the two leaders to sign a peace treaty was his greatest accomplishment.

by no means [expression]: not at all.

Eg: It is by no means certain that we'll finish the project by June.

properly [adv]: correctly, or in a satisfactory way.

Eg: I'm not properly dressed for this kind of weather.

inadvertently [n]: without intention; accidentally.

Eg: His name had been inadvertently omitted from the list.





51. Describe an interesting animal you have ever seen

You should say:

- What it was
- Where you saw it
- What it did
- And why you think it was interesting

Sample Answer

(What it was)

I'm going to talk about an occasion on which I got to see elephants. I have had the chance to see a lot of animals **with my naked eyes**, but the most intriguing one for me are intelligent elephants. Elephants are mammals as well as **herbivores**, meaning they only eat plants rather than meat. Elephants are the largest land animals on earth, and they're one of the most unique-looking animals, too. With their characteristic long noses, or trunks; large, floppy ears; and wide, thick legs, there is no other animal with a similar **physique**.

(Where you saw it)

It was last summer when my whole family had a trip to Ho Chi Minh City, and we decided to visit the city's renowned zoo, Thao Cam Vien. It was ranked eighth among the oldest zoos in the world. It is 132 years old. It is the house to rare orchids, **ornamental** plants and hundreds of species of mammals, reptiles and birds. The main aim of Thao Cam Vien is to **conserve** animals and plants, especially **endangered species** and educate the public. One way to protect these species is by using breeding programs.

(What it did)

I got the chance to see a group of elephants swimming, which is entirely unexpected for me as I didn't know that they have this ability. Elephants move all four legs to swim and can move quite fast. Their giant bodies provide enough flotation while the trunk acts as a **snorkel**. From my observation, baby elephants enjoy playing in the water. They will often try to climb on the backs of older and bigger elephants and then splash back into the water. Calves will suck water into their trunks and spray at each other playfully.

(And why you think it was interesting)

Elephants feature many characteristics that are similar to humans. Apart from their **gigantic** bodies, they also boast extraordinary memories. Besides, they are recognized as being among the most intelligent creatures on earth. Elephants are capable of a range of emotions, including joy, playfulness, **grief** and mourning. Also, elephants can learn new facts and behaviours, **mimic** sounds that they hear, self-medicate, play with a sense of humour, perform artistic activities, use tools and display **compassion** and self-awareness.



Vocabulary

endangered species

Meaning: categories of animals or plants that are in danger of becoming extinct

Example: Many tourists expressed their concern about the increasing rate of endangered species in this zoo.

with one's naked eyes [expression]: without using any special device for making images larger.

Eg: We live miles away, but on a clear night, you can see the city skyscrapers with the naked eye.

herbivores [n]: an animal that eats only plants.

Eg: Cows and sheep are herbivores.

physique [n]: the form, size, and development of a person's body.

Eg: By 1540, Henry had become fat and he had lost the muscular physique he had when he was younger.

ornamental [adj]: beautiful rather than useful.

Eg: The handles on each side of the box are purely ornamental

conserve [v]: protect (something, especially an environmentally or culturally important place or thing) from harm or destruction.

Eg: As a result, their main impulse is to conserve wilderness from destruction by humans.

snorkel[n]: a short-curved tube for a swimmer to breathe through while keeping the face under water.

Eg: But yesterday he donned his snorkel and flippers to defend his title as World Champion Bog Snorkeller.

gigantic [adj]: of very great size or extent; huge or enormous.

Eg: The hunt for a house has been a gigantic part of my life for the last year so I'm bound to feel as if there's something missing.

grief [v]: deep sorrow, especially that caused by someone's death.

Eg: Grief over a traumatic death does not follow an accepted timeline.

mimic [v]: imitate (someone or their actions or words), typically in order to entertain or ridicule.

Eg: I've just mimicked him all my life, so he was a herpetologist, one who studies reptiles.



compassion [n]: sympathetic pity and concern for the sufferings or misfortunes of others.

Eg: After supping her fill of horrors, her capacity to feel compassion was deeply affected.

Part 3

1 How do you like taking care of animals?

(Give a direct answer to the question) To me, taking care of animals is an **arduous** task. Besides providing all the necessary things, like food, water, **shelter** and safety, you also need to provide quality health care for them. I am not an animal lover. I get frightened by different kinds of animals due to my experiences with them, and the only kind that I feel comfortable to be with are birds. (Give an example (often a personal example)) I admire them for their beautiful voices and the unique ability to fly.

2 What kinds of pets are most popular in Vietnam?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Vietnamese people love their pets, especially dogs. They **appreciate** dogs for the company and the loyalty they provide. You could find a dog, a cat or a cow being owned by a Vietnamese family. It is not for any monetary reasons but because they like being **surrounded** by animals and taking great care of them. Animals do bring a certain amount of happiness and **togetherness** in a family. (Explain the opposite or alternative) Fishes are another common pets in Vietnam even though they don't do much for their owners. Besides, some foreigners are surprised to know that birds and **reptiles** are preferred by many Vietnamese.

3 What are some of the advantages and disadvantages of having a pet?

(Give a direct answer to the question) On the one hand, having **domesticated** animals at home is interesting. Some people decide to own pets because they need a companion at home. Playing with pets is a kind of **refreshment**. (Explain the opposite or alternative) On the other hand, the disadvantages of having pets relate mostly to the responsibility of caring for them. Pet owners must discharge their duties responsibly by feeding these animals with proper food, exercising them and ensuring they get medical treatment, as well as the required yearly **vaccination**.

Vocabulary

arduous [adj]: involving or requiring strenuous effort; difficult and tiring.



Eg: Before becoming a Mass server one had to learn the Latin responses and this was a long and arduous task.

shelter [n]: a place giving temporary protection from bad weather or danger.

Eg: A year after the earthquake that devastated Gujarat, local people still live in tents or temporary shelters.

particular [adj]: special, or this and not any other.

Eg: In the light of recent incidents, we are asking our customers to take particular care of their personal belongings.

appreciate [v]: to recognize how good someone or something is and to value him, her, or it.

Eg: There's no point buying him expensive wines - he doesn't appreciate them.

surround [v]: to be everywhere around something.

Eg: She said that she wanted to die surrounded by the people she loves

togetherness [n]: the pleasant feeling of being united with other people in friendship and understanding.

Eg: War had given to the community a greater sense of togetherness.

reptile [n]: an animal that produces eggs and uses the heat of the sun to keep its blood warm.

Eg: Reptiles are cold-blooded animals – they need the sun to stay warm.

domesticated [adj]: (of an animal) tame and kept as a pet or on a farm.

Eg: However, milk-producing ruminant animals were domesticated about 10,000 years ago, according to archaeological evidence.

refreshment [n]: the fact of making somebody feel stronger or less tired or hot.

Eg: Minh is trying to find a place for rest and refreshment.

vaccination [n]: the process or an act of giving someone a vaccine (= a substance put into a person's body to prevent them getting a disease).

Eg: All the children were given two vaccinations against measles.



52. Describe a family member who spend the most time with

You should say:

- Who is this person?
- What kind of person he /she is?
- What do you usually do together?
- And explain why you spend the most time with him/her?

Sample Answer

(Who this person is)

I feel blessed to have a great family which made **unparalleled** contributions to help me go ahead. Among them, my father's impact is the most meaningful, and I treasure our quality time together.

(What kind of person he /she is?)

He is the person whom I love most in this world, and I consider him to be a perfect father and husband with his **upbeat** disposition, **resourcefulness** and responsibility. My father is an **exemplary** person who has led an honest life. As a high-ranking government officer, he has had many chances to pile up the riches, but he always stood by the truth and never broke the rules.

(What do you usually do together?)

From my childhood, he has dedicated much time to raising me with great care, **affection** and mentorship. When I was young, he taught me moral lessons about the world, **inspirational** people and values and also the necessary skills. No matter how preoccupied with work, he always tried to give **wholehearted** support to my education, especially with my activities at school. When we were together, he frequently discussed plans for the future and encouraged me to challenge myself to step out of my **comfort zones**.

(And explain why you spend the most time with him/her?)

As a father, I would say he has done everything possible to raise my sister and me. He spent his entire life catering to our interests and demands. The basics of humanity and the importance of education were the values he delivered to me. We **get on very well with** each other, and I **enjoy his company**. Our times together have always been **insightful** and full of joy.

Vocabulary

to get on well with

Meaning: to understand someone and enjoy similar interests



Example: We all get on really well and have a lot in common so we're always happy doing the same things and going to the same places

to enjoy someone's company:

Meaning: to like spending time with someone

Example: I think we enjoy each other's company so we rarely fall out with each other.

unparalleled [adj]: better than all others .

Eg: He had a talent unparalleled by any other politician in this country.

phenomenon [n]: something that exists and can be seen, felt, tasted, etc., especially something unusual or interesting.

Eg: Do you believe in the paranormal and other psychic phenomena?

upbeat [adj]: full of hope, happiness, and good feelings.

Eg: Live music and a parade set an upbeat mood for the official opening.

resourcefulness [n]: the ability to be good at finding ways of doing things and solving problems.

Eg: Resourcefulness is an essential quality for a good employee.

exemplary [adj]: providing a good example for somebody to copy.

Eg: Minh is the most exemplary student in our class this semester.

affection [n]: the feeling of liking or loving something/somebody very much.

Eg: Children nowadays need a lot of attention and affection.

inspirational [adj]: making you feel full of hope or encouraged.

Eg: He gave an inspirational reading of his own poems.

whole-hearted [adj]: completely enthusiastic.

Eg: The minister has pledged his wholehearted support for the plans.

comfort zone [expression]: a situation in which you feel comfortable and in which your ability and determination are not being tested.

Eg: Rock climbing pushes many people beyond their comfort zones.

perspiration [n]: the process of sweating.

Eg: He failed to do this, but found that shed blood and perspiration had no more attraction for females than had water.

insightful [adj]: having or showing an accurate and deep understanding; perceptive.:sâu sắc



Eg: This is a very thoughtful, insightful analysis.

Part 3

1 What are the benefits of younger and older generations living together? How about the drawbacks?

(Give a direct answer to the question) In terms of the advantages, we can see that the presence of older family members will ease the **burden** of raising kids. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** In large families, there are more connections and interactions between family members. Besides, grandparents could also teach **valuable** lessons and essential manners to their children. **(Give an example (often a personal example))** However, there exist some generation gaps when three generations live together, which sometimes increases the **tension** between family members. Nowadays, as life is becoming increasingly **modernized**, especially in **hectic** cities, only parents and children can live together.

2 Which do you prefer, support from family members or friends? Why?

(Give a direct answer to the question) My family. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** You can have many friends, but your family members are **irreplaceable**. Friends can come and go at different stages of your life like secondary school, high school, university, but it is your family who never **abandons** you no matter what happens. **(Explain the opposite or alternative)** Yet, your friends' support is a crucial factor that leads to your personal growth. **(Give an example (often a personal example))** From my experience, good friends are especially important during times of crisis and **turbulence**. When I find myself going through a hard time, my closest friend never failed to cheer me up and sailed me through both emotional and academic **setbacks**.

Vocabulary

burden [n]: a duty that causes worry, difficulty or hard work.

Eg: I don't want to become a burden to my family when I'm old.

valuable [adj]: very useful or important.

Eg: The book provides valuable information on recent trends.

tension [n]: a situation when people do not trust each other, or feel unfriendly towards each other.

Eg: There is mounting tension in the company.

hinder [v]: to make it difficult for somebody to do something or something to happen.

Eg: There is a political situation that hinders economic growth.



modernize [v]: to make something more modern and more suitable for use at the present time.

Eg: The factory is investing more money to modernize its facilities.

hectic [adj]: very busy, full of activity.

Eg: Ho Chi Minh is a very hectic city.

irreplaceable [adj]: cannot be replaced.

Eg: Her position in his heart is irreplaceable.

abandon [v]: to leave somebody, especially somebody you are responsible for.

Eg: The baby had been abandoned by its heartless mother.

turbulence [n]: a state of confusion without any order.

Eg: The era was characterized by political and cultural turbulence.

setback [n]: something that happens that delays or prevents a process from developing.

Eg: There has been a slight/temporary setback in our plans.





53. Describe a crowded place you have been to

You should say:

- When you went there
- With who you went there
- Why you went there
- And how you felt about it

Sample Answer

(When you went there)

Most often, crowded places are public venues that attract a large number of people. **Megacities** like New York, Beijing, and Tokyo are known for being **exceptionally** crowded. Photos of **massive** crowds of people depict these cities' residents doing everything from walking down the street to marching in parades and even sitting in traffic. My experience at a crowded place was in one of these cities, Tokyo.

(With who you went there)

Last month, my family decided to choose Tokyo as our **holiday destination**. Tokyo is Japan's capital and the world's most **populous** metropolis. Today, Tokyo has become one of the world's most active cities, home to **cutting-edge** technology, information, culture, and fashion, as well as a high level of public safety.

(Why you went there)

Visiting Tokyo has always been one of my biggest travel dreams. It is a modern, fast-paced city that still **embraces** its traditional roots. Even though the city is large, there's a sense of cleanliness and order about Tokyo that makes it extremely accessible to visitors.

(And how you felt about it)

There are many things to talk about the once in a lifetime experience in Tokyo. Perhaps best of all is its structure: lacking a clearly marked centre, it's made up of a **patchwork** of different neighbourhoods, each distinct in identity and atmosphere. "Animated" is perhaps the best word to describe Tokyo. The most crowded place must be Shibuya crossing, the biggest and busiest crossing in Tokyo, where sometimes 1000 or more people cross the **intersection** at once. My family also experienced Tokyo's crowded trains during rush hour, and the **commotion** was so bothersome. Apart from its overwhelming number of people, I have nothing to complain about this city. Indeed, I am particularly impressed with the **civility** and orderliness of the people in Tokyo.

Part 3



1 Do people like to go to crowded places? Why?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, I think most modern people like crowded places and the reasons are **manifold**. (Explain **your reason or reasons**) Practically, **vibrant** young people prefer sharing their activities with the crowd and take it as a **collective** enjoyment. (Explain the **opposite or alternative**) In contrast to young people who like adventure & loudness, older people value their **privacy** and their time by themselves.

2 How can the problem of traffic congestion be solved?

(Give a direct answer to the question) On the one hand, adequate investment in road improvements might help reduce **chaotic** traffic congestion in cities significantly (Explain the **opposite or alternative**). Besides, **implementing** rail and subway systems could guarantee that traffic congestion is **adequately addressed**. (Explain **your reason or reasons**) Trains do not have to go through **intersections** and traffic lights, and dedicated lines ensure their travel is hardly interrupted.

3 Why do people still like to live in big cities even though there are severe traffic jams?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Apparently, for many city dwellers, living in the city is increasingly accessible and offers plenty of opportunities. (Explain your reason or reasons) Inarguably, when living in major cities, one will be presented with better career prospects. For example, for those working in urban areas with more qualifications, job positions in multinational companies would be more approachable.

4 What public facilities does your city have?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Well, my city offers a wide range of public **facilities** for its residents. (Explain **your reason or reasons**) Thanks to the governmental financial investment for improvements in systems of **public transport**, like bus or underground services; our daily travel has been greatly facilitated.

Vocabulary

public transport

Meaning: public vehicles such as buses and trains that operate at regular times on a fixed route.

Example: This city offers an excellent system of public transport.

manifold [adj]: many and of several different types.

Eg: Despite her manifold faults, she was a strong leader.

vibrant [adj]: full of energy and enthusiasm.



Eg: The director says that he has always been inspired by the vibrant energy of the youth and the charm of campuses.

collective [adj]: of or shared by every member of a group of people.

Eg: It was a collective decision/effort.

privacy [n]: the state of being alone.

Eg: I hate sharing a bedroom - I never get any privacy.

chaotic [adj]: in a state of complete confusion and lack of order.

Eg: The traffic in the city is chaotic in the rush hour.

implement [v]: to start using a plan or system.

Eg: The changes to the national health system will be implemented next year.

properly [adv]: correctly, or in a satisfactory way.

Eg: I'm not properly dressed for this kind of weather.

intersection [n]: a point or line common to lines or surfaces that intersect.

Eg: If you remember back to an economics class you might have taken, much time was spent on the intersection of lines in those graphs.

approachable [adj]: (of a place) able to be reached from a particular direction or by a particular means.

Eg: The headland it was built on forms a natural stronghold with the sea on three sides and is only approachable from the north.

facility [n]: something such as a place, building, or equipment used for a particular purpose or activity.

Eg: His facility for memorizing dates was astonishing.



54. Describe a time when someone apologized to you

You should say:

- When it was
- Who this person is
- Why he or she apologized to you
- How you felt about it

Sample Answer

(When it was and who this person is)

Apologizing is a part of good manners, and I believe that it helps to **alleviate** many **bothersome** situations happening in everyday life. In several events, others have apologized to me but the apology from my closest friend, Linh, was the most significant to me. It happened a few months ago, when my father presented me with two movie tickets, as an **incentive** for achieving full scores in the English exam. The compelling trailer of this movie captured my attention right away, and I knew that I should enjoy it with my best friend. Unhesitatingly, I decided to invite Linh, and we quickly made an appointment for the cinema before 6 pm.

(Why he or she apologized to you)

As scheduled previously, Linh was supposed to show up at the cinema at 5:30, but somehow she did not. I did **give her so many rings**, but she did not answer them. I kept waiting until 6 pm but **in vain**. **In the heat of the moment**, I **lost my temper** and **furiously** left her a message, saying how disappointed I was with her and asked whether she respected our relationship. A day later, Linh sent a **heartfelt** apology to me. She explained that on that day, her younger brother was disturbed by a severe eating disorder, and she had to take care of him at the hospital. Because the incident was so sudden and unexpected, she was too nervous about taking the phone with her and was unable to contact me. Linh hoped that I could understand and **sympathize with** her.

(How you felt about it)

Honestly, I felt a little guilty for being too **aggressive** while knowing nothing about her situation. From this incident, I also understand that everything happens for a reason. We should not **jump to a conclusion** without careful consideration. Besides, sincere apologies are indeed an **indication** of respect for the relationship.

Vocabulary

to lose one's temper:

Meaning: to suddenly become angry

Example: You should not lose your temper in situations like that.



pacify [v]: to make somebody who is angry or upset become calm and quiet.

Eg: The speech was designed to pacify the irate crowd.

bothersome [adj]: special, good or unusual and therefore worth remembering or easy to remember.

Eg: This is a truly memorable occasion for all people involved.

incentive [n]: something that encourages you to do something.

Eg: In my country, there is literally no incentive for people to save fuel.

give somebody a ring [expression]: phone somebody.

Eg: Minh promised to give me a ring as soon as he came home.

in the heat of the moment [expression]: be in the moment of strong feelings, especially of anger or excitement.

Eg: In the heat of the moment, Linda forgot what she wanted to say to her mother.

furiously [adv]: in an angry way.

Eg: All the architects worked furiously during the week, complaining that their wages were unsatisfactory.

heartfelt [adj]: showing strong feelings that are sincere.

Eg: In the ceremony, the director expressed heartfelt gratitude to all the employees, who worked diligently on the project.

sympathize with [v]: to feel sorry for somebody; to show that you understand and feel sorry about somebody's problem .

Eg: The reporter sympathized with the victim, because she herself has undergone such similar unhappy experiences.

jump to a conclusion [expression]: to make a decision about something/ somebody too quickly, before you know or have thought about all the facts.

Eg: The police neglectfully overlooked the situation and jumped to the conclusion that he was guilty.

indication [n]: a remark or sign that shows that something is happening or what somebody is thinking or feeling.

Eg: Obviously, there are indications that the economy of this nation is improving.

Part 3

1 On what occasion do people usually apologize to others?



(Give a direct answer to the question) Well, sometimes people apologize when realizing that they may have hurt another individual (i.e., physically, emotionally, mentally) by accident. A sincere apology allows you to let people know you're not proud of what you did, and won't be repeating the behaviour. **(Give an example (often a personal example))** For example, whenever I **lose my temper** and misbehave, I send an apology to them.

2 Do people in your country like to say "sorry"?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Well, not very often **(Explain your reason or reasons)** I assume it's not a part of our culture. **(Give an example (often a personal example))** From my experience, Japanese people are more **inclined to** say sorry. Apologizing is built into the Japanese language. Japanese people have it in their blood; they apologize all the time, even when it's not their fault. It's almost like a **reflex**, but it's not, because I could see the emotion in my Japanese friends' eyes every time they apologized to me. They do it even if they touch you by mistake or have their back turned at you without being willing to.

3 Do you think people should apologize for anything wrong they do?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, I do. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** If something you've done has caused pain for another person, it's a good idea to apologize, even if your action was **unintentional**. This is because apologizing opens up the doors to communication, which allows you to reconnect with the person who was hurt. In these ways, being **adept** at apologizing when appropriate can bring the benefits that come with stronger relationships, reduced conflict, and forgiveness—it's well **worth the effort**.

Vocabulary

to lose one's temper:

Meaning: to suddenly become angry

Example: You should not lose your temper in situations like that.

inappropriately [adv]: in a way that is unsuitable, or wrong in a particular situation.

Eg: There is nothing to suggest the attorney acted inappropriately in the case.

(be) inclined to [adj]: likely or wanting to do something.

Eg: No one seemed inclined to help.

reflex [n]: a physical reaction to something that you cannot control.

Eg: I'm sorry I punched him; it was a reflex action/response.

unintentional [adj]: not done on purpose.:

Eg: There's an unintentional feeling of sadness in Woody Allen's latest comedy.



adept [adj]: having a natural ability to do something that needs skill.

Eg: She's very adept at dealing with the media.

worth the effort [expression]: If you say that something is worth the effort, you mean that it will justify the energy that you have spent or will spend on it.

Eg: Fortunately, the chore of leaf sweeping is well worth the effort.





55. Describe an important journey that has been delayed

You should say:

- When it was
- Why it was important
- How it was delayed
- And how you felt about it

Sample Answer

(When it was)

Today, I'm going to describe an important journey that was delayed. It was a trip organized to Bach Ma national park for all students in my high school three years ago. It was done **to raise** students' awareness of the importance of protecting the environment.

(Why it was important)

The reason why it was of great importance was that the educational trip was a beneficial way for a student to acquire knowledge and experience. When notified about the trip, our class searched a lot of information about the park. We were **enthralled** to see pictures of several thousand trees, faunas and floras, hills, lakes etc. of this place. Our biology teacher used to tell us that the national park **boasted** a lot of **endangered species**. Through the trip, we would be able to learn more about the importance of forests, the necessity and our responsibility to **alleviate** environmental problems, making the world a better place for all the species and not just for humans only.

(How it was delayed)

Against our expectations, the weather that day was so horrible that the headmaster decided to delay this journey **for the sake of** students' safety. This situation was so unexpected because I clearly remember that the weather of the day before was perfect with a mild temperature. However, the unexpectedly **unfavourable** weather eventually **hindered** our plan.

(And how you felt about it)

My friends and I were quite **pissed off**. To me, the whole trip promised to be **enlightening** and truly practical, which would offer students a **getaway** from daily heavy schoolwork. However, our school rearranged the trip for the students, and we managed to get to the park two months later, which was an unforgettable experience for all of us.

Vocabulary

endangered species

Meaning: categories of animals or plants that are in danger of becoming extinct



Example: Many tourists expressed their concern about the increasing rate of endangered species in this zoo.

with a view to [expression]: with an intention to do something.

Eg: The politician reveals the truth with a view to gaining more faith from the public.

(be) enthralled by something [adj]: be attracted to something that is so interesting, beautiful.

Eg: The child watched, completely enthralled by bright moving images.

(to) boast [v]: have something that is impressive and that you can be proud of.

Eg: The hotel also boasts two swimming pools and a golf course.

alleviate [n]: to make something bad such as pain or problems less severe.

Eg: The drugs did nothing to alleviate her pain/suffering.

for the sake of [expression]: in order to help or bring advantage to someone.

Eg: He moved to the seaside for the sake of his health.

unfavourable [adj]: not tending to help; not likely to lead to a positive result.

Eg: Unfavourable weather conditions this morning caused a postponement of the launch of the space shuttle.

hinder [v]: to limit the ability of someone to do something, or to limit the development of something:

Eg: High winds have hindered firefighters in their efforts to put out the blaze.

(be) pissed off [adj]: very annoyed; angry.

Eg: He'd kept me waiting for an hour so I was pissed off to start with.

enlightening [adj]: giving somebody information so that they understand something better.

Eg: The lecture was so enlightening that all the students loved it.

getaway [n]: an escape from something.

Eg: If you aspire to a getaway from the harshness of life, this place is a suitable one.

Part 3

1 Will people still drive a car if public transportation is free of charge?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Well, probably. (Give an example (often a personal example)) Free public transport would reduce the number of cars on the road. **Global warming** is a serious issue, and if **public transport** was free, more people would use it, taking



cars off the road and substantially **cutting down CO2 emissions**. With more users, inadequate public transport networks would be improved by the government, to make it increasingly **approachable**. It's a worthwhile **incentive**.

2 How can transportation in rural areas be developed?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Reliable transportation is needed for rural residents to access healthcare services, consumer services, employment and educational opportunities, and social services. It is also important for accessing recreation and other activities of daily life. (Explain your reason or reasons) Therefore, the **long-term** investment in an efficient and affordable system of transportation would **lay the foundation for** economic growth in rural areas and help ensure that people can obtain services and participate in public life.

3 How often do people usually travel?

(Give a direct answer to the question) People travel quite often nowadays. (Explain your reason or reasons) The presence of modern technology and low-cost air travel has eased much of the **burden** associated with travelling. Since we now have access to more tools and infrastructure, the transportation system, as well as travel, have been improved. For example, roads are better, broader and more accessible; therefore, the need to travel has increased rapidly.

4 In what ways can the traffic conditions in a city be improved?

(Give a direct answer to the question) For me, upgrading rail and subway systems in cities could address traffic congestion. (Explain your reason or reasons) Unlike cars and buses, trains are capable of transporting hundreds of people simultaneously and thus would meet the transport demand of a vast number of passengers. Trains do not have to go through **intersections** and traffic lights, and dedicated lines ensure their travel is hardly interrupted.

Vocabulary

public transport

Meaning: public vehicles such as buses and trains that operate at regular times on fixed routes.

Example: This city offers an excellent system of public transport.

to cut down on emissions

Meaning: to reduce the amount of gases sent out into the air

Example: People must be made aware of the need **to cut down on emissions** from their cars if we are to reduce air pollution.

global warming



Meaning: the process by which the Earth is getting hotter, as a result of the greenhouse effect

Example: Perhaps the major environmental challenge which faces humanity today is **global warming**, because it threatens our survival.

approachable [adj]: (of a place) able to be reached from a particular direction or by a particular means.

Eg: The headland it was built on forms a natural stronghold with the sea on three sides and is only approachable from the north.

incentive [n]: something that encourages you to do something.

Eg: In my country, there is literally no incentive for people to save fuel.

long-term [adj]: that will last or have an effect over a long period of time.

Eg: At the moment, long-term investment in education would favour the overall development of this nation.

lay the foundation for something [expression]: set, start a principle, an idea or a fact that something is based on and that it grows from.

Eg: Respect and friendship lay a solid foundation for marriage.

burden [n]: a duty that causes worry, difficulty or hard work.

Eg: I don't want to become a burden to my family when I'm old.

intersection [n]: a point or line common to lines or surfaces that intersect.

Eg: If you remember back to an economics class you might have taken, much time was spent on the intersection of lines in those graphs.



56. Describe a change that can improve your local area

You should say:

- What is it
- How it can be made
- What benefit it will bring
- And how you feel about it

Sample Answer

(What it is)

I'm going to describe a change that can improve my local area, which is the construction of a new giant building in the city centre. It would be a complex of **shopping malls**, hotels and offices. For a small area like my city, the advent of a modern, state-of-the-art shopping mall would be an undoubtedly **favourable** development. It would consist mainly of changes related to social, economic, as well as functional and **spatial** spheres.

(How it can be made)

Well, I think it is the local authorities' responsibility to **initiate** such a large-scale project. The construction of this building would require a professional architectural firm, a team of subcontractors, a knowledgeable contractor, and a cooperative developer/owner to get the job done in a reasonable time frame.

(What benefit it will bring)

Many benefits follow such a development for a small area. First, this complex would **incorporate** ample parking in its design and construction. This would make it advantageous for people who choose to shop there instead of a single store. With a broader range of goods and services, the overall **consumer spending** would be strongly **stimulated**, which favours the provincial economy. The centre would also allow foreign visitors to purchase goods with greater diversity, as compared to other supermarkets in the past.

(And how you felt about it)

Such an improvement would exert a **long-term** influence on the lives of local people in many aspects, such as the economy, tourism. As a part of the city, I feel excited about this **progressive** turn, and I believe the building would enhance people's living standards as a whole. Most importantly, the success of this building would **lay the very foundation** for other **large-scale** investments in my city.

Vocabulary

shopping malls

Meaning: large indoor shopping centres

Example: There are many shopping malls in the city centre.



favourable [adj]: to the advantage of somebody/something

Eg: The speaker announced the favorable establishment of a new college.

spatial [adj]: of or relating to space

Eg: The exhibition has great spatial sense.

initiate [v]: to make something begin

Eg: The government has initiated a program of economic reform.

incorporate [v]: include/ take something in as a form:

Eg: The building incorporates a lot of state-of-the-art facilities.

consumer spending [expression]: the spending of consumer:

Eg: Consumer spending this year has increased exponentially.

stimulate [v]: to make something develop or become more active; to encourage something:

Eg: The article can be used to stimulate discussion among students.

long-term [adj]: that will last or have an effect over a long period of time:

Eg: At the moment, long-term investment in education would favour the overall development of this nation.

progressive [adj]: happening or developing steadily:

Eg: There is a progressive reduction in the size of the workforce.

large-scale [adj]: involving many people or things, especially over a wide area.

Eg: This building is a large-scale development for our nation.

lay the foundation for something [expression]: set, start a principle, an idea or a fact that something is based on and that it grows from.

Eg: Respect and friendship lay a solid foundation for marriage.

Part 3

1 Why are people living in a community, friendly with others?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Well, it is quite easy to understand the importance of living in a community (Explain **your reason or reasons**) Being a part of a community can make us feel as though we are a part of something greater than ourselves. It can give us opportunities to connect with people, to reach for our goals, and make us feel safe and secure. (Give an example (often a personal example)) In the age where technology connects and separates us, a friendly **residential area** can greatly benefit our well-being and can increase our **contentment** in day-to-day life.



2 Do people like living in a community?

(Give a direct answer to the question) I think the majority do. (Explain your reason or reasons) It seems that our sense of self-worth and well-being is **inextricably** linked to the feeling that we are part of a group. This sense of belonging allows us to feel acknowledged and recognized for who we truly are. This sense of belonging is very much **part and parcel** of being a member of an intentional community. Through sharing our experiences daily, we can also enjoy mutually **supportive** relationships that can be more trusting than usual.

3 Why do people in a community usually have a social gathering?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Well, the organization of a social gathering would be **in the interest of** the people involved. (Explain your reason or reasons) Social gatherings develop social skills and empathy—the outward-oriented dimensions of emotional intelligence. Participating in social events enables individuals to meet people who can help them academically or professionally. Relationship-building is a good habit that students need to learn because the world of work requires **aptitude** in **negotiation**, communication and networking.

Vocabulary

residential area

Meaning: an area where people live

Example: I live in a residential area of a busy town in the south of Spain

contentment [n]: a state of happiness and satisfaction.

Eg: Reddy was an avid reader and got many hours of contentment and enjoyment from books and newspapers.

inextricably [adv]: in a way that is unable to be separated, released, or escaped from.

Eg: The Louis Armstrong legend is inextricably linked with his recordings.

part and parcel [expression]: to be a feature of something, especially a feature that cannot be avoided.

Eg: Being recognized in the street is part and parcel of being a celebrity.

supportive [adj]: showing agreement and giving encouragement.

Eg: Children with supportive parents often do better at school than those without.

in the interest of [expression]: if you do something in the interests of a particular result or situation, you do it in order to achieve that result or maintain that situation.



Eg: A call for all businessmen to work together is in the interests of national stability.

aptitude [n]: a natural ability or skill.

Eg: We will take your personal aptitudes and abilities into account.

negotiation [n]: the process of discussing something with someone in order to reach an agreement with them, or the discussions themselves.

Eg: The agreement was reached after a series of difficult negotiations.





57. Describe an occasion when weather prevented your activity

You should say:

- When it was
- Why it prevented your activity
- What you did
- And how you felt about it

Sample Answer

(When it was)

I'm going to tell you an experience that happened last summer when I was going to hike on a faraway mountain. However, the unexpectedly unfavorable weather eventually **hindered** my plan. It was a **balmy** day with a mild temperature, perfect conditions for an **adventurous** activity like hiking. After having breakfast, I checked my backpack, made sure I was wearing my most comfortable shoes and took the bus to the foothills.

(Why it prevented your activity)

However, when I reached there, the sun disappeared, and the temperature changed **vastly**. The wind had picked up, with dark clouds rolling across the sky. This was no doubt an **indication** of **heavy rain** or worse, a big storm. From my previous experience, I knew right away that it is **by no means** an easy task to hike by myself in such conditions, as the mountain road I chose was full of **twists and turns**.

(What you did)

Demotivated as I felt, I had to cancel the hiking plans for the sake of my safety. However, on the way back, I found a hot spring resort by the road, which I had never been to before. I decided to treat myself to a service there to make up for the failed plan.

(And how you felt about it)

Of course, I was **utterly** disappointed initially because I had been planning this hike for a long time. Yet, the spring resort experience was beautiful. After two hours there, all my tiredness was gone, and I felt refreshed. Though bathing was not my first choice of the day, it turned out to be fulfilling.

Vocabulary

heavy rain

Meaning: intense rainfall

Example: Many tourists have their flights delayed due to the heavy rain.



hinder [v]: to limit the ability of someone to do something, or to limit the development of something

Eg: High winds have hindered firefighters in their efforts to put out the blaze.

balmy [adj]: (of the weather) pleasantly warm.

Eg: The exhibition was held in the balmy days of late summer.

adventurous [adj]: exciting and often dangerous.

Eg: Instead of staying in the hotel all the time, we wanted to go out and be adventurous.

vastly [adv]: very much.

Eg: Assessing the larger numbers of women suffering severe maternal morbidity would vastly increase their workload.

indication [n]: a remark or sign that shows that something is happening or what somebody is thinking or feeling:

Eg: Obviously, there are indications that the economy of this nation is improving.

by no means [expression]: not at all

Eg: It is by no means certain that we'll finish the project by June.

twist and turns [expression]: curves and frequent changes of direction

Eg: The road through the mountains has many twists and turns.

demotivate [v]: to make someone less enthusiastic about something

Eg: She was very demotivated by being told she had little chance of being promoted.

utterly [adv]: completely or extremely

Eg: She was utterly devastated when her husband died.

refreshment [n]: the fact of making somebody feel stronger or less tired or hot.

Eg: Minh is trying to find a place for rest and refreshment.

Part 3

1 Does weather have any impact on people's daily activities?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, of course. (Explain **your reason or reasons**) Weather affects people's everyday lives by **governing** choices they make about what clothes to wear, how to travel, and the activities in which they participate. Weather also affects the moods of many people. (Give an example (often a personal example)) In areas where **distinct** seasons exist, such as snowstorms, can cancel school, meaning parents may have to scramble for childcare, and students get a day off from school.



Winter can also make commutes to work a **nuisance**, if not dangerous.

2 Why do people do different kinds of sports in different weather?

(Give a direct answer to the question) This is a way of adaptation for me. (Explain your reason or reasons) The effects of weather on sport are varied, with some events being unable to occur. While outdoor sports are most affected, those played indoors can still be impacted by **unfavourable** weather conditions.

3 What kind of weather do Vietnamese people like?

(Give a direct answer to the question) I'm afraid there is no definite answer to this question, but it may probably be the sunny, mild weather in spring. (Explain your reason or reasons) The temperature is neither **bitterly** cold nor **unbearably** hot, so people in Vietnam tend to go on a picnic or take a **brisk walk** in the park. This is when families get together, so I believe that people feel happier with this kind of weather.

4 Do Vietnamese people talk about the weather when they meet for the first time?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Not at all. (Explain your reason or reasons) This is the tradition of British people. The real reason people in Britain like to talk about the weather is that they are quite socially **inept**. Besides, the weather makes a particularly good topic of conversation because it is so **variable**. This is not the case in Vietnam.

Vocabulary

a brisk walk:

Meaning: a fast walk

Example: You should take a brisk walk to relax yourself.

govern [v]: conduct the policy, actions, and affairs of (a state, organization, or people)

Eg: The Netherlands is a unitary state governed by a central body.

distinct [adj]: recognizably different in nature from something else of a similar type.

Eg: Whilst distinct in terms of research focus, the two projects were theoretically and methodologically similar.

nuisance [n]: a person, thing, or circumstance causing inconvenience or annoyance:

Eg: In return, they don't secede or otherwise make a nuisance of themselves.

unfavourable [adj]: not likely to lead to a positive result.

Eg: Unfavorable weather conditions this morning caused a postponement of the launch of the space shuttle.



bitterly [adv]: bitterly cold = extremely and unpleasantly cold.

Eg: The winter in Canada last year was bitterly cold.

unbearably [n]: in a way that is too painful or unpleasant for you to continue to experience.

Eg: The sun was almost unbearably hot today.

period [n]: the length of time that something lasts.

Eg: He planned a stay of a two year period .

inept [adj]: having or showing no skill; clumsy.

Eg: Consecutive governments have insisted on a completely inept policy of open immigration.

variable [adj]: not consistent or having a fixed pattern; liable to change.

Eg: Even the music, which, whilst variable in quality, has some genuinely affecting moments, ultimately seems insubstantial.





58. Describe a time when you couldn't use the mobile phone

You should say:

- When it was and where it was
- Why you could not use your mobile phone
- How you felt about it

Sample Answer

(When it was and where it was)

I'm going to describe a time when I didn't use the mobile phone. Well, I was not allowed to use it. During our math lessons in 12th grade in high school, the teacher decided to ban mobile phones, considering its **adverse** impacts on students' performance. At first, she wasn't **set in her ways** to impose such a strict rule. However, **on second thoughts**, she believed that banning mobile phones would benefit all the students.

(Why you could not use your mobile phone)

Our teacher was convinced that such a **gadget** would always generate **distractions** among students, discouraging their learning spirit. Indeed, this was the case for many. In my class, those who owned a mobile phone could hardly pay full attention as they were constantly checking their phones for messages and the like. As a result, our teachers found it **problematic** and disturbing when students were using phones in their class, and we ended up not being able to bring cellphones to school at all. If anyone needed to call their parents, they could use the telephone in the supervisor's room.

(How you felt about it)

Honestly, at that time, the price of mobile phones was **beyond my means**; therefore, only the rich could afford them. This rule exerted no effects on me or my studying. Still, many of my friends felt irritated because they had **grown accustomed to** performing **calculations** with a cell phone instead of a calculator.

Vocabulary

gadget

Meaning: a technological tool like a mobile phone or camera

Example: Such a gadget would help you considerably in studying.

adverse [adj]: preventing success or development; harmful; unfavorable.

Eg: Of course, there is also the adverse publicity that could dog them for years to come.



set in one's ways [expression]: to do the same things every day and to not want to change those habits.

Eg: As people get older, they often become set in their ways.

on second thoughts [expression]: used when you want to change a decision you have made:

Eg: Can I have a cup of coffee, please? - actually, on second thoughts, I'll have a beer.

in the interest of [expression]: to the advantage or advancement of

Eg: New students may be accommodated in halls of residence in the interest of the school.

distraction (n): something that prevents someone from giving their attention to something else:

Eg: You can turn the television off if you find it a distraction.

accordingly [adv]: in a way that suits the situation:

Eg: They accordingly stressed that the unqualified trust in reason could dangerously erode this relationship.

worrisome (adj): worrying.

Eg: Alcohol and tobacco consumption by young people is especially worrisome because habits formed early are likely to persist.

beyond one's means (expression): Too costly for one, more than one can afford.

Eg: A second vacation this year is well beyond our means.

(be)/ grow accustomed to [expression]: familiar with something.

Eg: She quickly became accustomed to his messy ways.

calculation (n): a mathematical determination of the size or number of something.

Eg: A calculation is a deliberate process that transforms one or more inputs into one or more results, with variable change.

Part 3

1 Do you think it is necessary to have laws on the use of mobile phones?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Well, this issue is quite complicated. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** From my perspective, cell phone usage should be restricted in public places. For example, it would be rude to answer your phone in a restaurant and talk to the other person because it would interrupt other peoples' dates or dinners or get-togethers. Or in places like the library, theatre, and especially in class while listening to a lecture, it can be very disruptive when someone next to you starts using his/her cell phone.



2 How do you like children having mobile phones?

(Give a direct answer to the question) I disapprove of this, as having a cellphone would affect their academic performances. (Explain your reason or reasons) Such a **gadget** would continuously generate great **distractions** among students during class and discourage their learning spirit. Indeed, this has been the case for many. (Give an example) When I was in secondary school, those who owned a mobile phone could hardly pay full attention as they were constantly checking their phones for messages and the like. As a result, our teachers found it **problematic** and disturbing when students were using phones in their class, and we ended up not being able to bring cellphones to school at all.

3 At what age should children have mobile phones?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Those above the age of 16 can probably have mobile phones (Explain your reason or reasons) Children below the age of sixteen should not be given mobile phones since their brain is too sensitive to **withstand** the effects of mobile radiation. Under the absorption of radiation, children can have **adverse** health issues. Adults are also affected by the radiation, but it will be more consequential in children because of the increased absorption of these radiation levels.

Vocabulary

gadget

Meaning: a technological tool like a mobile phone or camera

Example: Such a gadget would help you considerably in studying.

for the sake of [expression]: in order to help or bring advantage to someone.

Eg: If you do something for the sake of something, you do it for that purpose or in order to achieve that result.

distraction (n): something that prevents someone from giving their attention to something else:

Eg: You can turn the television off if you find it a distraction.

accordingly [adv]: in a way that suits the situation:

Eg: They accordingly stressed that the unqualified trust in reason could dangerously erode this relationship.

in the interest of [expression]: to the advantage or advancement of

Eg: New students may be accommodated in halls of residence in the interest of the school.

adverse [adj]: preventing success or development; harmful; unfavorable



Eg: Of course, there is also the adverse publicity that could dog them for years to come.

withstand [v]: remain undamaged or unaffected by; resist.

Eg: The structure had been designed to withstand winds of more than 100 mph





59. Describe an ideal house or apartment you would like to live in the future

You should say:

- What it is like
- Where it is
- When you want to live there
- And explain why it is ideal for you

Sample Answer

(What it is like)

Now, I would like to share with you a bit about a house that I wish to live in. The walls will be painted in white, which will make my house look a lot brighter and reduce the **absorption** of heat. Also, the doors will be made of glass because there is nothing more elegant than glass. I follow the minimalism of the Japanese, and I am lazy, so there will be nothing much inside my house apart from a kitchen, creamy lights, and some necessities. Paintings or complicated furniture will not find a place in my house.

(Where it is)

I've dreamt of having a big **detached house** with **spacious rooms** in the resort city of Danang since it was **crowned** the most livable city in Vietnam. It has won this title for five years, **leaving far behind** its rivals such as Vung Tau, which is my hometown, and Ho Chi Minh city, which is the wealthiest city in Vietnam. Danang is such a stunning coastal city with magnificent views of the sea and the mountains. It's natural and modern at the same time, which is why I would love to live there.

(When you want to live there)

I would love to live in this house when I graduate from university and have a stable job. Only then, will I be able to leave Ho Chi Minh city for Da Nang because I have to finish my degree at a university in Ho Chi Minh city.

(And explain why it is ideal to you)

This house will be located in the city of Danang, which is a coastal city with beautiful beaches and mountains. The house will be built **in deference to** Japanese minimalism. Also, I'm a **couch potato** who does not want to spend time on tidying up the house too frequently.

Vocabulary

Detached house (n): a house that is not physically connected to another property

Example: Prices are rising so fast that people can't afford detached houses.

Spacious room (n): a large room



Example: a **spacious** house/living room

To be crowned (v): to invest with regal dignity and power.

Example: Queen Elizabeth II was **crowned** (queen) in 1953. (= made queen in a special ceremony)

To leave someone far behind (n): you go away permanently from them.

Example: Three years later, the company had left all its close rivals far **behind**.

Absorption (n): the process by which one thing absorbs or is absorbed by another.

Example: Some poisonous gases can enter the body by **absorption** through the skin.

In deference to something (phrase): out of respect for; in consideration of.

Example: She covered her head **in deference to** Muslim custom.

Couch potato (n): a person who takes little or no exercise and watches a lot of television.

Example: A **couch potato** is a person who watches a lot of television and does not have an active life

Part 3

1 Where do people in Vietnam like to live, in a house or an apartment?

People in Vietnam **prefer** private houses due to the overwhelming part of the population **dwelling** in private houses. However, an increasing number of citizens, especially in cities, choose to live in apartments as a result of the population explosion, which has triggered a substantial rise in the prices of private houses.

2 What are the benefits of living in a house?

The first benefit of living in a house is that one can **get a clearer sense of** privacy as they do not face as much neighbour-**driven** trouble as those living in apartments. Also, it is worth highlighting the extent to which citizens living in their own houses can save money usually spent on different areas such as security or public area cleaning services.

3 Why do many people like to live in the city?

The answer is more than simple - convenience. Not only can people enjoy more convenience in terms of shopping and services, but they can also have the chance to send their children to **elite** schools. Viewed from another perspective, those who prefer a **hectic** life tend to live in the city as it offers them enough **hustle and bustle**.



4 Where do people like to live: in the city centre or the suburbs?

Many people want to live in the city centre. This can be clearly seen in the case of Ho Chi Minh city. People tend to live close to District 1 and District 3 as a majority of companies and offices are based here. Most people live in District 2 and District 7.

Vocabulary

To give preference to something (phrase): to treat someone or something better than someone or something else

Example: The city **gives preference to** job applicants who live there.

To dwell (v): live in or at a specified place.

Example: She **dwelt in** remote parts of Asia for many years.

To feel a/an + adj + sense of something (phrase): A feeling or display of relief that something particularly stressful, unpleasant, or undesirable has been avoided or completed.

Example: He **felt a deep sense of relief** after the phone call

cost-driven: Cost-driven business models focus on minimizing costs wherever possible.

Example: The company's policies are essentially **cost-driven**.

Elite: a select group that is superior in terms of ability or qualities to the rest of a group or society.

Example: Ha Noi – Amsterdam and Le Hong Phong are two of the **elite** schools in Vietnam.

Hectic (adj): full of incessant or frantic activity.

Example: The area has become a haven for people tired of the **hectic** pace of city life.

Hustle and bustle (idiom): A large amount of activity and work, usually in a noisy surrounding.

Example: I love the **hustle and bustle** of the marketplace.



60. Describe a successful small company that you know

You should say

- What it is
- How you knew about it
- How it became successful
- And explain how you felt about it

Sample Answer

(what it is)

The term **entrepreneur** has been **all the rage** recently as thousands of successful start-ups deliver motivational speeches to inspire entrepreneurship. Among different kinds of start-ups, Trinh homestay, located in the Mekong Delta, has emerged as one of the most successful ones in the prime age of tourism in Vietnam.

(how you knew about it)

AirBnB, an app which supports homestays has succeeded in running marketing campaigns and offering lots of deals for both customers and homeowners; it is regarded as an ideal alternative to traditional hotels, which will **cost customers an arm and a leg**. Facebook and Instagram have been flooded with thousands of posts about AirBnB services and some months ago, I **stumbled on** Trinh homestay.

(how it became successful)

An article on CNN **cast a spotlight on** Trinh homestay, helping her homestay gain independence from AirBnB. First, Trinh homestay was just like millions of other homestays on AirBnB; however, Trinh's creativity and ardour for the Vietnamese culture lifted her first homestay out of AirBnB as Trinh homestay expanded. Trinh has built many homestays in other provinces in the Mekong Delta.

(and explain how you felt about it)

I believe that Trinh homestay, albeit operated on a small scale, should be an **exemplifier** of the importance of creativity as well as well-equipped with the knowledge of the local culture. Also, her success can be attributed to the fact that she alone has built a small **niche business** that caters for culture enthusiasts and **ran her business** on her own during the first days of Trinh Homestay. Other homestays in Vietnam should follow this model, creating an atmosphere that represents the local region's culture right in the place where tourists stay.

Part 3

- 1 Which do you prefer, family firms or non-family ones?



I prefer non-family businesses because they tend to be more organised. Meanwhile, family firms are significantly less professional as employees in this kind of business are not trained in a standard way.

2 What are the important factors in making a company successful?

The critical factor which **springs to my mind** is the human resource. While it's undeniable that technology plays an integral role in delivering success to a company, it is the human resource that **has control over** technology and operates it.

3 What kinds of qualities should a successful business person have?

Common sense, of course. This is a quality which everyone should have, not only successful businessmen. Moreover, a successful business person should also be able to **formulate visionary policies** and strategies.

4 What emerging industries do you know?

To the best of my knowledge, some emerging industries are tourism and beauty. Vietnam's tourism industry has been expanding at a **double-digit** rate, at least 10% for the past five years. Meanwhile, the beauty industry is also growing very fast as the consumption of cosmetics is growing 5% per year.

Vocabulary

Entrepreneur (n): An entrepreneur is an individual who creates a new business, bearing most of the risks and enjoying most of the rewards.

Example: He's an **entrepreneur** who made his money in computer software.

To run business (phrase): to operate, to direct, to oversee, to manage (a business, a company)

Example: He runs a dry cleaning **business**.



61. Describe a place you remember well that full of colour

You should say

- Where it is
- What it is like
- What it is used for
- And explain why you remember it well.

Sample Answer

(Where it is)

During my trip to Singapore last year, I had an opportunity to visit the Singapore Botanic Gardens, which was a place filled with different colours. The gardens are located quite far away from **tourist traps**, but very **accessible** by bus.

(What it is like)

Being the biggest botanic garden in Singapore, covering more than 74,000 square meters, it **showcases** Singapore's biggest collection of flowers comprising hundreds of species with a wide variety of colours, such as red, yellow, orange, pink, or even blue, and their shades. The national flower of Singapore, which is the orchid, can be found easily in this garden. Moreover, the park's entrance is also naturally decorated with colourful flowers.

(What it is used for)

The Botanic garden is an ideal spot not only for foreign visitors but also for Singapore citizens to **immerse themselves in** natural beauty and **get away from it all** after hardworking days. You can easily see **hordes of tourists going sightseeing** or leisure activities conducted at this place, especially on the weekends.

And explain why you remember it well

Well, I think the primary reason why the memories about this place are still **vivid** in my mind is that it was the first time I have ever witnessed such a wide variety of colourful flowers in my life. The moment I entered the garden, I was utterly **blown away** by its beauty. It was a **once in a lifetime** experience. I hope that I will have opportunities to revisit this garden.

Part 3

1 Is colour important for clothing?

Yes, I do think that colours play a vital role in clothes since it decides how we appear to other people. Sometimes the colours of your outfits even express your feelings. For example, when I'm not in a good mood, I will choose a black outfit.



2 Should the course books be colourful?

Absolutely. I believe that course books should be **lively** to help in the effective transmission of knowledge to readers. Using illustrations aids in learning and may be more effective than just describing something. For example, kids are usually in favour of books with colourful pictures rather than those with only words. If coursebooks include colourful contents, they are more likely to sell faster than other ones.

Vocabulary

Tourist trap

Meaning: somewhere where too many tourists go

Example: There are a lot of people visiting Hoi An Ancient Town these days, which makes this town become a **tourist trap**.

Accessible

Meaning: possible to approach, enter, or use

Example: The island is **accessible** only by ferry.

To get away from it all

Meaning: to take a holiday to escape a busy or stressful lifestyle

Example: Why don't you **get away from it all** and have a weekend in the mountains?

Hordes of tourist

Meaning: crowds of tourists

Example: During summer, we can see **hordes of tourists** in these islands.

To go sightseeing

Meaning: to look around the tourist sites

Example: Last year we went to London, and we spent most of the trip **going sightseeing**, there was so much to see!

To showcase

Meaning: to show the best qualities or parts of something

Example: The main aim of the exhibition is to **showcase** British design.

Immerse oneself in something

Meaning: to become completely involved in something

Example: She got some books out of the library and **immersed herself in** Jewish history and culture.

Vivid



Meaning: brightly colored or (of descriptions or memories) producing clear, powerful, and detailed images in the mind

Example: He gave a very **vivid** and often shocking account/description of his time in prison.

To be blown away

Meaning: To be surprised so much

Example: Winning first prize and a full scholarship **blew her away**.

Once-in-a-lifetime

Meaning: An once-in-a-lifetime experience or opportunity is very special because you will probably only have it once

Example: A tour of Australia is a **once-in-a-lifetime experience**.

Dull

Meaning: not interesting or exciting in any way

Example: I find his art rather **dull** and conventional.

Lively

Meaning: full of energy and enthusiasm; interesting and exciting

Example: There was some **lively** discussion at the meeting.





62. Describe a time you do not tell your friend the truth

You should say

- What happened
- Why you did not tell the truths
- Who you did not tell the truth to
- And explain how you feel about it

Sample Answer

(What happened)

Well, I have to say that I am not used to telling lies. I'm not perfect, and indeed, no one is. During my high school days, **sitting exams** was **nerve-wracking**, which . However, there was a time I **fell behind with my studies** and got a D in Chemistry test. Therefore, I **was left with no choice** but to **make up** a story

(Why you did not tell the truth)

I had always been a little boy to my parents, especially to my mom, who **spoilt** me a lot. To **live up to my parent's expectations**, I had to study under a lot of pressure to make them proud. I still remember sitting the chemistry exam, and I felt that I was going to fail the test. The moment I received the test result from my teacher, I was anxious. Therefore, I had to lie to my parents so that I could avoid getting **punished** and **letting my parents down**.

(Who you did not tell the truth to)

It was my parents to whom I lied. Having known the result, I came home with a nervous look on my face. I informed my parents about my test results immediately. Surprisingly, they believed me without any **suspicion**. However, my school texted the result to my mother, and they got to know that I had fooled them. I got **detention** for one week, and I wasn't allowed to use my mobile phone.

(And explain how you feel about it)

My parents were **pissed off** about the lie. Seeing how they reacted to my test result, I wished that I had not lied.

Part 3

1 Do people in your country judge people when they lie?

Yes, I do think that people will be judged when they lie to someone. Vietnamese people usually say "**Fool me once, shame on you. Fool me twice, shame on me**", and I believe it is



true. For example, if a company fails to make their promises to their counterparts, they are less likely to be chosen for the forthcoming projects.

2 How should we tell if it's a white lie or not?

Well, there are some ways to find out if a person is telling a white lie. We can focus on their facial expressions. For example, if a person is telling a white lie, their eyes will dart **back and forth**, which indicates that they are feeling uncomfortable.

3 Is it acceptable to tell white lies?

I think there are times when it is suitable to tell white lies to other people. It is the time when they are asking about something that they like, like their haircut or maybe their makeup. When they think that they are glowing with a new skincare product or are proud of their achievements, we may not be necessarily impressed by it. But we can tell a white lie in those situations.

4 When do people often lie?

There are various reasons why people often lie. However, I think the key reason why they may lie regularly is that they don't want to disappoint other people. For example, I lied to my friend about her haircut, which was not great because I was worried that the truth might worsen our relationship.

5 Why do some people keep telling lies?

Maybe because some people consider telling lies an **inconsequential** issue; therefore, it gradually becomes a habit, and they cannot give up on it. For example, my friend had to lie to her parents about her test results, and day by day, she **was accustomed to** lying to other people.

Vocabulary

Sitting exams

Meaning: To take an exam

Example: If my teacher hadn't convinced me to **sit for** the SAT, I never would have gotten into college.

Fall behind with your studies

Meaning: to progress less quickly than others

Example: He was ill for six weeks and **fell behind with his schoolwork**.

Nerve-wracking

Meaning: difficult to do and causes a lot of worry for the person involved in it

Example: My wedding was the most **nerve-wracking** thing I've ever experienced.



Left someone with no choice

Meaning: to make someone feel that they must do something

Example: I was **left with no choice** but to report him.

To make up something

Meaning: To invent an excuse, a story, etc., often in order to deceive

Example: I was trying to **make up** a good excuse for being late.

Spoil

Meaning: To treat someone very or too well, especially by being extremely generous

Example: When I'm feeling miserable I go shopping and **spoil** myself - a couple of new dresses always make me feel better.

Live up to something

Meaning: To be as good as something

Example: The concert was brilliant - it **lived up to all our expectations**.

Punish

Meaning: to cause someone who has done something wrong or committed a crime to suffer, by hurting them, forcing them to pay money, sending them to prison, etc.

Example: He **punished** the class by giving them extra work.

Let someone down

Meaning: Fail to support or help someone as they had hoped or expected.

Example: I promised Sophie I would meet her and I can't **let her down**.

Suspicion

Meaning: doubt or lack of trust

Example: Since they discovered the truth about his background, his colleagues have regarded him with **suspicion**.

Detention

Meaning: a form of punishment in which children are made to stay at school for a short time after classes have ended

Example: She's had four **detentions** this term.

To be pissed off about something

Meaning: annoyed

Example: She seemed a bit **pissed off** that she hadn't been invited.

"Fool me once, shame on you. Fool me twice, shame on me"



Meaning: After being tricked once, one should learn from one's mistakes and avoid being tricked in the same way again.

Back and forth

Meaning: Moving first in one direction and then in the opposite one

Example: She swayed gently **back and forth** to the music.

Inconsequential

Meaning: Not important

Example: Most of what she said was pretty **inconsequential**.

To be accustomed to

Meaning: Familiar with something

Example: I'm not **accustomed to** being treated like this





63. Describe a leisure activity you do with your family

You should say

- What it is
- When you do it
- Where you do it

Sample Answer

And explain how you feel about it (*What it is*):

My family **fancies** at cooking, and we always prefer **home cooked food**. We **feast** on weekends. However, I would like to talk about the time when my family gathered to make Chung cake for the Tet holiday.

(*When you do it*)

The Lunar New Year, or Tet, is a traditional holiday in my country. It was probably my most favourite holiday when I was a small boy as my family did a lot of activities to celebrate this occasion. Among them, making Chung cake made me excited the most. Traditionally, we always make Chung Cake 2 days **before** Lunar New Year.

(*Where you do it*)

We had a big **yard** behind our house, and it was where Chung Cake was made, from preparing ingredients, to shaping the cake. I still remember helping my parents prepare the ingredients for the cake while my older brother was in charge of shaping the cake. And then, my father lit a small fire to boil the cake overnight. It was perhaps the only time of the year when I was allowed to **stay up** late.

(*And explain how you feel about it*)

In recent years, my family has not had enough time to make Chung cake. However, to me, a **ready-made** Chung cake bought from a local market cannot bring the warmth and taste of a Chung cake made from home. I hope that my family can continue the tradition in the coming years.

Part 3

1 Do men and women enjoy the same leisure activities?

I don't think so. I believe that men and women are born with **distinct** characteristics and personalities; therefore, their choices of leisure activities might also differ from each other. For example, while men tend to be involved in sporty activities, women prefer shopping or eating out with their friends to playing sports.



2 What types of leisure activities are popular in your country?

Well, there is undoubtedly a wide variety of hobbies in my country. I think the most popular would be travelling. For example, a **getaway** from the **hustle and bustle** of city life to coastal cities on weekends can help people **relieve** stress.

3 Why is it important for people to have time for leisure activities?

Spending time on leisure activities plays a vital role in shaping people's state of health. It helps us recharge our energy after a **nerve-wracking** day, and avoids getting **overloaded**. For example, reading books when you have free time enables you to **let off some steam** after working under a lot of pressure.

4 Why are some activities more popular than others?

It is quite natural that people would prefer some sorts of leisure activities than others. I believe that the history and **socio-cultural** background of a nation influences the type of leisure activities people do. For example, teenagers in some Asian countries often make kites and fly them while this is not the case in many western countries.

5 Are there types of leisure activities that are as popular today as those that were popular when your parents were young?

No, as time has gone by, the popularities of leisure activities have also changed. For example, when our parents were young, activities like watching TV/movies, visiting some famous cafés/restaurants and visiting families/relatives were more popular. But, today, activities like visiting a gym nearby, shopping, and playing video games have grown equally famous because of technological advancements and increasing awareness of health and fashion.

Vocabulary

Home-cooked food

Meaning: Food cooked at home from individual ingredients

Example: The menu offers a range of **home-cooked** meals, from hearty soups to stacked sandwiches to sizzling steaks.

Fancy

Meaning: Like

Example: I didn't **fancy** swimming in that water.

Feast

Meaning: A special meal with very good food or a large meal for many people

Example: We had a **feast** of fresh seafood.



Stay up

Meaning: To go to bed later than usual

Example: We **stayed up (late)** to watch a film.

Ready-made

Meaning: Bought or found in a finished form and available to use immediately

Example: I didn't sew the curtains – they came **ready-made**.

Distinct

Meaning: Clearly separate and different (from something else)

Example: The two concepts are quite **distinct** (from each other).

A getaway

Meaning: A vacation

Example: Let's make a **getaway** to an island.

Hustle and bustle

Meaning: Busy and frenetic activity or excitement.

Example: I love living among the **hustle and bustle** of the city.

Relieve

Meaning: To improve an unpleasant situation

Example: New toll roads could help **relieve** congestion on other routes.

Nerve-wracking

Meaning: difficult to do and causes a lot of worry for the person involved in it

Example: My wedding was the most **nerve-wracking** thing I've ever experienced.

Overloaded

Meaning: To give someone more work or problems than they can deal with

Example: Try not to **overload** yourself with work.

Let off steam

Meaning: To do or say something that helps you to get rid of strong feelings or energy

Example: She jogs after work to **let off steam**.

Socio-cultural

Meaning: Related to the different groups of people in society and their habits, traditions, and beliefs

Example: A good doctor has the ability to relate to the **sociocultural** background of his or her patients.



64. Describe a time you were sleepy but had to stay awake

You should say

- When it was
- Why you had to stay awake
- How you kept yourself awake
- And explain how you felt about it

Sample Answer

(When)

I consider myself a **night owl**; therefore, having a **white night** is not difficult for me. Today, I would like to talk about a night I had to stay awake, to bake the Chung Cake for Lunar New Year.

(Why you had to stay awake)

You probably know that Tet or Lunar New Year is one of the biggest festivals in Vietnam. There are a lot of activities taking place before the Lunar New Year, and baking Chung Cake is one of them, which excites me the most. However, the process of making Chung cake is **time-consuming** and requires the contribution of several people. It takes up to 12 hours for the cake to be baked. Therefore, my cousins and I had to spend the whole night preparing the cake.

(How you kept yourself awake)

To stop **falling asleep** while waiting for the Chung Cake to be baked, I drank a cup of Vietnamese black-iced coffee, which kept me awake, the whole night. Moreover, my cousins also spent a white night with me, and we kept talking until dawn.

And explain how you felt about it

After the cake had been baked, I became **worn out** and wanted to hit the bed as quick as possible. I had to say that I **slept like a rock** after having a white night. However, it was a memorable experience for me. I fondly recall the traditional activities of Tet and the time spent with family members.

Part 3

1 What are some advantages to getting enough sleep?

Sleep plays a vital role in shaping people's health. It helps us recharge our energy after a **nerve-wracking** day, avoids being **overloaded**. For example, an 8-hour sleep is believed to



help people work efficiently and boost their productivity. If people don't get enough sleep, they can find it difficult to concentrate on their tasks.

2 How do people in your country keep track of their sleep?

I believe that in this day and age, people in my country can take advantage of cutting-edge devices to be aware of their sleep. Such applications have been invented to **analyze** their sleep patterns and even give them some recommendations such as listening to the ocean waves or raindrops, which will help them sleep better. If it were not for those applications, they might not know what problems they are facing.

3 How do you avoid falling asleep when you are at a meeting?

I think that the critical factor which keeps people awake in a meeting is that they should go to bed earlier than usual, else the tiredness caused due to the insufficient sleep will **drain their energy** the next day. Moreover, caffeine may also be another option to help people avoid **nodding off** in the meeting. For example, I usually drink a cup of coffee before going to work, which keeps me charged all day.

Vocabulary

A night owl

Meaning: A person who prefers to be awake and active at night

Example: My wife's a **night owl**, but I like to be in bed by 10 o'clock.

A white night

Meaning: A sleepless night.

Example: I had a **white night** because of stomach ache

Time-consuming

Meaning: Takes a lot of time to do

Example: Producing a dictionary is a very **time-consuming** job.

To fall asleep

Meaning: To begin sleeping

Example: I'd better get out before I fall asleep.

Worn out

Meaning: Extremely tired

Example: They were **worn out** after their long walk.

Sleep like a rock

Meaning: To experience a very deep and restful sleep; to sleep soundly.

Example: I have to set numerous alarms for the morning because I **sleep like a rock** every night!

**Nerve-wracking**

Meaning: difficult to do and causes a lot of worry for the person involved in it

Example: My wedding was the most **nerve-racking** thing I've ever experienced.

Overload

Meaning: To give someone more work or problems than they can deal with

Example: Try not to **overload** yourself with work.

Analyze

Meaning: To examine carefully and in detail so as to identify causes, key factors, possible results

Example: In the article, several experienced diplomats **analyzed** the president's foreign policy.

Drain (someone or something) of (something)

Meaning: To cause someone or something to lose some ability or quality, often energy.

Example: Eleanor has such a pessimistic attitude that being around her just **drains me of energy**.

Nod off

Meaning: To begin sleeping, especially not intentionally

Example: After our busy day, we both sat and **nodded off** in front of the TV.



65. Describe clothes you wear on special occasions

You should say:

- What they are
- Where you buy them
- Why you wear them
- And what people think about them

Sample Answer

(What they are)

Most of the time, I prefer to dress in clothes that I feel **at ease**. For special occasions, therefore, I like to wear smart but casual trousers, white blouses and sometimes a jacket. When the social event I attend requires a higher level of formality, suits, and formal shoes would be my choice.

(Where you buy them)

Well, most of my casual clothes come from common fashion **brands**, like Zara or H&M, because they are relatively **affordable**. However, I do **set higher standards for** my formal clothes, especially in terms of the materials. Therefore, I occasionally buy some quality white blouses from a first-class fashion **brand**. I have sometimes ordered clothes online for special occasions, but I prefer to try them on. I have to admit that I also like the wide range of choice in the shops.

(Why you wear them)

I prefer the combination of a blouse and formal trousers for many reasons. Despite being a girl, I find wearing dresses or skirts uncomfortable. Besides, a white blouse is **suitable** for people of any age or gender and almost all occasions. Usually, formal clothes would make you look more mature, but a combination of a white blouse with trousers will give you a smart and **youthful** look.

(And what people think about them)

My family members like to see me wearing formal clothes. For others, I think this look conveys politeness and respect. My friends prefer me in elegant, feminine dresses, as a girl in a white blouse may not impress others. But, I prefer to **dismiss these traditional ideas**. For special occasions, I like to go by my choice, rather than wear the clothes that others would choose if they were me.

Vocabulary

to dismiss traditional ideas



Meaning: to decide that traditional ideas are not important and not worth considering anymore.

Example: We should not **dismiss traditional ideas** without considering them carefully.

at ease [expression]: relaxed and comfortable

Eg: From the moment that I entered the friendly atmosphere of the classroom, I felt completely **at ease**.

brand [noun]: the name of a product produced or sold by a particular company.

Eg: It was to become the leading **brand** of specialty coffee in North America.

affordable [adjective]: not expensive.

Eg: The shop in town always sells nice clothes at **affordable** prices.

set (high/low) standards for something [expression]: set a level of quality that people expect and generally accept as normal.

Eg: Banks in Hong Kong and China **are setting higher standards for** customer service in call centres.

suitable [adjective]: appropriate and fitting the occasion

Eg: This hotel has a large play area, so it is **suitable** for families with young children.

youthful [adjective]: having the qualities that are typical of young people.

Eg: At the time I admired his **youthful** enthusiasm.

childlike [adjective]: showing the good qualities that children have, such as trusting people, being honest and enthusiastic.

Eg: She has a somewhat **childlike** innocence surrounding her.

Part 3

1 What factors do you think affect the clothes we choose to wear?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Well, I think our choices of clothes are decided mainly by circumstances and personal **preferences**. *(Explain your reason or reasons)* On the one hand, your dress code will either be formal or casual, depending on the event you attend. **A person's sense of fashion** also plays a considerable role in the choices of outfits. *(Give an example - often a personal example)* For instance, on occasions that require formality, I prefer white shirts and trousers to elegant dresses, as it suits me the most.

2 Is it possible to look good without spending lots of money on clothes?



(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, possibly (Explain your reason or reasons)

It is not **extravagance** but rather a person's taste of fashion and other factors that make himself or herself truly attractive. (Give an example - often a personal example)) From my own experience, I have a lot of peers who know how **to mix and match** different items of clothing that go well together. Surprisingly, many of their clothes are secondhand or **bargains** from cheap markets. (Explain the opposite or alternative) However, quality clothes do help improve one's overall appearance, so they are certainly worth the money.

3 Does the fashion shows have an impact on what we are wearing?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, to people who are dedicated followers of fashion. (Explain your reason or reasons) Fashion shows never fail to introduce and **promote** the latest fashion trends, which people can follow to look more trendy. (Give an example - often a personal example)) For myself, although I enjoy watching the latest fashion shows with fabulous models, clothes from these shows do not suit my everyday style, and of course, they are **more often than not** too costly.

4 Do you think fashion trends are changing constantly?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, undoubtedly. (Explain your reason or reasons) Fashion is an **ever-changing** industry because of external factors, including seasonal change and the influence of **trendsetters**, such as fashion designers and celebrities. Practically, a trend, by definition, doesn't last. (Give an example - often a personal example)) If you follow this industry closely, you will understand it's not only changing, sometimes old fashion trends also make a comeback, e.g. crop top, boot-cut jeans, white eyeliner. (Explain the opposite or alternative) However, some kinds of clothes are always favoured, such as jeans or T-shirts. These classics are those that rarely change and look good no matter what other "trends" are going on.

5 Do you think people behave differently in different kinds of clothes?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Certainly. I once read a quote by Caitlin Moran that helps express this perfectly, which is: "When a woman says 'I have nothing to wear!' What she really means is, 'there's nothing here for who I'm supposed to be today.' " (Explain your reason or reasons) We use clothes in connection to the roles we're going to play. (Give an example - often a personal example)) For instance, someone who dressed **immaculately** in a party is more likely to attract interest and attention, which **in return** would make that person feel more confident.

6 Are people's ideas about fashion today the same as people's ideas at previous times?



(Give a direct answer to the question) Probably no. (Explain your reason or reasons) Fashion is regarded more highly these days than it once was. (Give an example - often a personal example)). When interacting with your mom or granny, you will find that their concept of fashion will undoubtedly contrast with each other and that of your own, which shows that ideas about fashion vary from generation to generation.

Vocabulary

preference [noun]: the fact that you like something or someone more than another thing or person.

Eg: Her **preference** is for comfortable rather than stylish clothes.

extravagant [adjective]: extreme and unreasonable.

Eg: The product does not live up to the **extravagant** claims of the advertisers.

to mix and match [expression]: to combine in a harmonious or interesting way, as articles of clothing in an ensemble.

Eg: Gary likes **to mix and match** clothes for different events.

bargain [noun]: something on sale at a lower price than its true value.

Eg: This coat was half-price - a real **bargain**.

to promote [verb]: to encourage people to like, buy, use, do, or support something.

Eg: Advertising companies are always having to think up new ways **to promote** products.

more often than not [expression]: most of the time.

Eg: **More often than not**, a student will come up with the right answer.

ever-changing [adjective]: constantly changing or developing.

Eg: The key to success is adapting to the **ever-changing** conditions.

trendsetter [noun]: a person, organization, etc. that starts new fashions, especially in clothes.

Eg: They are not only the biggest fast food chain, but also the industry's **trendsetter**.

immaculately [adverb]: extremely neatly and tidily; perfectly:

Eg: The new manager arrived, dressed **immaculately** in a smart, new suit.

in return [expression]: in exchange.

Eg: Some tenants get rent reductions **in return** for help managing the building.



66. Describe a time when you missed an appointment

You should say:

- where it happened
- what it was about
- why you missed it
- and explain how you felt after missing the appointment.

Sample Answer

Many times, my friends accuse me of having an eidetic memory. I'm generally well planned and manage to do things on the dot. But there was once an embarrassing moment when there was a slip, and I forgot an important appointment.

(where it happened) (what it was about) (why you missed it) Then, I was working for "ABC" company. I was frustrated with my job and was looking for a change. So I was attending many interviews. Luckily, one of them materialized, and I was selected for the HR round. My HR interview was scheduled at 9:00 AM on the 10th of October. I was excited. But the "ABC" company wanted me to travel to Punjab for a business requirement on the 8th of October. They booked my flight tickets. I was confident that I could juggle between the two. I travelled to Punjab, finished my assignment, and was returning on the 9th of October. I came home at around 11:00 PM and slept like a log. I did set the alarm for 6:00 AM. But when the alarm rang in the morning, I turned it off and continued to sleep only to wake up at 11:00 AM. Cursing my laziness, I looked at my phone. There were five missed calls from the HR. I called back, but she did not pick up. I tried to reach her many times, and she picked the call at 3:00 PM. She seemed annoyed and told me that they had selected some other candidate who was on time. I pleaded with her to give me another chance, but she remained obstinate.

(explain how you felt after missing the appointment) I felt very bad about losing a good opportunity. Out of vexation, I threw the alarm clock down, and it broke into pieces. It took me some time to regain my composure. I realized that it was my mistake, and from then on, I never do two things simultaneously.

Vocabulary

Eidetic (adj) - relating to or denoting mental images having unusual vividness and detail, as if actually visible.

Eg: Neena's was appreciated by the teacher for her eidetic memory.

On the dot (idiom) - exactly on time.

Eg: Jack was on the dot for the meeting.



slip (noun) - a fall to a lower level or standard.

Eg: There has been a slip in Nisha's scores post her mother's death

Juggle (verb) -to do (several things) at the same time

Eg: She juggled between cleaning and cooking.

Sleep like a log (idiom) - sleep soundly

Eg: After a hard day's work, Mr. Das slept like a log.

Part 3

1 What do you think are some acceptable reasons for delaying an appointment?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Postponing an appointment may happen due to several reasons. When an unforeseen task takes priority, we have no choice but to reschedule the current appointment. In cases where there is no adequate data such as a crucial scan report not ready, we have to wait till we get the reports. When it is an interview, and the candidate is not well prepared, he/she may request more time for preparation.

2 How do people usually arrange a meeting with someone else (or, others)?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) At work or business, the concerned person writes an email and invites others(or clients) to the meeting. The email usually contains the agenda of the meeting, pain areas to be worked out and the time and venue of the meeting. If it's a video conference, details about joining the call are included in the email. Sometimes the email is also followed by a telephone call to confirm the availability of people.

In olden days, if it's a meeting in the neighbourhood, the president of the area usually issues a circular or notice regarding the meeting. Nowadays, this is also done by email.

3 Where do people meet?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Well, they need not always be a restaurant. If it is for a business involving two executives, they may even arrange a meeting in the airport lounge, (if the agenda is very secretive). But generally, people in high positions book a table in a hotel, to discuss business. Employees in an organisation usually meet in a conference room, officially. Again it varies based on the purpose. If the employee wants to talk something out of his heart, he may decide to meet his colleague in a coffee shop too.

4



4. In what sorts of places do people see each other (= meet) without pre-arranging a meeting?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) People meet each other accidentally in airports, railway stations and even in the car parking area. They may also happen to meet in the cafeteria, pantry, coffee shop, pubs or bars. People also see each other at parties because you don't get to know all the invitees. Besides, people also meet on roadsides when they stop to have a snack.

5 What sorts of things do you think people need to (or, should) plan for in their lives?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) People need to plan themselves for unforeseen health conditions like heart attack or cancer. They need to have the insurances handy. Proper investments must be made for stabilizing finance in the later stages of life. Education, be it w.r.t to the person, e.g., upskilling or their kids should be planned carefully. Youngsters need to plan well before getting into family commitments.

6 Do you think it's important to have a daily plan?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Planning helps to reduce stress. When you know the order in which the tasks have to be carried out, there is less slippage. When you know the time taken for a particular task, it will be easier to plan for the next day. Being organised will help the person to complete work on time and also to do some additional activities. **(Give an example)** For example, if he has a family, he can spend quality time with his spouse and kids as well.

7 Do you think there are things that people can't plan for?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) There is no such thing in the world. We can plan for everything until death. People argue that we have to control diseases or death, but we can plan our diet regime, and there are health insurances that will help us deal with the sudden onset of diseases. Infact, people plan things after their death by writing a will. They decide who should enjoy their property. We have advanced mechanisms to detect earthquakes and tsunamis beforehand that allows us to plan for evacuations.

8 How important do you think it is to have a good balance between work and non-work time (a "work-life" balance) in one's life?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Work-life balance is essential for maintaining happiness levels. It reduces stress and improves the physical and mental well being of the individual. It also helps a person to be more productive at work and boosts creativity. Also, it brings a sense of satisfaction. Recent studies indicate that many successful people have a good work-life balance.



Vocabulary

unforeseen (adj) - not anticipated or predicted.

Eg: Amy wanted to make herself financially sound, in order to meet any unforeseen expenditure

Agenda (noun) - a list of items to be discussed at a formal meeting.

Eg: Environment safety was their main agenda in the meeting.

lounge (noun) - a public room in a hotel, theatre, or club in which to sit and relax.

Eg: Her new villa has got a lounge.

Accidentally (adverb) - by chance; inadvertently.

Eg: Tom stepped into the room accidentally.

commitments(noun) - the state or quality of being dedicated to a cause, activity, etc.

Eg: His commitment to work prevented him from attending the party.





67. Describe a meal (or dinner) that you especially enjoyed

You should say:

- where it was (and when)
- what you ate
- who you were with
- and explain why you enjoyed it so much.

Sample Answer

The best way to strike a man's heart is through his stomach. And that's how my friend manages to win all of us. She hosts a party now and then. But it was her mother's home-cooked lunch, which impressed me a lot.

(where it was (and when)) (what you ate) (who you were with) It was a time when all of us had finished University and were about to join work. Everyone had an offer from the same company but allotted in different cities across the country. So my friend Yakshi, a party lover, invited all of us to her home for dinner. I inquired why she did not arrange it in a hotel, for which she replied that it was her mom who was throwing the party. We went to her home much before dinner time, and her mom was busy in the kitchen. At 8:00 PM sharp, she set the table and invited all of us. The lunch began with a bowl of tomato soup. It's peppery aroma was compelling. As I had one sip of it, I was amazed at the preparation. It tasted like heaven. Then she served some vegetable starters, which were very crispy and yummy. For the main course, she served rice, piquant curries, and some exotic far-fars. Kalakand and kheer followed it. It was the tastiest meal I'd ever had.

(and explain why you enjoyed it so much) Yakshi's mother treated all of us like her own children. Infact, the maid did not turn up that day, and she washed the plates and cleaned the table, all on her own. She refused to accept our help. She also advised all of us to stay in touch with her. Her love and affection moved us. Tasty food, combined with a lot of love made the day memorable. I remember her hospitality until today.

Vocabulary

throw a party (idiom) - Put on or hold a social gathering

Eg: The company threw a party for winning a business deal.

aroma (noun) - a distinctive typically pleasant smell.

Eg: The sweet aroma of the flowers filled the air



yummy (adj) - (of food) delicious.

Eg: The flavoured corns were yummy.

Piquant (adj) - having a pleasantly sharp taste or appetizing flavour.

Eg: The piquant side dish complemented the rotis.

Far-far (idiom) - is an Indian snack food usually deep fried.

Eg: She sold vegetable far-fars which were very tasty.

Part 3

- 1** What do you think are the differences between eating normal meals at home and going out to eat a special meal?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) At home, we take great care in the ingredients used. We don't include anything harmful, just because it adds taste. So, eating at home is safe even though it seems normal and sometimes tasteless. On the contrary, when we go out to hotels which are primarily interested in minting money and don't concentrate on the health aspect, we are definitely in for a resplendent meal. It's completely agreeable to eat out once in a while. But we cannot enjoy it on a daily basis.

- 2** Do you have any idea why, when world leaders gather for a special meeting they also have a special meal (a banquet) together?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Food is a tactful way of creating relationships. Sometimes food has turned political enemies into allies. Also, food influences the thought process. It is an excellent way to know the preferences of other people. When world leader A from America is enjoying the kalakand from India, the Indian representative might get encouraged to talk to him/her. This casual conversation may build meaningful trade relationships between India and America.

- 3** Can you explain why food is such an important part of observing special occasions?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) There are interesting findings as to why food is an integral part of any celebration. Celebrations are seasonal. We prepare food using ingredients available in that season. **(Give an example)** For example, in the Springtime, Japan has a lot of cherry blossoms. So they celebrate a festival called Hanami in which they make sweet dishes with Sakura or cherry blossoms. In India, there are a wide range of festivals, and all of them involve preparations made out of fruits and vegetables which are specific to that season.

Also, we celebrate birthdays with cakes to indicate the joy and happiness and serve cold meals during the time of death to indicate sadness.



4 Why do you think different countries have different national dishes (or, different national cuisines)?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) There are certain items which become the staple food of the people in a particular area mainly because it is available abundantly in their soil or waters. **(Give an example)** For example, Sushi is one of the national dishes of Japan, because of their abundant catches of freshwater fishes from the Tokyo Bay. India does not seem to have any national dish, but rice and wheat are the staple food of the Indians. The meat pie is popular in Western countries for similar reasons.

5 Do you think it's important for people today to continue practising the traditional food (or, culinary) customs from their culture?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Yes, of course. Food is a legacy passed on from generations. If we don't introduce our traditional food preparations to our kids, they will never know where they belong. Food is an identity and heritage. It is an excellent way of inducing kids to take pride in their culture. Also, traditional food choices are proven good for our physical and mental well being.

Vocabulary

ingredients (noun) - any of the foods or substances that are combined to make a particular dish.

Eg: The chef listed out the ingredients to be used for the dish.

resplendent (adj) - attractive and impressive through being richly colourful or sumptuous.

Eg: The chef gave some resplendent food ideas.

tactful (adj) - having or showing skill and sensitivity in dealing with others or with difficult issues.

Eg: She was very tactful in selling pickles.

legacy (noun) - Something transmitted by or received from an ancestor or predecessor or from the past

Eg: This furniture is a legacy of her ancestors

Heritage noun) - a special or individual possession; an allotted portion.

Eg: There are many architectural masterpieces which are the heritage of the country.



68. Describe a foreign country or culture you would like to know more about

You should say:

- what country or culture
- where it is
- how you know about it
- and explain why you would like to know more about it.

Sample Answer

I love travelling. Meeting new people rejuvenates the mind and the soul. And I consider myself blessed to have itchy feet. I've been to some countries like the UK and Canada, but there is one place which I long to see. It is Japan.

(what country or culture) (where it is) (how you know about it) Japan is an island country situated in the east of Asia. It is quite a small country but has a rich history. From the moment I read about the Hiroshima and Nagasaki atomic bomb blasts in my history classes, I'm hankering to see this place. It is a motivational story of how they regained their status in the world by rising from the ruins.

(and explain why you would like to know more about it) I've also read some books on the culture of Japanese people. It was fascinating. I've heard that they are busy people and sometimes called workaholics. Also, it is a place which is susceptible to many volcano attacks and earthquakes. It is a mystery how they manage to live amongst these constant hurdles from nature. I want to meet those people and learn about their lifestyle and working methodologies.

They celebrate a flower festival called Ikebana which is spellbinding. They also celebrate the tea ceremony every season, which is one of the most riveting aspects of their culture. Infact, one of my friends who had been there got a couple of tea chocolates which tasted bitter and fuelled my desire to go there. There are no extreme summers or winters, which makes it an ideal place to live. But all these are, knowledge I gathered from books and friends. So I want to go there in person and enjoy the place.

Vocabulary

Itchy feet (idiom) - To want to travel or to do something new.

Eg: I think Tom's grandfather has itchy feet. He has gone on a world tour but still wants to go somewhere.



Hankering (adj) - a strong desire to have or do something.

Eg: He was hankering for a cup of tea.

susceptible (adj) - likely or liable to be influenced or harmed by a particular thing.

Eg: She was susceptible to cold.

spellbinding (adj) - holding one's attention completely as though by magic; fascinating.

Eg: The magic show was spellbinding

riveting (adj) - completely engrossing; compelling.

Eg: Keats' poems are riveting.

Part 3

1 What do you think is the best way to learn about a foreign (country or) culture?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Books and the internet are the best sources of information. Be it language, culture, food, music or places to visit; they are generous in providing data. But, it is through interacting with a foreigner that one learns best about their culture. Interaction opens doors to unexplored pathways. It can unlock interesting facts about the other person, their approach to different things etc.

2 What do you think are some of the main problems people face when they work in a foreign country?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) People face great challenges in getting the food they want. In most cases, people adapt themselves to the food of the foreign land. Also, there may be variations in the way they work. **(Give an example)** For example, Westerners enjoy the weekends compulsorily whereas Japanese may work all through the week to finish a project. Timelines for a project may vary based on the work culture. So if a person is accustomed to the western way of working, he may find it difficult to work on weekends.

3 Some people say that reading a book about another country or culture is the best way to learn about it. Do you agree?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Books are undeniably one of the best providers of knowledge. But with the advent of the internet, where you can start interacting with a foreigner in no time, people no longer read books. Also, when searching for a particular country, the internet displays pictures of the foreign land, its people, mode of travel, places to stay and must-see places. One may have to buy separate books for gaining information about each of these. Also, not all information on the internet can be found in books.



Vocabulary

Generous (adj) - showing a readiness to give more of something, especially money, than is strictly necessary or expected.

Eg: He was a generous man.

unexplored (adj) - (of a country or area) not investigated or mapped; not evaluated or discussed in detail.

Eg: The “ABC Tourism” contains details on unexplored areas of China.

adapt(verb) - become adjusted to new conditions.

Eg: The father adapted himself to the son’s ways of living.

Accustom (verb) - be used to.

Eg: Sita was accustomed to working late hours

undeniably (adj) - unable to be denied or disputed.

Eg: It is undeniable that Ram was innocent.





69. Describe an occasion when you wore your best clothes (or clothing)

You should say:

- when it was
- what you wore
- what they looked like
- and explain why you wore your best clothes.

Sample Answer

As the saying goes “Clothes make the man”, the way you dress reflects on the personality. Parties are occasions where one can exhibit their sense of style and fashion.

(when it was) (what you wore) (what they looked like) (and explain why you wore your best clothes) One of my friends was getting married in Kerala. Kerala brides are famous for their royal ways of dressing. So I decided to give my best as well. I hunted from shop to boutique in the busiest street of my city and finally decided upon a saree with rich embroidery in it. It was a sort of dark lavender with a thin silver border. Thin borders were trending then. I usually go for pastel colours but since it was a wedding I had to decide on something scintillating. I chose an embroidered silver blouse, as well.

In Kerala, the wedding hall was palatial. I was able to see many ladies in their traditional white sarees. The bride and groom were standing on the stage, beautifully decorated. As I stepped into the hall meekly, a lady whispered to me that my saree was gorgeous. Soon compliments started pouring in from various directions and made my day. I walked up to the stage and posed for the photos.

Days after the wedding, my friend gave me a call. She thanked me for coming and told me that many of her relatives wanted to know about my saree. I prided myself on winning appreciations from her relatives.

Vocabulary

Clothes make the man (proverb) - people are judged according to the way they are dressed.

Eg: “Tom, you better know that Clothes make the man”

embroidery (noun) - the art or pastime of embroidering cloth.

Eg: Sita is skilled in embroidery.

Pastel (adj) - of a soft and delicate shade of colour.



Eg: The shop had various designs of kurtas on pastel green.

scintillating (adj) - sparkling or shining brightly.

Eg: Sheela's diamond earrings were scintillating in the night. .

Pour in (phrase) - to arrive in overwhelming numbers

Eg: Soon after she placed the feng shui frog, wealth started pouring in.

Part 3

1 Do you think people really need to dress formally in the workplace?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) We need to ensure some discipline and decorum in our office. So we need to ensure that we dress appropriately. Many companies insist on formal attire because they are concerned about their esteem. As an employee, he/she will be representing the company to outsiders. Dressing formally boosts the image of the company. Also, employees may have to meet customers or clients on a regular basis. So it is mandatory to dress professionally.

2 Why do some people like to wear traditional clothes?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) There is mixed opinion on people who prefer traditional clothes. While some argue that they are old minded and unable to embrace the change, others say that they value culture and tradition, which is why they stick to traditional attire. Also, it depends on the comfort level of the individual.

3 Do you think traditional clothes will disappear in the future?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) I don't think so. Of late, people are craving for identity. People are urged to celebrate festivals and encouraged to wear traditional clothes for respective occasions. This is especially true in the case of people living in foreign countries. They have communities which create the occasion for people to wear traditional dresses and represent their country. It is largely because people want the future generations to know where they belong.

4 Do you think people change the style of clothes they wear as they get older?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) It varies based on the individual. Some people tend to dress conservatively as they get older. Others don't. Also, it depends on the fitness levels of the person. **(Give an example)** For example, if the person has become obese, he/she has to make careful choices. People in the age bracket (70 - 80) seem to prefer clothes which are weightless due to the ease of wearing.



Vocabulary

decorum (noun) - behaviour in keeping with good taste and propriety.

Eg: Jim maintained high levels of decorum when he was inside the premises.

esteem (noun) - respect and admiration.

Eg: "Sheela is studying in your esteemed institution."

embrace (verb) - accept (a belief, theory, or change) willingly and enthusiastically.

Eg: Raj embraced christianity.

craving (adj) - a powerful desire for something.

Eg: Tim's grandfather had a craving for sweets.

ease (noun) - absence of difficulty or effort.

Eg: She slid down the staircase with ease.





70. Describe an educational trip you went on in your school days

You should say

- where you went
- who you went with
- what you saw (or did) there
- and explain what you learned on that trip.

Sample Answer

Children in school are burdened with studies all the time and have very few opportunities to know the world. So I appreciate the idea of educational trips which helps the students to explore the world.

(where you went) (who you went with) (what you saw (or did) there) My school organised educational trips every year. But one of them still lingers in my memory. It was the trip we undertook when I was in the seventh grade. We were to be taken to a bird sanctuary. Everyone was thrilled at this idea. Soon there was a long queue in the library with everyone searching for books on birds. Our teachers asked us to observe the birds and record it in a notebook. Finally, the day arrived, and I travelled by school bus along with my classmates to the “Rangan Thittu bird sanctuary” in Mysore. All through the journey, we were discussing ideas to make notes. The place was covered with trees. We learnt that it was home to nearly 170 species of birds. Some exotic birds like Common spoonbill, Asian openbill stork, Woolly-necked stork, Lesser whistling duck, Spot-billed pelican were perching on the branches of the trees. It seemed that some birds started treating the sanctuary as their home. We diligently made notes of all our observations.

(and explain what you learned on that trip) I marvelled at God’s exotic creations. I learnt the movement of birds, ways to feed them, their food choices and how they manage such long flights etc. The visit is one of the motivational factors behind me opting for Biology in the Secondary school.

Vocabulary

burdened (verb) - cause (someone) worry, hardship, or distress.

Eg: The old lady was burdened with the thought of death



linger (verb) - be slow to disappear or die.

Eg: Thin neckline began trending from 1980s. But the fashion lingers on

queue (noun) - a line or sequence of people or vehicles awaiting their turn to be attended to or to proceed.

Eg: There was a long queue in front of the government office

Exotic (adj) - originating in or characteristic of a distant foreign country.

Eg: "these are some exotic species of plants. Take them"

perching (verb) - (of a bird) alight or rest on something.

Eg: The woodpecker perched on a bark .

Part 3

1 Do you think educational trips really do help promote learning?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Of course, yes. Since it is a form of practical learning, a student gains insightful experiences of the real world. The student will be able to appreciate better in a real-world atmosphere compared to the classroom environment. It fosters originality and freedom of thought. Since students undertake these trips as a group, it builds team spirit and togetherness.

2 How would you compare what children learn on educational trips (school excursions) to what they learn in the classroom?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Classroom learning is competitive. There are assignments and exams that follow it. So students are pressured to learn. All the more, it is inside a closed room. Conversely, in field trips, children don't have a fear of exams or grades and learn at their own pace. Their curiosity is aroused, and they learn more and better. Since students gain a thorough understanding, it will, in turn, improve performances in the classroom in those subjects.

3 What do you think is (or, should be) the role of the teacher during a school excursion?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) The teacher should allow the students to enjoy the new environment. Rather than the teacher explaining how a particular object is to be perceived, the students must be left on their own. Teachers should also encourage students to be creative. Besides, teachers can even silently notice how the students interact with one another, what enthral them and their reactions to a particular object. Eg, birds. This will enable the teacher to guide the students in a better way in the classroom.



4 What is the value for the children of going on such excursions with a teacher as opposed to going there with their parents, or going there alone?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) When going out with parents, the main goal is enjoyment. Parents use the time to spend more time with kids, and the whole idea behind it would be to have fun. When going alone, a student does observe things, but will not have an opportunity to share his ideas. On the contrary, going out on an educational trip with a teacher and classmates fulfills many objectives. It promotes team spirit, boosts creativity, encourages discussion among students and develops confidence.

5 What do you think are the benefits of overseas educational trips?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Students gain exposure to international culture. Visiting a foreign land and learning their ways of life makes a student broadminded. It also motivates and energizes them to learn better. It raises confidence levels and creates interest to learn a new language. They learn to enjoy the food of the foreign nation and also manage to make new friends beyond cultural boundaries.

Vocabulary

insight (noun) - The capacity to gain an accurate and deep understanding of a subject

Eg: Rita found the post insightful

togetherness (noun) - the state of being close to another person or other people.

Eg: Ram organised frequent parties to encourage the sense of togetherness in his kids.

pressured (verb) - attempt to persuade or coerce (someone) into doing something.

Eg: The mother pressured the kid to eat all the items on the plate.

enthral (adj) - capture the fascinated attention of.

Eg: Sita was enthralled on seeing the mountains.

creativity (noun) - the use of imagination or original ideas to create something; inventiveness.

Eg: The painting showed the heights of his creativity.



71. Describe a talk or speech that you attended

You should say:

- where it was
- who spoke
- what the topic was
- and explain what you thought of the talk or speech.

Sample Answer

(where it was) (who spoke) I admire successful people and am always interested in knowing how they managed to reach the top. I got an opportunity to listen to one such inspirational speech in my office. It was a talk by our chairman.

She is a lady in her early sixties. She is an Engineering graduate, has varied interests, and is a multi-talented personality. She also runs a charitable organization for the homeless and needy.

(what the topic was) Of late, there was an increase in the attrition rate among married women. So our chairman had decided to talk about it. The talk was arranged in our auditorium, and all of us were invited. Since I admire her a lot, I went to the arena well before the appointed time and took a seat in the front row. She began her speech by talking about her love life and how she remained stubborn that she would continue to work post marriage. She insisted we need to be determined about our ambitions. She also seemed worried about the fact that most women don't join work after their maternity leave. She gave many tips on how to balance work and family. Also, she cited examples from her own life, which motivated me.

(and explain what you thought of the talk or speech) I was very surprised that she underwent the same feelings as a normal woman. She had also struggled to cope with the stress in the workplace and felt that she was doing an injustice to her spouse and kids. But her resolve and will power enabled her to cross all the hurdles with ease. My motivation rose to new heights. It was not a speech, but a revelation.

Vocabulary

inspirational (adj) - providing or showing creative or spiritual inspiration.

Eg: Her cookery show was inspirational



multi-talented (adj) - having more than one special talent or skill

Eg: The player was multi talented

attrition (noun) - is a process in which the workforce dwindles at a company, following a period in which a number of people retire or resign, and are not replaced

Eg: The attrition rate was very high in the project due to the Boss's attitude

insisted (verb) - demand something forcefully, not accepting refusal.

Eg: Sita insisted Ram to take medicines for fever.

resolve (noun) - firm determination to do something.

Eg: Her unmatched resolve was the secret of her success.

Part 3

1 What is the difference between speaking in front of children and adults?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) When the speaker addresses children, he should be careful about the choice of words and the subject. They must not be controversial. The speaker must ensure that children get motivated. Whereas, when the audience is adults, the speaker can choose sensitive topics but be careful in his delivery. Though it is commonly believed that adults are mature, some people show their anger or opposition outwardly.

2 Do you think all speeches are appropriate for all age groups?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) No. It is because preferences vary based on age. Children like to listen to stories, whereas teens may need advice. People at work may need guidance on finance and leadership, while older people may be interested in health-related topics.

If the speaker is going to talk about the world economy to children below the age of 10, it would be inappropriate. They may not be able to appreciate it. Likewise, if the topic is on the latest trends in fashion, it is of no use to older people.

3 What types of speech are appropriate for all age groups?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) The majority of the age groups may appreciate topics related to stress management because everyone undergoes some stress in their lives. School going children are stressed due to their homework and study, office goers have trouble completing their deliverables, and older people are burdened with the thought of death. So everyone would be interested to learn techniques to combat stress.



Topics related to moral values may also be applicable to all age groups as all of them need to be honest and truthful.

4 Would you say it's important for a person to be able to speak publicly?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Absolutely, yes. A person with public speaking skills will be able to influence others. It is one of the characteristics of leadership. They can bring about change. Public speaking instils confidence, and people get attracted to the speaker. A person with poor public speaking skills is unlikely to reach high positions in work.

5 Do people need to prepare for speeches before giving them to the public?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) It varies from person to person. Some people go thoroughly prepared. They get tense if they forget one word. Infact, they make notes, memorise them, and some of them even carry papers to the stage. On the other hand, some people talk spontaneously. It may be due to several reasons. They may have had good training. Some of them gain spontaneity out of experience.

Vocabulary

controversial (adj) - giving rise or likely to give rise to controversy or public disagreement.

Eg: Sita carefully avoided controversial topics when talking to Rita.

Preferences (noun) - a choosing of or special liking for one person or thing rather than another or others

Eg: Ram is an excellent merchant because he knows the customer's preferences.

influence (verb) - the power to have an important effect on someone or something.

Eg: Sita influenced her brother to select computer science in the university

memorize (verb) - commit to memory; learn by heart.

Eg: Tim liked keats poems so much that he memorised all of them.

spontaneity (noun) - voluntary or undetermined action or movement

Eg: Ram was admired for his spontaneity in technical discussions.



72. Describe something special you brought home from a holiday

You should say:

- what it was
- when and where you went on this holiday
- what you did with it after you brought it home
- and explain why you thought it was special

Sample Answer

I'm a penny pincher and usually don't get attracted to anything easily. But when I went on a tour to Delhi with my friends, I could not resist buying an expensive piece of jewellery from Chandni chowk.

(what it was) (when and where you went on this holiday) Last month, when I was holidaying in Delhi with my friends, I happened to go to Chandni Chowk, the busiest street in Delhi. The place is famous for silver articles. As I was passing from one shop to another, something piqued my interest. It was a pair of silver earrings. I could not hold myself from entering the shop. As I examined the earring closely, I found that they had pearls studded in them. It was very beautiful, and I purchased it.

(what you did with it after you brought it home) Back home, I gave the earrings to my cousin, who was much younger than me. She was overjoyed. She stared at it for some time and not knowing how to use it, reached out to me for help. I assisted her in wearing it. It was during the night, and she looked like a princess. Everyone at home was happy to see the little girl move hither and thither with the dangling earrings.

(and explain why you thought it was special) The earrings were exquisite, and I felt they were specially made for a princess. My little sister seemed to be the chosen one. She flashed a smile as she moved around the room, and the earrings produced a sound which mesmerised everybody and made it all the more special.

Vocabulary

Penny pincher (idiom) - a person who is unwilling to spend money:

Eg: Sita is a penny pincher.

Holidaying (verb) - spend a holiday in a specified place.



Eg: Ram was holidaying in Hawaii.

piqued (verb) - arouse (interest or curiosity).

Eg: Einstein's theories piqued his interest.

dangling (adj) - hanging or swinging loosely.

Eg: The child became happy on seeing the dangling bells in the church.

exquisite (adj) - extremely beautiful and delicate.

Eg: The painting was exquisite.

Part 3

1 What sorts of things do tourists often buy to help them remember a holiday they have had?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) People usually buy things which are unique in that place. **(Give an example)** For example, if they are visiting Taj Mahal, they buy a toy image of Taj Mahal. Watches are famous in Switzerland. In the US, the one-dollar shops are very common. People buy a lot of gifts from these shops. Key chains, dresses, toys, postcards are some of the commonest things that people buy.

2 Do you think it's good that locals sell things to tourists at tourist locations?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) On the positive side, it is a business opportunity for the local people. On the flip side, local people take advantage of innocent tourists, especially foreigners and try to sell things at a very high price. It will bring down the image of the nation when foreigners get to know the actual price. If locals should use the opportunity in the right manner, it may be profitable to them and as well improve the nation's image.

3 Why do you think people like to take photos when they go on vacation (= go on a holiday)?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Photos are the only way by which people can connect to the past. On a holiday, photos help to capture the scenic beauty of the place, which later serves as a powerful tool of remembrance. It is a sense of pride to share photos with friends and family. Photos remind the person that he/she had been in a particular place.

4 What do you think are the pros and cons of taking an expensive (or, a high-quality, or a professional) camera with you on a vacation?



(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) By carrying a high-quality camera, the person is guaranteed of good photos. Tough cameras will withstand the severe heat and cold, and they will have special inbuilt modes to capture the nighttime sceneries. So they enable you to shoot in the day and night. On the contrary, costly items are prone to theft. So the person must be very careful not to lose them.

Vocabulary

Unique (adj) - being the only one of its kind; unlike anything else.

Eg: "These oranges are unique in England."

flip side (noun) - another aspect or version of something, especially its reverse or its unwanted concomitant.

Eg: Corruption is the flip side of electing this party.

take advantage of (phrase) - To use an opportunity to achieve results, sometimes in an unfair way:

Eg: The employee took advantage of his boss's innocence

image (noun) - the general impression that a person, organization, or product presents to the public.

Eg: The politician got arrested for bribery. So she is working hard to revive her image.

mode (noun) - a way of operating, living, or behaving:

Eg: Tom turned on the video mode in his mobile phone.



73. Describe a sport that you have watched others play and would like to try (or play) yourself.

You should say:

- what sport it is
- where you have seen it being played
- who was playing it
- and explain why you would like to try it.

Sample Answer

(what sport it is) When I was young, I used to watch cricket with my cousins. One of them was adept at it, and I learned a lot of techniques and terms from him. He was thorough in all aspects of the game. Every India - Pakistan match was celebrated as a festival in his house. Each of them would shout when their favourite player was about to bowl or bat.

(where you have seen it being played) (who was playing it) More than the match on the television, the game in the apartment would enthral me. Everyone who knew cricket would join. They would split into teams and then swat the ball in the most stylish manner. I liked the batsmen more than the bowlers. My cousin would insist that I observe the all-rounders instead.

(and explain why you would like to try it) I would like to get involved in it for fun. When people cheer for the six or four, they make the batsman feel like a hero. It builds team spirit as well. The eleven players in a team feel like a family. What stands out in the game is that, when a batsman scores a century in which the team loses the match, it is not celebrated. Team's victory is given priority over individual heroism. I've noticed that the players became more confident after a game.

There are other reasons too. It is a great stress buster when played with families and friends besides being a good exercise. It improves concentration as well.

Vocabulary

Adept (adj) - very skilled or proficient at something.

Eg: She was adept at weaving.



match (noun) - a contest in which people or teams compete against each other in a particular sport.

Eg: "It was a very good tennis match. You missed it"

Batsman (noun) - a player, especially in cricket, who is batting or whose chief skill is in batting.

Eg: The batsman hit a six which seemed to go up to the sky.

Bowler (noun) - a member of the fielding side who bowls or is bowling.

Eg: Sheela opted to be a bowler.

Heroism (noun) - great bravery.

Eg: Tom's heroism died in front of his team's failure. **(Give an example)**

Part 3

1 Can you explain why people like to watch sports competitions?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Sports is engrossing because of the reason that victory or failure is unpredictable. After a hard day's work, watching sports competitions are refreshing. Also, it is a lot of fun to watch a match with a group of friends. But it is sad that sports have become a national identity nowadays. **(Give an example)** For example, cricket matches have become like world wars. When there is a game between India and Pakistan, people feel that India is winning over Pakistan or vice-versa and forget for a while that it is only a game.

2 Can you explain why some people think watching sport is good, while other people think it's a waste of time?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) On the one hand, watching sports is relaxing and rejuvenating to the mind. By watching sports, one can understand the importance of team spirit. Sports is a unification factor. On the other hand, people argue that sports is a mere waste of time. In fact, George Bernard Shaw had said that cricket is a game of 11 fools watched by 11000 fools. They feel that people can do something more productive during those hours.

3 Can you explain why some famous people, including some famous athletes are used in advertisements?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Sports create heroes. Though the main purpose is to take the team to victory, some players gain stardom out of their gaming style. These players are used in advertisements because of their visibility. It is easy to market a product with the help of known faces. Since people are often prone to hero-worship, this technique works out well.



4 Would you say people in your country are good at sport?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Yes, to a certain extent. But there is scope for improvement. Many of them are interested in cricket. Tennis, football and basketball are equally popular. In the olden days, everyone wanted to try cricket. But now the situation has changed, and other sports such as hockey and kabaddi are gaining popularity.

5 In your opinion, should children have sports classes in school?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Absolutely, yes.

Sports should be given equal importance. Apart from a fitness perspective, children learn many other qualities like team spirit, which will help them in the long run. In my opinion, every child should strive to excel in some sport.

Vocabulary

Unpredictable (adj) - not able to be predicted; changeable.

Eg: Tom's has an unpredictable nature.

unification (noun) - the process of being united or made into a whole.

Eg: He initiated the unification of the Jews and Nazis.

stardom (noun) - the state or status of being a very famous or talented entertainer or sports player.

Eg: Nobody expected that he would rise to stardom

market (verb) - advertise or promote (something).

Eg: The merchants tactfully marketed their products.

perspective (noun) - a particular attitude towards or way of regarding something; a point of view.

Eg: "You should respect the other person's perspective".



74. Describe a person (you know) who (you think) has an important job.

You should say:

- who this person is
- how you know this person
- where he or she (they) works
- what work he or she does
- and explain why (you think) his or her work is important.

Sample Answer

(who this person is) (how you know this person) I think every employed person contributes to society in some manner. Soldiers in the army sacrifice their lives for the country. Social workers strive to improve the living conditions of poor people. But there are unknown angels who help in creating a better society. It may not be explicit but they are key factors for the development of the nation. One such person is Mr. Raj who is a friend of my Dad and is practising as a lawyer in the High court.

(where he or she (they) works) (what work he or she does) He is one of the busiest civil lawyers in the city. He had settled hundreds of property disputes in an amicable manner both within and outside the court. One Sunday, I visited him with my Dad. His office was bustling with activity and I could see he was dealing with various clients. While I was waiting, I saw an old couple sitting with some documents. They seemed worried. On further inquiry I learnt that they were claiming their share of ancestral property to perform their daughter's marriage. Soon after their appointment, they left the place. When we went in, the lawyer spoke hilariously on various topics and I asked him about the old couple. The answer he gave me was surprising. He told me that he could have exploited the old couple, by charging high fees because they were ready to pledge their jewels. But the case would go on for at least 6 years and their side was very weak. So he had arranged for a meeting with their brother who claimed a lion share of the property, to settle the dispute out of court.

(and explain why (you think) his or her work is important) Only few lawyers go this extra mile and remain considerate of their clients. This might seem small but it is not. Honesty in small things is not a small thing. He also told me that he was not interested in cheating them into believing that they can win the case. I thought it deserved appreciation. The lawyer did not use this opportunity tactfully and robbed money out of the poor couple. These small acts



of kindness do help the society. I could imagine the millions of lives that were saved from his honest advice. So I feel he is indeed doing a great service to society.

Vocabulary

Unknown angel (word) - is someone who might be helpful to us without us being aware of them.

Eg: Sita was an unknown angel who saved many cows from slaughter.

dispute (noun) - a disagreement or argument.

Eg: There was dispute between the two states regarding the sharing of water resources.

amicable (adj) - characterized by friendliness and absence of discord.

Eg: Ram made way for an amicable solution regarding the local feud.

pledge (verb) - a deposit of personal property as security for a debt

Eg: He pledged his jewels to the pawnbroker

Lion share (idiom) - to the major share of something.

Eg: Sita received a lion share from her father's property.

Part 3

1 Do you think some jobs (or, types of work) are more important than others?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) I don't think so. Each job has its importance. **(Give an example)** For example, people accuse software professionals of not contributing to their homeland. But by their hard work and intelligence, they create a positive impression regarding their nation, thereby creating employment opportunities in their home country. Similarly, farmers work hard to make the government achieve self sustenance in food. Certain jobs manifest their importance openly. Others work behind the scenes.

2 Do you think people should receive the same salary, no matter what job they are doing?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) I don't think so. It depends on the level of mental and physical exertion required. Also, it depends on the percentile contribution of the job to the welfare of the nation. **(Give an example)** For example, teachers, nurses, doctors, police officers should be paid well because they are essential services and are the backbone of the country.

3 How do young people choose their career in your country?



(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Nowadays, young people are bombarded with information. They usually become a member of the groups and forums available on the internet where active discussions are held on career prospects. Also, they become part of alumni networks where they take advice from their seniors. Additionally, Universities also have career counselling programs which help them decide on a career path.

A significant majority of them opt for a career in Information Technology, and a few of them pursue careers in upcoming technologies.

4 Do you think that everyone ends up doing the job (career) that they want to do? (Why not?)

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Peer group influence plays a significant role in decision making. The truth is that many people keep their passion aside and follow what others are doing. This tendency has gathered strength largely because no one wants to be the odd man out or lag, taking risks. **(Give an example)** For example, a student studying in a reputed university may be interested in arts, but when all his friends settle for a job in well-paid firms, he will not dare to pursue a course in arts. People don't worry too much about sacrificing their passions.

5 Do young men and young women usually want to do the same kind of work?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Yes. Gone are the days when certain jobs were preferred only by men. Gender differences have almost vanished. Women work night shifts, take up jobs in lathes and machines, drive cars, buses and aeroplanes, travel in spacecrafts. Women are equally or sometimes more competitive in the workplace.

Vocabulary

Accuse (verb) - claim that (someone) has done something wrong.

Eg: Her husband was accused for being frugal

Self sustenance (noun) - the ability to continue in a healthy state without outside assistance.

Eg: Self sustenance is the goal of every nation

bombarded (adj) - subject (someone) to a continuous flow of questions, criticisms, or information.

Eg: The lead was bombarded with customer complaints.

Peer group (noun) - a group of people of approximately the same age, status, and interests.



Eg: Peer group influence is positive in most cases.

Lag (verb) - fail to keep up with another or others in movement or development.

Eg: The manager asked him to find out the reason for the lag.





75. Describe an occasion when you wanted to (or, tried to) impress others (or another person)

You should say:

- who you wanted to impress
- what you did
- how you hoped to impress them
- and explain why you wanted to impress them.

Sample Answer

Well, everyone wants to be in someone's good books at each stage of life, and I'm no exception. When I was in school, I wanted to be the pet of all my teachers. I was usually the topper in the class. But when we were in the eighth grade, our school gave us an option to elect any foreign language. I opted for French.

(who you wanted to impress) (what you did) (how you hoped to impress them) (and explain why you wanted to impress them) Our French teacher was from the Alliance Française. I was overconfident about my skills and did not pay much attention to the classes initially. There was a boy in the class whom she was impressed with. She always praised him for his French pronunciation. As the course progressed, she informed us that she was about to conduct the drama of Tenilarama in French. I was fascinated by the idea. But I knew her first choice for Tenilarama would be that boy. I wanted to do something to win that role. I put in a lot of effort for my pronunciation, went through various texts on French Grammar, and in a week, I was very confident. So I was hopeful that she would become impressed by my skills.

Every day she would pick one of us randomly and ask us to read the lesson aloud. I was praying to God so that I must be selected on that day. And I was indeed asked to read. I read the text with proper pronunciation, managed the variations in tone, and tried to sound just right. As I sat down, I noticed her eyes. She seemed happy and surprised. Much to my delight, she asked me to meet her in the staff room to offer the role to me.

Vocabulary

In someone's good books (idiom) - in a state in which one is liked or are treated nicely by someone

Eg: Tom tried to be in his client's good books.

pet (noun) - a person who is treated with unusual kindness or consideration



Eg: Sita was the pet of the principal.

pronunciation (noun) - the way in which a word or a language is spoken

Eg: "You must work on the pronunciation of difficult words".

randomly (adverb) - proceeding, made, or occurring without definite aim, reason, or pattern:

Eg: The cards were arranged randomly.

delight (noun) - great pleasure.

Eg: The children cried in delight.

Part 3

1 Do you think children today face many challenges?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Yes, of course. They are burdened with homework and pressured to compete with other kids. With both parents working, they have no opportunity to share their feelings. Sometimes they have trouble getting along with other children. Some children may find the syllabi very difficult. For example, in India, there are many boards in operation. When a child from CBSE is put in an ICSE, (due to transfer of a parent), he or she may find it challenging to cope up with the new curriculum.

2 What do you think children can learn from (facing) challenges?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) They can become mentally strong. **(Give an example)** For example, an Indian student travelling to a foreign country, may initially find it difficult to adapt to the new environment. But after he/she has learnt to manage it, they will become more confident. A child may struggle to make friends initially. After he has won over his inhibitions, he will become very optimistic.

3 In general, what do parents in your country do to try to reduce (or protect their children from) the difficulties their children have?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Parents help in many ways. For instance, there may not be good schools in the area where the parents work. So they may have to put their child in a boarding school. But most parents change their residence near to the school and take the pain of travelling in the heavy traffic. Another example would be the case of a child who is not performing well in math. Parents arrange tuitions or extra coaching to help their children. Some parents also go to the extent of spoon-feeding their children.



4 Do you think failing to achieve a goal is a serious matter?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Every person should indeed be goal-oriented. But they should not be taken very seriously. The reason is that the person will start considering himself worthless and surround himself with negativity. Some people lose the courage to give another try. So, it's ok to fail. It is far more essential to be assertive and take the next course of action.

5 What do you suggest people could (or, should) do to help them achieve their goals?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) People should develop perseverance. Many people quit in the face of the first failure. They must learn to analyse the mistakes and try to do better in the next attempt. Also, they must appreciate the wisdom they have gained out of their failures. They must connect themselves with people who have successfully achieved their goals and learn from their experiences. They must also be tolerant of the delays and hurdles in their way of achieving the goals.

Vocabulary

Syllabus (idiom) - the subjects in a course of study or teaching.

Eg: Tom was not able to complete the syllabus.

inhibitions (noun) - a feeling that makes one self-conscious and unable to act in a relaxed and natural way.

Eg: Sita soon lost her inhibitions and started talking hilariously.

Spoon feed (noun) - provide (someone) with so much help or information that they do not need to think for themselves

Eg: "Don't expect me to spoon feed"

assertive (adj) - having or showing a confident and forceful personality.

Eg: The company promoted employees who were assertive.

Perseverance (noun) - persistence in doing something despite difficulty or delay in achieving success.

Eg: The teacher's perseverance earned her good results in the board exams.



76. Describe a situation when you received some useful advice

You should say:

- what the situation was
- who gave you the advice
- what the advice was
- and explain how this advice was useful to you.

Sample Answer

Some people are gifted with the capability to see through the fog and show a clear path. One such person is my colleague cum friend Sujan. His guidance would be just right.

(what the situation was) (who gave you the advice) (what the advice was) Then I was in an indecisive moment. I was frustrated with the monotony of office life. One of my relatives was starting a chain of coffee shops and asked me to partner with him. I was in a dilemma about whether to accept or reject the offer. I used to go to the office and keep staring at the monitor. Having noticed this several times, Sujan asked me to accompany him to a nearby hotel for lunch, to which I gladly agreed. At lunch, he asked many questions and finally told me that I seemed worried for the past one week. I explained my fear about the future and my relative's offer. Without hesitation, he told me not to quit work and cited many reasons for it. They seemed convincing.

(and explain how this advice was useful to you) Years later, I learnt that the coffee shop venture was a total failure. The relative had to close his outlets due to heavy competition. I thanked Sujan from the bottom of my heart. Had I quit my job, I would have lost valuable years of experience. Sujan had saved me from a great misfortune.

Vocabulary

indecisive (adj) - (of a person) not able to make decisions quickly and effectively.

Eg: Tom was indecisive about his future course of study

Monotony (noun) - lack of variety and interest; tedious repetition and routine.

Eg: He hated the monotony of his job as a chef

Hesitation (noun) - the action of pausing before saying or doing something.

Eg: He spoke after much hesitation



cited (adj) - refer to (a passage, book, or author) as evidence for or justification of an argument or statement, especially in a scholarly work.

Eg: He cited the works of Wordsworth.

Bottom of my heart (idiom) - mean it very sincerely.

Eg: I love him from the bottom of my heart.

Part 3

1 Do you like giving advice to others?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) I feel that one must not intervene in others' lives unless one is vested with the capability to foresee his future and be confident that the advice would not lead him to peril. So I seldom give advice. Also, I hate to poke my nose at trivial things. Even when asked for advice, I would list the pros and cons and ask the person to decide what suits him best. For example, when a cousin approached me, asking advice on choosing between Engineering and Arts, I told him the career prospects of both and let him choose a course independently.

2 Why (do you think) many people don't follow good advice?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) The main reason is that people have decided beforehand what they want to do and are just looking for some support or confirmation from others. They are only checking how many people think alike. They want to embolden themselves. So, in reality, they are unwilling to accept anything against their thoughts, even if others offer valuable advice.

3 What kinds of (= what are some examples of) advice that parents in your country give to their children?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Parents guide their children in all aspects of their life. From helping their kids choose the right friends to selecting the electives in secondary school, parents offer valuable advice. They also help their children decide the courses at University and in making career choices. They also help their kids make the right investments and in choosing their life partner.

4 What are some examples of people who give advice as (part of) their work?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) In every domain, the human resource team is dedicated to offering advice and guidance and counselling the employees. These professionals generally advise on psychological issues, unresolved conflicts within the team and to prevent people from quitting the company. Sometimes companies hire doctors and psychiatrists to advise employees on physical and mental health. Besides, the seniors in the team advise the juniors on how to deal with technical issues and in certain cases, family and love life too.



5 How do these experts give advice to others?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) The Human resources department is formally trained in various ways of offering valuable tips and guidance to employees. Doctors and psychiatrists are also well-educated. Senior members of the team provide technical advice out of their experience in the software industry and personal advice out of their wisdom.

Vocabulary

intervene (verb) - take part in something so as to prevent or alter a result or course of events.

Eg: Tom intervened in Dick's plans and spoilt it.

Poke my nose (phrase) - they try to interfere with it even though it does not concern them.

Eg: "Don't poke your nose into Tom's business"

peril (noun) - serious and immediate danger.

Eg: Jim's actions put his Dad's life in peril.

beforehand (adverb) - before an action or event; in advance.

Eg: He decided beforehand that he would take the byway.

Psychiatrists (noun) - a medical practitioner specializing in the diagnosis and treatment of mental illness.

Eg: He reached out to a psychiatrist to help him quit smoking tendencies.



77. Describe a bicycle tour that you would like to take

You should say:

- where you would go
- who you would like to go with
- what you would like to (see and) do on the tour
- and explain why you would like to take (go on) this tour.

Sample Answer

(where you would go) (who you would like to go with) Though it is the world of cars and bikes, cycles have not lost their honour. It is the comfort and pleasure of cycling that makes it very special. I've joined University in the Spring this year and am keenly interested in making an adventurous trip on a bicycle with my friends. I would choose to cycle on the famous Karakoram Highway.

(what you would like to (see and) do on the tour) The starting point is Kashgar, Xinjiang Province, Western China, and the road spans 1,200km to Pakistan (Islamabad). The road was built during the '60s and is truly a wonder. Along the ride, we would see the great Khunjerab Pass at a height of 4,693 meters. We would also be passing through the deep gorges, and when we look up, we would be seeing the gigantic Karakoram ranges. We would also be witnessing the enchanting Hunza valley on the way. The ride would be a great chance to meet the local people and talk to them.

(and explain why you would like to take (go on) this tour) I would want to undertake this ride to build friendships with the Chinese and Pakistanis. I would like to take photographs of the scenery and as well the people and write a blog on it. My positive experiences would enable many other cyclists to use the road and thereby strengthen the friendships between India, China and Pakistan. Above all this, it would be a truly fun-filled episode.

Vocabulary

adventurous (verb) - willing to take risks or to try out new methods, ideas, or experiences.

Eg: The British were adventurous people.

ride (noun) - a journey made on a horse, bicycle, or motorcycle, or in a vehicle.

Eg: The children were enjoying the ride.



gorges (noun) - a narrow valley between hills or mountains, typically with steep rocky walls and a stream running through it.

Eg: The gorges are captured beautifully in the photograph.

gigantic (adj) - of very great size or extent; huge or enormous.

Eg: The boy was hiding behind a gigantic statue.

Episode (noun) - an event or a group of events occurring as part of a sequence; an incident or period considered in isolation.

Eg: It was an entertaining episode.

Part 3

1 Can you explain why people drive different models of cars (or car models)?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) For increased comfort and the unique experience that each design and model offers. Every manufacturer releases new cars which have different features. **(Give an example)** For example, a person driving a Nano would want to try an Ertiga for improved leg space and seating capacity. Many advanced cars have front-wheel disc brakes, rain-sensing wipers, sunroof (to get a feel of the sky while travelling), and advanced touch screen and infotainment system which people want to try.

2 Why do you think some families have more than one car (or, several cars)?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) It depends on the family's financial situation and requirements. Wealthy families own different cars as a status symbol. Upper-middle-class families own a car for each member of the family. Some joint families own different cars to accommodate all the members of the family. In some families, they might have bought a low-end model initially. After their financial position improved, they would buy a high-end model but would not give away the old one. Instead, some other family member would use it.

3 Do you think every family needs to have several cars?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) It depends on the needs of the family. It also depends on how many family members use cars for commuting. **(Give an example)** For example, if the male and female in the family are working and know how to drive, both of them would need one. In cases where only one of them knows car driving, and the other is commuting by bus, they would need only one.

4 What would you say are the advantages of driving a car?



(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Compared to a public transport system, driving a car is easier and quicker, and the person travels with more comfort. It protects the driver from weather conditions like rains. It is a cost-effective solution when more persons are travelling. The driver controls the halts and decides which route he/she wants to take. Also, it is upto the driver to decide when to start driving.

5 Are there any differences between men and women when driving a car?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) There is absolutely no difference based on gender. Both of them are subject to the same traffic on the roads, and it is their skill that distinguishes them from one another. **(Give an example)** For example, a skilled woman may drive better than her unskilled male counterpart and vice versa. Both are prone to accidents when driving with poor road sense.

Vocabulary

features (noun) - a distinctive attribute or aspect of something.

Eg: "This mixie had additional features".

Leg space (noun) - is the amount of space, especially in a car or other vehicle, that is available in front of your legs.

Eg: Sita's car did not have a good leg space.

Seating capacity (noun) - is the number of people who can be seated in a specific space,

Eg: The seating capacity of the bus is 40.

low-end (adj) - denoting the cheaper products of a range, especially of audio or computer equipment.

Eg: Ram bought a low-end tape recorder which suited his budget

High-end (noun) - of superior quality or sophistication and usually high in price

Eg: This showroom has only high end products for sale.



78. Describe a band or singer who you like

You should say:

- what style of songs they sing / music they play
- when you listen to them
- where you listen to them
- and explain why you like this band or singer.

Sample Answer

There are lots of mesmerising voices in the music world, and it's hard to pick out one. However, when I think hard on whom I like, it is Hariharan who strikes my mind. He is a classical cum film music singer from India and has won many accolades.

(what style of songs they sing / music they play) He hails from Trivandrum and is originally a Ghazal singer and specialist in fusion music. His Ghazal albums sold like crazy. His album "Colonial Cousins" in which he paired with Leslie Lewis is a stunning rendition and my all-time favourite. He has also sung innumerable film songs in various languages such as Hindi, Tamil, Malayalam, Kannada, Telugu and Marathi besides singing several devotional songs.

(when you listen to them) (where you listen to them) I listen to his songs whenever I can. When it rains like cats and dogs, I listen to his "Indian Rain" from colonial cousins. It is so soothing and makes me feel soul connected with nature. I always complement it with a hot cup of tea, and it feels like heaven. I also listen to his songs when I go on a long drive. They make travel pleasurable. After a hard day's work, his songs are very relaxing and give me a new vigour.

(and explain why you like this band or singer) He has a well trained, melodious voice and a unique style. It is quite surprising that he is able to deliver every song with the right emotion, irrespective of the language. Listening to his songs is like a sweet lullaby at times. I doze off, even while listening. His soulful voice calms the mind and eases any tension. Many times, it has helped me let go of my hard feelings which is why I listen to his songs often.

Vocabulary

mesmerising (adj) - capturing one's complete attention as if by magic.

Eg: It was a mesmerizing view.



accolades (noun) - an award or privilege granted as a special honour or as an acknowledgement of merit.

Eg: "You can admit your daughter in this school. It has won many accolades."

Ghazal (noun) - (in Middle Eastern and Indian literature and music) a lyric poem with a fixed number of verses and a repeated rhyme, typically on the theme of love, and normally set to music.

Eg: "These Ghazal albums are really good".

lullaby (noun) - a quiet, gentle song sung to send a child to sleep.

Eg: The caretaker was singing a lullaby.

Hard feelings (noun) - feelings of resentment.

Eg: He had some hard feelings because of which he quit.

Part 3

1 What other music or bands do you like?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) I listen to all kinds of music, from pop, rock to hip-hop and country. I like pop music because of its heterogeneity, rock for its rhythmic drum beats, hip hop for its energy, and country for its folk style. In fact, I've got a playlist that is a medley of different genres. I'm especially fond of music in which there is a good guitar accompaniment. Bryan Adams and Mariah Carey are my all-time favorites.

2 Why do you think people listen to music?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) People listen to music to relax and forget their worries. Music has no language boundaries. Music has healing properties too. Research studies show that when expectant mothers listen to music it helps in the brain development of the child in the womb. It helps in relieving depression and enhances moods. Some people become reminiscent of listening to certain kinds of music. It aids in outburst. For example, some people tend to cry when listening to soulful songs.

3 Would you like to sing or play a musical instrument yourself?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Yes, I'm interested in playing the piano and the guitar. I was also part of the choir in my school. So I've pretty good knowledge of singing. I've even written some songs on my own and have tried to sing them too. For a while, I had been swamped with work. But I wish to be part of some local bands and become a renowned singer.



Vocabulary

medley (noun) - a varied mixture of people or things.

Eg: It was an exotic medley of classical and western music.

Genre (noun) - a style or category of art, music, or literature.

Eg: It is a folk genre.

accompaniment (noun) - a musical part which supports or partners an instrument, voice, or group.

Eg: His song shot to fame only because of the violin accompaniment

enhances (verb) - intensify, increase, or further improve the quality, value, or extent of.

Eg: The cardamom enhanced the flavour of the tea

outburst (noun) - a sudden release of strong emotion.

Eg: Despite his best efforts to control his tears, there was an outburst.





79. Describe a small business you would like to start

You should say:

- what it is
- how much money you would need
- how many people you would need
- and explain why you would like to start a small business

Sample Answer

I've had business ideas even while I was young. I admired successful entrepreneurs and wanted to become one. But with the advent of youtube the process has been made damn simple. Anybody could start and campaign a business. This idea struck me when a friend of mine posted a video about her trip to Paris. It was liked by all of us.

(what it is) (how much money you would need) (how many people you would need) (and explain why you would like to start a small business) My grandmother is a great cook. She is in her late seventies and is getting bored at home. I don't want her culinary skills to perish. So I've ideas to create a youtube channel in which she would cook and host the show herself. ■

I would not require any manpower or investment. I just need to tidy my kitchen and buy some groceries for the dish we are going to prepare. In fact I've told this to my grandmother but she remains hesitant. She is worried about compromising her privacy. I'm still convincing her that it is ok to become famous and tempting her that she would become a great asset to the food industry.

But I know it is not going to be as easy as it seems. Youtube may give us an effortless start but it would be very competitive. We need to work hard to keep viewers engaged and to win subscribers through which we would be generating revenue. But I'm confident that my idea is going to take shape. I would be launching a channel very soon.

Vocabulary

entrepreneur (noun) - is an individual who creates a new business, bearing most of the risks and enjoying most of the rewards.

Eg: Sita was a successful entrepreneur.

Youtube (noun) - the video-sharing website.

Eg: She watched the marriage live on youtube.



Manpower (noun) - the number of people working or available for work or service.

Eg: The company decided to cut down on its manpower.

investment (noun) - the action or process of investing money for profit.

Eg: The government made huge investments in research and development.

Launch (verb) - start or set in motion (an activity or enterprise).

Eg: The Scientists launched a new satellite to the moon.

Part 3

1 How can small businesses benefit the people in the community where the businesses are located?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Small businesses generate employment opportunities in the area where they are located. **(Give an example)** For example, a small snack stall or bakery may create employment for vegetable and fruit sellers in the area. The taxes obtained from these businesses will help in the development of the community. Most of the owners of small scale businesses are also found to contribute to charity and sponsor local events.

2 Do people today prefer to be self-employed or to work for others?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) It varies on a case by case basis. People who want security prefer to work for an organisation. But of late, many corporate employees are starting their businesses. This is mainly because of the pressure and boredom in the workplace. But only a significant minority of fresh graduates prefer to be self-employed. In general, people start their enterprise only after they have accumulated some money.

3 How do small businesses attract customers (or clients)?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) The owners of small businesses gel well with the local people. They ensure their presence in all the local celebrations and events. Some owners also act as sponsors for the local events. They also remain friends with other businesses in the area. By establishing a good relationship with the locals, these business owners create a strong customer base.

4 What do you think of business owners who deceive their customers or clients?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) They cannot last long. A business builds regular customers only based on the quality of its products. A customer



may yield to the deceit of the business owner, only once. **(Give an example)** For example, if someone is selling a low-quality snack and convinces the customer that he used high-quality oil, they may try the snack. But after he gets a stomach upset, he will dare not buy it again.

5 Do many of these small businesses go bankrupt (= fail) in the first year?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Not all of them. Some of them grow into bigger ones. Small businesses fail when they open an outlet without doing a good research on the market and when they fail to build a good reputation with the local community. Flawed market research leads to opening a store in an inappropriate location. Bad reputation may lead to the closure of the business itself. Small businesses opened in the right place with adequate financial support and strong reputation thrive and yield enormous profits.

Vocabulary

Bakery (noun) - a place where bread and cakes are made or sold.

Eg: "This bakery sells delicious chocolate cakes"

Sponsor (verb) - provide funds for (a project or activity or the person carrying it out)

Eg: The tatas are sponsoring this tennis match.

corporate (noun) - a corporate company or group.

Eg: He was hired for a corporate soon after his graduation.

Customer base (noun) - is the group of customers who repeatedly purchase the goods or services of a business

Eg: Ram built a good customer base through his hardwork and good manners.

Thrive (verb) - prosper; flourish.

Eg: The tea stall did not thrive in the residential area.



80. Describe something you would like to stop eating

You should say:

- what it is
- when and where you eat it
- where you buy it
- how much of it you eat (or) how often you eat it
- and explain why you would like to stop eating it.

Sample Answer

(what it is) (when and where you eat it) (where you buy it) (how much of it you eat (or) how often you eat it) On weekends, I usually take a stroll in the busy market road enjoying the warmth of the evening sun. After walking a little while, I would be getting the irresistible aroma of hot samosas and vada pavs. I will stop by, relish one or two of them with a tangy tomato sauce, and then continue my stroll. But I'm noticing that I'm getting addicted to the taste and have begun eating two or three of them. Also, I have started going there on weekdays too.

(and explain why you would like to stop eating it.) I've become conscious that I'm taking too much unhealthy stuff and want to end it. Primarily, the street vendors add a lot of taste enhancers, which are harmful to health. Also, samosas and the vadas are cooked in low-quality oil, which will lead to many diseases. These fried items are high-calorie foods. The stuffing in samosas consists mainly of potatoes, which contain a lot of carbohydrates. Over time, I may put on weight, develop diabetes or blood pressure. The excess salt content in it may lead to conditions like water retention. Trans fats do not do us any good.

Moreover, it becomes very filling, and when I'm back home, I skip my dinner, which my mom doesn't approve of at all. So I want to put an end to my snacking habit on weekends. I'm thinking of realistic measures to make the process gradual. Initially, I will reduce the numbers and then progress to avoid eating them.

Vocabulary

aroma (noun) - a distinctive, typically pleasant smell.

Eg: The sweet aroma of rose flowers filled the air.

tangy (adj) - having a strong, piquant flavour or smell.

Eg: It was a tangy tamarind soup.



Addiction (noun) - the fact or condition of being addicted to a particular substance or activity.

Eg: Many youngsters fall prey to drug addiction

filling (adj) - (of food) leaving one with a pleasantly satiated feeling.

Eg: The lunch in the cafeteria was filling.

snacking(verb) - eat a snack.

Eg: She is usually spotted snacking at the chat counter.

Part 3

1 More and more people are becoming overweight nowadays. What do you think might be the causes of this?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Obesity is a common problem nowadays. People suffer from poor appetite due to lack of good eating habits and poor metabolism. They tend to eat until they feel full in their stomach. They frequently snack out of stressful situations and drink a lot of tea and coffee, which are not good if taken in excess. Sometimes people are overweight due to genetic reasons.

2 What can be done about this problem?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Lifestyle changes are mandatory. A sedentary lifestyle is the chief cause of obesity. People need to follow an exercise regime, eat healthy foods, including many fruits and vegetables in their diet, walk for sometime in a day and avoid eating snacks. People should find out effective ways to combat stress. Yoga and meditation are possible solutions. By incorporating a healthy lifestyle, people can avoid becoming obese.

3 On the other hand, millions of people in the world don't have enough to eat. Why do you think that is?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Even the world's most developed countries have people who go to bed without getting a morsel of food. Research shows that much of the food produced is wasted. Wastage occurs because of inefficient storage and management techniques. If planned properly, we could feed millions of people who are dying out of hunger and starvation.

4 How has technology changed the food production process?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Global positioning system (GPS) is used by farmers which helps them to identify a diseased plant with the help



of drones. They also help find out the health of the soil and changes in weather conditions. This allows the farmers to monitor every activity in the field and look after plants which are dying. With these advancements, crop yields are more and better.

Vocabulary

appetite (noun) - a natural desire to satisfy a bodily need, especially for food.

Eg: Rita's kid has a very poor appetite

Genetic (adj) - relating to genes or heredity

Eg: Alopecia is a genetic condition that leads to hair loss.

sedentary lifestyle (adj) - (of work or a way of life) characterized by much sitting and little physical exercise.

Eg: He developed blood pressure because of his sedentary lifestyle.

Starvation (noun) - is a severe deficiency in caloric energy intake, below the level needed to maintain an organism's life. It is the most extreme form of malnutrition.

Eg: The children developed an acute liver damage due to starvation.

GPS (noun) - an accurate worldwide navigational and surveying facility based on the reception of signals from an array of orbiting satellites.

Eg: GPS is used in agriculture.

IELTSMaterial.com



81. Describe an exhibition that you visited

You should say:

- when you saw this exhibition
- where it was held
- what was on display
- and explain your impression of the exhibition

Sample Answer

(when you saw this exhibition) (where it was held) A few months ago, my friend invited me for an exhibition on antique vessels in the B.G.H.D gardens that he was planning to visit. We decided to meet at the B.G.H.D bus stop. I got down the bus at 9:00 AM and waited for my friend. He joined me in ten minutes, and when we reached the stalls by 9:30 AM.

(what was on display) The stalls were very attractive, and each of them had a small black board containing a brief history of the artisans involved. There were a few things that impressed me. It was a brass vessel used for making soup and sauce. The exhibitor explained the health benefits of using the vessel. He also gave a brochure on how to clean and maintain the vessel along with some dos and don'ts. It seems it was handmade by an artisan called Ram from a remote village in Rajasthan. His photograph was also on display. I had long wanted to buy such a vessel. Amazingly, the price was very reasonable. We also visited some stalls on iron tawas and bronze vessels.

(and explain your impression of the exhibition) What stood out in the exhibition was the history of the artisans and their photographs. Many such arts are vanishing due to a lack of support and promotion. The exhibition enabled them to gain visibility. It would also encourage them to practise their skill. Those low-income families would get benefitted from the sale of these articles.

Vocabulary

Antique (adj) - having a high value because of age and quality.

Eg: The jewellery shop was famous for its antique collections.

artisans (noun) - a worker in a skilled trade, especially one that involves making things by hand.

Eg: The artisans displayed their works for sale.

brass (noun) - a yellow alloy of copper and zinc.



Eg: "This ladle is made of brass"

Bronze (noun) - a yellowish-brown alloy of copper with up to one-third tin.

Eg: Sita bought a bronze idol of Lord Ganesha.

promotion (noun) - the publicizing of a product, organization, or venture so as to increase sales or public awareness.

Eg: The NGO was involved in promotion of neglected arts.

Part 3

1 What is the purpose of exhibitions?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) An exhibition serves many purposes. We can gather lots of information from the objects on display. By interacting directly with the public, the exhibitor gains deep insight into the local market. Some companies conduct exhibitions to advertise their new products. Some exhibitions also sell second-hand products at a lower price—for example, a sale of second-hand furniture.

2 Do young people and old people like the same kinds of exhibitions?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) No. Some exhibitions attract both the young and old. **(Give an example)** For example, there are a wide range of books for children, teenagers, adults, and older people in a book exhibition. In a clothing exhibition, there are clothes for children and older people.

Older people may find an antique exhibition very interesting, whereas young people may not know the value of the articles on display. On the contrary, children may find the toy exhibition fascinating.

3 Do men and women like the same kinds of exhibitions?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) It varies on a case by case basis rather than on gender. It is commonly believed that women are fond of jewellery and garments exhibition while men are fond of car and industrial exhibition. But this generalisation does not apply to all. Some women have more knowledge of vehicles than their male counterparts and will like the car exhibition and vice-versa.

4 How do you think exhibitions, say, 20 years from now, will be different to exhibitions that we have today?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) In 2040, virtual exhibitions will be the norm. Robots will be exhibitors, and they will be programmed to read



the visitor's mind, interests etc. The utensils that we use now may become antique by then and would be on display. There will be no formal announcements or advertisements made for exhibitions in 2040. Instead, they will sense an interested visitor when he is near the stall and message him to visit the exhibition by using GPS and drones.

Vocabulary

exhibitor (noun) - a person who displays works of art or other items of interest at an exhibition.

Eg: The exhibitors were from different countries.

Second hand (noun) - buying or selling things that have already been owned or used. : not original

Eg: He bought a second hand car.

norm (noun) - something that is usual, typical, or standard.

Eg: Virtual reality would be the norm in another 10 years.

robots (noun) - (especially in science fiction) a machine resembling a human being and able to replicate certain human movements and functions automatically.

Eg: The hotel used Robots to take orders from customers.

Program (verb) - provide (a computer or other machine) with coded instructions for the automatic performance of a task.

Eg: The machine was programmed to display the weight of goods.



82. Describe a time when you got lost

You should say:

- where it was
- who was with you
- how you felt
- and explain how you eventually found your way.

Sample Answer

Childhood is a memorable phase in everybody's life. Then, we were living in a multistorey apartment. So I had a lot of friends. Shwetha was our unnamed captain. I was in the second grade, and she was in the 4th grade. She would decide the games for the day. On a summer holiday, we gathered in Shweta's flat and were discussing on games to play. All of a sudden, she shouted: "Hide and Seek".

(where it was) (who was with you) (how you felt) The apartment was huge. So there were hideout places in plenty. We scattered and started searching for places. I walked a long distance, out into the garden, and then hid behind some bushes. I sat there and dozed off for a while. It was late evening when I woke up. None of them seemed to have found me. I walked into the garden, and there were tall pillars and lots of cars. I did not know where I was. I slowly realised that I got lost. A chill ran down my spine. I did not know where to look for help, so I kept standing in the garden.

(and explain how you eventually found your way) A security guard approached me. He inquired what I was doing there for a long time. I told him that I got lost. He just asked my dad's name and took me to the security office. He also found my address and informed my mom that I was in the security office. I was sitting on a chair. My mom rushed in with tears welled up in her eyes and hugged me. On the way home, I narrated the entire incident.

Vocabulary

memorable (adj) - worth remembering or easily remembered, especially because of being special or unusual.

Eg: It was a memorable day

Multi storey (adj) - (of a building) having several storeys.

Eg: Tom saw a multistorey building at a distance.



hideout (noun) - a hiding place, especially one used by someone who has broken the law.

Eg: The police traced the hideout of the criminals.

A chill ran down my spine (idiom) - used to say that someone feels very thrilled, frightened, etc.

Eg: As he sat in the exam hall, a chill ran down his spine.

Tears welled up in my eyes (idiom) - (of liquid) to appear on the surface of something or come slowly out from somewhere:

Eg: As she waved to her son who was leaving to the US, tears welled up in her eyes.

Part 3

1 What are some of the reasons why people get lost (lose their way)?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) The brain contains certain types of neurons called grid cells and place cells. These cells are responsible for processing navigation cues and guiding us in the right direction. When these cells are damaged or when there is reduced activity in this part of the brain, we tend to forget our way. Research studies show that grid cells get damaged as a person gets older which is why older people have trouble finding their way.

2 Who do you think generally has a better sense of direction (in an unfamiliar place), males or females?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Research studies show that men have a better sense of direction. They find their ways using cardinal directions while women remember places with the help of objects. For e.g.: A boutique. It is found that different parts of the brain are at work when women and men try to find a missing object, such as a car. It is also found that men's strategy for navigation will help to reach the destination faster.

3 What would you do if you got lost in an unfamiliar city, without a map?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) I would relax. The brain starts working only after it is relieved of stress. Then I will look for some passerby and try to find the way for the nearest bus stop or railway station or a tea stall. If his guidance were not convincing, I would wait for some other person. I would also try to call someone from my regular mobile phone.

4 Do you think knowing how to read a map is an important skill?



(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Yes, it is. But with the advent of google maps, anybody can find a way. All that is required is to enter the from and to location and select the desired mode of transport. It will display all the possible routes. Almost everyone uses it nowadays.

5 Do you think there is a danger that we (or, people) are becoming overly-dependant on this technology?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) I don't see any harm in becoming dependent on this technology. After all, it is a simple tool to find the way. It makes our lives easier. Some people argue that it reads our location and privacy is being compromised, but these problems could be solved. This tool may be updated to address these concerns.

Vocabulary

Navigation (noun) - the process or activity of accurately ascertaining one's position and planning and following a route.

Eg: The gang got lost but Tom assisted them to find the way through his navigation skills.

Cardinal directions (noun) - North, east, south, and west are the four cardinal directions, often marked by the initials N, E, S, and W.

Eg: The child was learning cardinal directions.

passerby (noun) - a person who happens to be going past something, especially on foot.

Eg: I was waiting for a passerby to assist me in finding the way.

Google maps (noun) - is a web mapping service developed by Google.

Eg: Using google maps was child's play for him.

update (verb) - make (something) more modern or up to date.

Eg: The application needs to be updated.



83. Describe a time when you took a risk but were successful

You should say:

- what risk
- what you did
- why you took this risk
- and explain how you were successful

Sample Answer

I always wrap myself in cotton wool. I wouldn't want to disturb a process that is going on smoothly. But there was a moment when I was tempted by a friend to take a risk. It was a roller coaster ride, but I did manage to get down safe.

(what risk) (what you did) (why you took this risk) Then I was working for a software company. I was earning well, and life was good. I had no regrets. One Sunday afternoon, I received a call from my ex-colleague. He said he is going to start an enterprise and he wanted me to join. He had few other friends who were willing to join too. I was initially hesitant about the investment, but his enthusiasm allured me. Finally, I took a gamble by quitting my full-time job and paid a whopping 10 lakh rupees to the new enterprise.

(and explain how you were successful) From day one, I was worried about our turnover. He had decided to run the company with fresh graduates. It had been four months, and I did not see any progress. I was heartbroken and cursed myself for involving in this venture. After six months, I was in for a surprise. Our company had picked up steam. Soon we won many clients, and the quarterly profits were terrific. It was worth taking the risk.

When I quit my job, I knew I was skating on thin ice. Now, it has been five years since I partnered with the company. I'm one of the members of the advisory board and minting money. This would not have been possible without taking the risk. Sometimes life has better things in store for us. It is upto us to take or leave it.

Vocabulary

be wrapped up in cotton wool (idiom) - keep yourself (or someone else) very safe

Eg: I don't think Ram will join you. He always wraps himself in cotton wool.

regret (noun) - a feeling of sadness, repentance, or disappointment over an occurrence or something that one has done or failed to do.



Eg: The child had to drop out of school but she didn't seem to have any regrets.

allured (noun) - powerfully attract or charm; tempt.

Eg: He allured the chairman to bribe.

Take a gamble (idiom) - this is more risky, because you don't have much information about your choice of action

Eg: The friends decided to take a gamble and try the new tailoring shop.

Mint money (idiom) - To earn a very large amount of money, especially by doing something very successfully.

Eg: Ram was minting money by opening a new clinic.

Part 3

1 Do you think extreme sports are risky (= dangerous)?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Yes, they are. **(Give an example)** For example, Bungee jumping. It is a sport that requires a person to jump from a great height. The person will be connected to a large elastic cord though. Many of them find this to be very thrilling. But accidents that may occur if things don't work well. If the elastic cord becomes loose or when the length of the cord is not calculated properly, there are high chances of accidents.

2 What do your parents think about the risks you take?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) My parents gave me unlimited liberty to choose things the way I want. Though they would be concerned, they would not stop me from doing something. **(Give an example)** For example, I wanted to drive on the hillock. Though I've pretty good driving skills, I have no experience driving on a hillock. They gave me tips on finding out when is the best time to climb the hill and to find out when the hillock is free of buses and lorries. The information helped me to climb the hill with ease.

3 Do you think men and women have the same attitudes about risk-taking?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) It varies on a case by case basis rather than on gender. It also depends on the upbringing and peer group influence that the individual has had. But research studies indicate that men are willing to take risks if it has the probability of meeting the goals of the organisation while women are more concerned about the implications it would have on the people involved.

4 Do you think old and young people have the same attitudes about risk-taking?



(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Older people are more likely to be risk-averse because of their experience and wisdom. Young people are more risk-prone due to their enthusiasm and courage. Older people tend to take a calculated approach to everything while younger people don't mind skating on thin ice. Research shows that older people remain risk-averse since their cognitive functions are compromised due to ageing.

5 Do you think it's good when leaders take risks?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Risk-taking is a critical component of leadership. If the leader is conservative, then he cannot bring in a change at all. **(Give an example)** For example, if the leader is hesitant to speak about something which might have a high probability of improving the lifestyle of his followers, he will slowly be losing influence over his people. The leader is supposed to envision a bright future for his company and as well as his employees. So it is absolutely right when leaders take risks.

Vocabulary

Bungee jumping (noun) - the activity of leaping from a high place while secured by a long nylon-cased rubber band around the ankles.

Eg: One of his colleagues was mad about Bungee jumping.

cord (noun) - thin, flexible string or rope made from several twisted strands.

Eg: The doll was hanging with the help of a cord. .

liberty (noun) - the power or scope to act as one pleases.

Eg: The boss was not at liberty to grant him a leave.

skate on the thin ice (idiom) - do something that could cause you a lot of trouble

Eg: She was skating on the thin ice by going shopping and not practising for the dance show.

envision (idiom) - imagine as a future possibility; visualize.

Eg: He envisioned the jealousy of his competitors.



84. Describe a noisy place you went to

You should say:

- where it was
- why you went there
- the source of the noise
- and explain your reaction to the noise.

Sample Answer

(where it was) (why you went there) According to the Central Pollution Control Board, the safe noise levels are 55 DB at day and 45 DB at night. But I'm sure Mumbai is far beyond these limits. One classic example is the vegetable market near my place. I usually go there on weekends to buy groceries, and it is heavily crowded because most office-goers come there on weekends.

(the source of the noise) One such weekend, I managed to swim through the crowd and reach my vendor with whom I buy regularly. I took a basket and was looking for elephant yam. I asked him where it was. When he was about to search for it, one competitor called out the names of his vegetables loudly. Disturbed, my vendor also shouted at the top of his voice. The place was already bustling with activity. Both of them continued to scream, and many others followed suit.

(and explain your reaction to the noise.) I was petrified. The noises of the vendors, coupled with the crowd, made me dizzy. I was afraid that I would faint. I wanted some water and a place to sit down. I tried to move, but the dense crowd made it impossible. Finally, I tried to divert myself by looking at the vegetables and avoided paying attention to the noise. Slowly, I got accustomed to it. Finally, it came to an end. My vendor regained his senses and looked at me. But by then, I had managed to find the yam on my own, paid the price and came out of the market.

Vocabulary

Noise level (noun) - the level of noise produced by something, especially when this is harmful or annoying.

Eg: Almost all the major cities in the world exceed safe noise levels.

Market (noun) - is a place where two parties can gather to facilitate the exchange of goods and services.



Eg: Jim went to a flower market.

vendor (noun) - a person or company offering something for sale, especially a trader in the street.

Eg: The child was attracted by the sweet vendor.

petrified (adj) - so frightened that one is unable to move; terrified.

Eg: Sita was petrified on seeing the murder.

dizzy (dj) - having or involving a sensation of spinning around and losing one's balance.

Eg: Since the old man felt dizzy, he sat on the bench.

Part 3

1 Can you explain why some people like to be in noisy places?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Some people are accustomed to it, because it is part and parcel of their lives. **(Give an example)** For example, merchants in a market. Research shows that young people who frequently visit nightclubs are exposed to very high noise levels, but they learn to enjoy it due to several reasons. They get excited, think it is part of socialising, and use it as a means to forget their disappointments and sorrows.

2 Are young and old people different when they are in noisy situations?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Yes. Ageing in older people causes the auditory neurons to be more sensitive to normal sounds which is why older people tend to stay away from noisy situations. The same neurons in young people function properly and make them tolerant to certain levels of noise.

3 Which do you think is more dangerous - air pollution or noise pollution?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Both are equally dangerous. Continuous exposure to noise above 65db results in hearing loss, respiratory problems, headaches, stress, anxiety and sleeplessness. It also reduces a person's ability to concentrate. Air pollution can lead to diseases like cancer and premature deaths. Both types of pollution harm the environment in several ways.

4 What are the sources of noise in large cities?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) The primary source of noise in urban areas is the uncontrolled honking by drivers on the road. Construction industry comes second with the noise produced from its heavy machinery. Loud music from



bars, restaurants, pubs and television at homes follow it. Celebrations are times when noise levels exceed the safe limits. Neighbourhoods such as markets are also sources of noise.

5 Do you think noise in the workplace is good or bad?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Noise in the workplace has detrimental effects on the productivity of the employees. Continuous exposure to noise in the form of a machine or loud chatter can cause difficulty in concentration, thereby making the deliverable error-prone, which may increase the employee's stress levels. Continuous noise exposure may also cause headache and tiredness to the employees.

Vocabulary

Part and parcel (noun) - an essential or integral component

Eg: Tennis was part and parcel of her life.

Neurons (noun) - . Neurons are cells within the nervous system that transmit information to other nerve cells, muscle, or gland cells.

Eg: The doctor informed him that his neurons were damaged.

honking (verb) - Cause to honk. Honk ->If you honk the horn of a vehicle or if the horn honks, you make the horn produce a short loud sound.

Eg: The police arrested him for honking unnecessarily.

Detrimental (adj) - tending to cause harm.

Eg: The manager's decision was detrimental to the employees.

deliverable (noun) - a thing able to be provided, especially as a product of a development process.

Eg: Tom's deliverables were erroneous.



85. Describe a film that made you think a lot

You should say:

- What it was
- When you saw it
- What it was about
- and explain why it made you think a lot

Sample Answer

(What it was) I usually forget movies after watching them. But I've seen some of my friends spending hours discussing the plot and cast after watching films. I used to wonder why they do so. But after watching the 2014 movie "Interstellar", I could understand their excitement.

(When you saw it) I watched the movie in a theatre along with my friends, a few months after it hit the screens. It is a science fiction movie directed by Christopher Nolan. The film features Matthew McConaughey as Joseph Cooper, an ex-NASA pilot, Anne Jacqueline Hathaway as Amelia Brand, a NASA scientist, Jessica Chastain as Murphy Cooper and Michael Caine as Professor Brand.

(What it was about) The film is set 50 years ahead of time. Human survival is threatened and there are certain occurrences that confirm it. Patterns of dust gather in Murphy's bedroom which she thinks are activities of some ghosts. On examining them, Cooper thinks that they might be due to variations in gravity and reports it to his former colleague cum Boss, Mr. Brand. Professor Brand is exploring possibilities of a new home elsewhere. He also has some plans to transport people through a wormhole. Brand plans to launch the spacecraft called Endurance in which former NASA pilot Cooper and a crew of scientists will travel through the wormhole and into the galaxy to find habitable planets.

(and explain why it made you think a lot) The film made me think if we are actually in a threat of survival. I was amazed at the fact that nature could give us signs that the planet is uninhabitable. I wondered whether scientists have already spotted some signs and are searching for a new home. I was also thinking of what to pack and what to leave if they demand all of us to get ready for a space flight to some other planet.

Vocabulary

plot (noun) - the main events of a play, novel, film, or similar work, devised and presented by the writer as an interrelated sequence.



Eg: The plot involves a widowed lady falling in love again.

Cast (noun) - is the group of actors who make up a film or stage play.

Eg: The cast of the movie are very brave as they performed certain stunts on their own.

Science fiction (noun) - fiction based on imagined future scientific or technological advances and major social or environmental changes, frequently portraying space or time travel and life on other planets.

Eg: His science fiction novel went gold in sales.

Crew (noun) - a group of people who work closely together.

Eg: The camera crew was rewarded by the director for their exemplary work.

spacecraft (noun) - a vehicle used for travelling in space.

Eg: Tom was excited at the prospect of travelling in a spacecraft.

Part 3

1 What kinds of films are popular in your country?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) People appreciate almost everything. Most youngsters are prone to hero-worship. So they prefer watching movies in which heroism is dominating. They also watch comedies, thrillers, and action movies. Romantic comedies usually do well in the theatres. Movies with a good plot are also liked by the people. Science fiction and horror films are also popular.

2 What do you think makes a good film?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) A good film needs to be entertaining. After all, people watch movies to forget their worries and laugh heartily. So those which have comedy, romance and action in the right proportion can be considered as good movies. Besides, a good storyline and performance of the artists can boost a movie. Good movies cast an impression in the minds of the people long after it is watched.

3 Would you say a country's film industry is important for that country?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Undoubtedly, yes. Film industry helps in creating awareness among the general public on all important issues of the country. Film actors and actresses convey opinions on social issues which politicians would not dare to. Movies about our past are a treasure for the future generation—for example, the film on Mahatma Gandhi. The film industry also organises performances for good causes which are to be welcomed.

4 Why are special effects used in some movies?



(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) It is used for entertaining the audience in a better way. Also, it is used to portray the superhuman qualities of the character involved. These activities may be menacing to the actor's life if performed in reality. **(Give an example)** For example, we fondly remember the movie Jurassic park because of the dinosaurs which are computer-generated imageries. A fake rain in a song may make it more appealing to the masses.

Vocabulary

Hero worship (noun) - excessive admiration for someone.

Eg: Tom condemned the hero worship of actors

Romantic comedy (noun) - a film or play that deals with love in a light, humorous way

Eg: Film X is a romantic comedy.

entertaining (adj) - providing amusement or enjoyment.

Eg: Sita was entertaining her kid.

Menacing (verb) - suggesting the presence of danger; threatening.

Eg: He performed menacing stunts.

dinosaur (noun) - a fossil reptile of the Mesozoic era, in many species reaching an enormous size.

Eg: There seemed to be herbivores dinosaurs too.



86. Describe an enjoyable time when you spent time with a lot of people

You should say:

- what occasion it was
- who you were with
- what you did
- and explain why it was an enjoyable time

Sample Answer

(what occasion it was) A few months ago, our family decided to go on a picnic to the mountains nearby. It included members from our extended family as well. My cousins were very lively and guaranteed entertainment wherever they were. My Dad had been slogging in the office lately and wanted this picnic to rejuvenate himself.

(who you were with) (what you did) On a chilly Saturday morning, we set out from our place to the mountains. We hired two big cars to accommodate the entire family. We pushed the elders in one car and ensured that all the young people were in the other one. We travelled, enjoying the scenic mountains and lakes. We also played games and sang some songs on the way. We reached our destination in about three hours. We went to our rooms in the resort, refreshed ourselves and went out for sightseeing. The mountain had thorny bushes, and much of the place seemed uninhabited. Few local people were selling tea and spices.

(and explain why it was an enjoyable time) Soon it was lunchtime. We ordered many tasty dishes and played pranks on each other. As I was about to put the fried baby corn in my mouth, one of them cracked a joke, and I could not help but laugh. The corn fell into the plate. I pleaded with him to allow me to eat it. When it was night time, the resort arranged for a bonfire. We sang and danced merrily around it while one of my cousins played the guitar. It was a lovely and unforgettable day in my life. This trip strengthened the bond between my cousins and me.

Vocabulary

Extended family (noun) - a family which extends beyond the nuclear family to include grandparents and other relatives.

Eg: His boss treated him as a member of an extended family.

lively (noun) - full of life and energy; active and outgoing.



Eg: Jane is a lively person.

Set out (phrasal verb) - begin a journey.

Eg: We set out on foot.

pranks (noun) - a practical joke or mischievous act..

Eg: The headmaster was tired of the children's pranks.

bonfire (noun) - a large open-air fire used for burning rubbish or as part of a celebration.

Eg: The children went around the bonfire.

Part 3

1 What are some examples of group events that people go to?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Sports events, cultural events and corporate events are examples of group events that people take part in. It need not always be a soccer world cup. It can even be a local tennis match between boys of area A and area B sponsored by a local club. Cultural events include family celebrations and stage performances by artists. Corporate events include seminars, trade shows and team building activities.

2 Do you think people today gather together (in rather big groups) more often than before?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) To a certain extent, it is true. There are communal events, parties and celebrations like never before. This is especially true in the case of people living in a foreign country. Their "need to belong" is more. They feel safe and secure being part of a group. Members of a group help in solving each other's problems, exchanging information and having fun. Also, they undertake adventurous tours as a group because going alone is boring and risky at times.

Vocabulary

soccer (noun) - a form of football played by two teams of eleven players with a round ball which may not be handled during play except by the goalkeepers.

Eg: On seeing her brother play soccer, she would get interested in it.

seminar (noun) - a conference or other meeting for discussion or training.

Eg: "Please attend the seminar on AI without fail"



Team building (noun) - the action or process of causing a group of people to work together effectively as a team, especially by means of activities and events designed to increase motivation and promote cooperation.

Eg: Companies have realised the importance of team building activities.

Like never before (noun) - in a way that has never been possible before:

Eg: The store offered discounts like never before

Need to belong (theory) - The need to belong refers to the idea that humans have a fundamental motivation to be accepted into relationships with others and to be a part of social groups.

Eg: Psychological studies reveal that everyone has a need to belong.





87. Describe a place (other than your home) where you sometimes go to relax

You should say:

- where it is
- what you do there
- how often you go there
- and explain why it is a relaxing place

Sample Answer

(where it is) There's no place like home in the world, but the mind needs a change for refreshing and rejuvenating itself. There's one such place which I often go to relax. It is a meditation hall near my house. All I need to do is to step out, walk straight, and take a left. At the dead-end of the road is the meditation hall.

(what you do there) (how often you go there) It is run by a charity organisation. They conduct meditation and yoga classes in the morning, and in the evenings, it is open to the public for practising meditation. I go there whenever I get time, usually around 5:00 PM.

(and explain why it is a relaxing place) The place is very serene. The centre of the room will have beautiful flowers arranged in some pattern. All around the hall, we will have tall wooden structures containing perfumed potpourris, incense cones and sticks. Their sweet scent will calm the agitated mind and will aid in the relaxation process. Also, there will be some instrumental music being played in a low volume. It is believed that listening to instrumental music will help in improving concentration. There will be separate mats for each person to sit on. The dim yellow lights complement the peace and tranquillity of the place. When it turns dark, they light incense candles. I've not been to any formal classes, but on going there, sitting on the mat and closing my eyes, I would be able to meditate for more than an hour. I come back home, happy and spirited.

Vocabulary

There's no place like home (idiom) - home is a special place

Eg: It was a great excursion. But there's no place like home.

Meditation (noun) - the action or practice of meditating.

Eg: Meditation helps in reducing stress.



dead-end (noun) - also known as a cul-de-sac; no through road or no exit road, is a street with only one inlet or outlet.

Eg: " Turn right and go to the dead end."

incense (adj) - a gum, spice, or other substance that is burned for the sweet smell it produces.

Eg: The mild incense of lemon grass helped her concentrate.

Spirited (adj) - full of energy, enthusiasm, and determination.

Eg: Sita was a spirited activist.

Part 3

1 In your country, what do students do to relax?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Their first relaxation technique is breathing the fresh air. Some students go to meditation and yoga classes while others relax by cycling around their house or gardening. Most of them listen to music, watch some hilarious movies on the television and connect with their friends over the phone. Some love to eat their favourite snack as well.

2 Do you think people nowadays have more ways to relax than in the past?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Definitely, yes. There are many facilities that were not available in the past. Nowadays, people can listen to the chirping of birds and the sound of the oceans through their smartphones. Technology has enabled new and novel ways of relaxation- for example, online yoga classes. One can listen to the music of his/her choice. They can phone a friend and pour their heart out.

3 Would you say looking at natural scenery is more relaxing than engaging in indoor activities?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Undoubtedly, yes. Nature is the best healer. Watching the birds perch on a tree and observing the leaves swaying in the breeze calms the mind much better than any indoor game. There is nothing as relaxing as being in the fresh open air for some time. Natural sunlight has been proven to be an excellent depression reliever and mood enhancer.

4 Is there any natural scenery near your home that makes you relaxed (= that relaxes you)?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) I live in a concrete jungle. But I do take walks occasionally. I go to the nearest market road enjoying the evening



sunlight. The pinkish glowing sun makes me happier and relieves stress. There is a small garden in my community where I spend some time. It has some flowers like hibiscus, rose and bougainvillea. Looking at them for some time is reinvigorating. Also, looking at the ray of light entering through the window during sunrise and sunset is amazingly relaxing to the mind.

5 Do employers in your country ever organize activities to help their employees relax?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Yes, they do. They have ping pong tables and dart boards which employees can use and organise fun activities on Fridays. Also, they organise marathons and nature walks. Some companies encourage their employees to take a compulsory vacation for a certain period of time while others allow employees to bring their pets to the office. Team outings are also organised.

Vocabulary

hilarious (adj) - extremely amusing.

Eg: The TV show was hilarious.

chirping (noun) - (of a small bird or an insect) make a short, sharp, high-pitched sound.

Eg: The sparrow was chirping for sometime.

Pour your heart out (idiom) - to tell someone your secret feelings and things that worry you, usually because you feel a strong need to talk about them:

Eg: Tom felt relieved after pouring his heart out to Jim.

Concrete jungle (noun) - a city or urban area which has a high density of large, unattractive, modern buildings and is perceived as an unpleasant living environment.

Eg: They are planning to convert the village into a concrete jungle.

Ping pong table (adj) - a table used for playing table tennis

Eg: There was a ping pong table just beside his cabin.



88. Describe a time when you were surprised to meet someone you know, such as a friend

You should say:

- where it was
- what you were doing at the time (or, why you went there)
- who you met
- and explain why you were surprised

Sample Answer

A few months ago, on a lazy Sunday afternoon, I got bored and wanted to have some fun. So I decided to go shopping at a mall near my house. It was evening by the time I got ready. The mall was about a half-an-hour walk from my house. Since it was drizzling, I took an umbrella and started for the mall.

(where it was) (what you were doing at the time (or, why you went there)) (who you met)

It should have been 10 minutes approximately. I suddenly felt someone closing my eyes from behind, and I was not able to move forward. I thought someone was attacking me. Slowly, a voice whispered into my ear, "Guess who I am." The voice sounded familiar. It was my friend Darlene. Slowly, she removed her hand. We had a hearty laugh.

(and explain why you were surprised) She had been to Australia to complete her Master's. It seems she was awaiting her results and had come to India for a short while. Though we were connected on facebook, she never hinted that she was coming. She had come to my house, seen me locking the door, and had followed me. She did not know how long I would be walking. So she decided to play this trick. I was as happy as Larry. I took her to the mall, and we had a whale of a time there. We finished our dinner in a Chinese food outlet in the mall. Then she booked a cab to her house, and I walked back home. It was the sweetest surprise I had ever had.

Vocabulary

mall (adj) - a large enclosed shopping area from which traffic is excluded.

Eg: A lot of people come to the mall on weekends.

drizzling (verb) - rain lightly.

Eg: It was drizzling when Tom woke up.



Whisper (verb) - speak very softly using one's breath rather than one's throat, especially for the sake of secrecy.

Eg: Jessie pulled Kate aside and whispered in her ear.

As happy as larry (idiom) - Very happy.

Eg: The kid was as happy as larry on seeing the butterflies

Whale of a time (idiom) - a great time

Eg: Jim had a whale of a time in the boathouse.

Part 3

1 What are some other places where a person is likely to meet a friend by chance?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) We may meet our friends in busy shopping areas. **(Give an example)** For example, in the malls and the street markets. Holiday spots like resorts are also places where people meet each other accidentally. We may also meet people when we are travelling by train or flight. Sometimes we may see our friends when we are busily drawing money from the banks or ATMs or in places of worship such as temples, churches or mosques.

2 Why is it best for people to contact each other in advance when they want to meet with a friend (or friends)?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) It would be easy for the person to prepone/postpone or cancel any appointment that he/she had planned for the day. Also, when we inform them of the arrival in advance, they may either wait for us or ask us to come on another day and we would be avoiding unnecessary disappointments.

3 Can you explain why people sometimes show up late for appointments (or, pre-arranged meetings)?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) It might probably mean that they don't want to be on time for the party. They might want others to wait for them, rather than being early waiting for everyone else. It is an indirect way of showing their importance. But it is not a diplomatic idea and is an indication of arrogance.

4 How do you prefer to contact friends, by a phone call or by sending a text message?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) I would prefer to contact friends over the phone. The reason for preferring phones is that I might have to type a very long message for what I want to speak for only five minutes. Also, I feel the voice can convey our emotions better than text.

5



5. In what kind of situation do you think a person can be forgiven for being late for a meeting?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) A person may be excused in case of emergencies in the family such as death or sudden illness of a family member requiring hospital admission. A person may also be pardoned if he/she had met with an accident on the road or was stuck in an unusual traffic jam.

Vocabulary

ATM (adj) - An ATM, which stands for automated teller machine, is a specialized computer that makes it convenient to manage a bank account holder's funds.

Eg: He inserted his debit card into the ATM and waited for cash.

Place of worship (noun) - is a specially designed structure or consecrated space where individuals or a group of people such as a congregation come to perform acts of devotion, veneration, or religious study.

Eg: Gurudwara is the place of worship of the sikhs.

disappointment (noun) - sadness or displeasure caused by the non-fulfilment of one's hopes or expectations.

Eg: Asha tried to hide her disappointment.

convey (verb) - to impart or communicate by statement, suggestion, gesture, or appearance

Eg: She conveyed her thoughts through a letter.

emergency (noun) - a serious, unexpected, and often dangerous situation requiring immediate action.

Eg: He rushed home because he received an emergency call.



89. Describe a time when you made a mistake and you learnt from it

You should say:

- where it was
- what you were doing
- what mistake you made
- and explain what you learned from making this mistake.

Sample Answer

To err is human. But it is interesting to note that some unintentional mistakes turn out to be right. One such mistake I made was adding salt to a dish, which turned out to be a blessing.

(where it was) A few years ago, my cousin arranged a get together for our families and close friends. We reached his place well in advance. I moved about the house, and the aroma of the spices from the kitchen pulled me towards it. My aunt was preparing some dishes. I helped her by adding salt and pepper to them. My aunt told me about the importance of salt in a dish. Then she started preparing some sweets.

(what you were doing) (what mistake you made) She boiled milk in a huge container and added a lot of cashews, pistachios, and almonds. She asked me to fetch her a bowl of jaggery, which I did immediately. Suddenly, the telephone started ringing. It rang for a long time and then stopped. My aunt asked me to check if there was anyone around. On peeping through the window in the dining room, I found no one in the living room and informed the same to my aunt. She became worried about the telephone call. She asked me to oversee the sweet, which was midway in preparation, and went out. The dish was reaching completion. Suddenly I recalled our conversation about the importance of salt. So I took the salt container, sprinkled some salt on it, and turned the stove off.

(and explain what you learned from making this mistake) When my aunt came back, she inquired about the salt container in my hand. She was alarmed on hearing that I added salt to the dish. Panic-stricken, she tasted a spoonful of it and sighed deeply. Then she told me that adding a pinch of salt would enhance the taste of any dessert and that too much salt would spoil it. I had made a mistake, but I learnt a valuable life lesson.

Vocabulary

Err (**verb**) - be mistaken or incorrect; make a mistake.



Eg: She erred in the transaction book which caused a lot of confusion.

Get together (phrasal verb) - (of people) gather or assemble socially or to cooperate.

Eg: The association arranged a get together for the winners

peep (verb) - look quickly and furtively at something, especially through a narrow opening.

Eg: The thief peeped through the keyhole.

Oversee (verb) - supervise (a person or their work), especially in an official capacity.

Eg: The maid was asked to oversee the kids

midway (adverb) - in or towards the middle of something.

Eg: The theatre was midway through the road.

Part 3

1 What kinds of mistakes do children make at school?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Children make mistakes such as being inattentive and chatting with a boy or girl sitting next to them. They may forget to bring their stationery and borrow things from others. Some children play pranks on their teachers while others forget to do their homework. Some children don't speak up when asked for an explanation which might lead to unnecessary trouble.

2 Do you think these mistakes will disappear as they grow older, or will they continue throughout life, as habits?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) These mistakes will disappear over time. As the child grows, the maturity level increases, and they realise it is important to be attentive in class. They also become responsible for their conduct. So they stop making mischief in the class. Most of them finish their homework on time and try to be punctual to classes. They also become courageous and lose their inhibitions. So they speak up when they have to.

3 What should parents do in response to these problems?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) When their child is declared as inattentive, parents must observe the child closely and find out the reasons behind lack of interest in class. When parents are informed of their child's mischief, they must talk to their child and make him/her realise the importance of respecting their teachers. They must encourage their child to be punctual and assist them in finishing the homework on time.

4 Do you think employees should be penalized for their mistakes at work?



(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) It depends on the severity of the mistake. If it is consciously done with the intent of harming the company such as exchanging confidential information with other companies, then strict action must be taken against them. If they are mistakes such as submitting a substandard deliverable or failing to meet a deadline, warnings will do.

5 Do you think people who use technical devices (e.g., calculators) make mistakes less often than those who do things by hand?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) In my opinion, this is true to some extent. Using technical devices such as calculators will help in reducing mistakes. But a person needs to know the operation of the technical device. Once a person is familiar with it, he/she can work efficiently. Manual calculations are prone to errors. There are no such instances in technical devices.

Vocabulary

Inattentive (adj) - not paying attention to something.

Eg: Disturbed by the music, the inattentive maid poured water all over the house.

stationery (noun) - writing and other office materials.

Eg: There is a stationery shop just opposite my house.

Over time (adverb phrase) - that describes something which happens gradually.

Eg: Over time, the sea water eroded the rocks and it will be water all over.

intent (noun) - intention or purpose.

Eg: The intent of the meeting was to discuss AI and ML.

confidential (adj) - intended to be kept secret.

Eg: The boss told him that the information was confidential.



90. Describe an elderly person who you find interesting to be with

You should say:

- who this person is
- how you know them (= him/her)
- what this person did when he/she was young
- and explain why you find it interesting to be with the person.

Sample Answer

(who this person is) (how you know them (= him/her)) I'm very fond of my maternal grandmother. As a kid, I spent the most time with her. So she is like a friend to me. She would read my mind through the face. We have many things in common. So we enjoy each other's company.

(what this person did when he/she was young) My grandmother had finished her schooling in a boarding school. So she was very disciplined. She had graduated from a famous university with a master's degree in physics and had worked with the government for nearly 25 years. Infact, we have a memento in our showcase, which was given to her on her retirement. Though she had been working, she never compromised on her duties as a wife or a mother. She took care of me when my mom went to the office.

(and explain why you find it interesting to be with the person) My grandmother is a humorous person. She used to crack jokes spontaneously and make me laugh my heart out. She would also narrate funny stories from her childhood. Infact, she taught me gardening and sewing. Her culinary skills are exceptional. She taught me to bake a cake. She is a multi-talented personality and will offer valuable advice on any problem. Once I was struggling with an arrogant boss at work. She taught me how to deal with such people, diplomatically. I followed her advice and later befriended the boss. I consider myself very gifted to have such a wonderful woman with me.

Vocabulary

maternal (adj) - related through the mother's side of the family.

Eg: Her maternal aunt invited her for dinner.

Read someone's mind (phrase) - discern what someone is thinking.

Eg: She seemed to have read my mind.



memento (adverb phrase) - an object kept as a reminder of a person or event.

Eg: She was given a memento by the local club.

multi-talented (adj) - having many skills or talents.

Eg: John was multi-talented. He stood first in his classes and as well in tennis and music.

diplomatically (adverb) - in a sensitive and tactful way.

Eg: "Deal with this customer diplomatically".

Part 3

1 What kinds of things do you think old people can learn from teenagers?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Using a smartphone is child's play to the younger generation, especially kids. Older people should learn inquisitiveness from young people. Older people should also appreciate the broadmindedness of the young. At work, most older people remain conservative and lack confidence. **(Give an example)** For example, even if they have completed 90%, they will declare only 70% complete. But young people are confident and will declare 90% complete. So they should learn this attitude from the younger generation.

2 What can children learn from their grandparents?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) This duo seems to get along well. Grandparents with their magnanimous attitude attract the kids. Children can learn virtues like patience, love and generosity from their grandparents. When going for a walk with their grandparents, kids learn to support older people when they are about to fall, and in turn learn how to care for others. Most grandparents narrate stories to their grandchildren. Such children learn to visualise the stories that help them in many ways in the later stages of their life.

3 Do you think elderly people are happy being with their families?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) It varies on a case by case basis. In happy homes, where they are respected and loved, older people would love to spend time with their families. On the contrary, if they are considered as a burden, they will tend to isolate themselves. So their choice of remaining close to or being estranged from their families depends on how they are treated.

4 Why do you think young people who have jobs to do still need to communicate with (or, spend time with) the elderly people in their family?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Young people should appreciate the wisdom and experience of the elders in the house. The older generation can



be of help in solving problems at the workplace. **(Give an example)** For example, a retired banker may advise his grandchildren on making investments, solving conflicts with co-workers etc. They may give valuable tips for leading a successful life. So it is absolutely essential for the young people to spend some time with the elders in the family.

Vocabulary

inquisitiveness (adj) - given to inquiry, research, or asking questions; eager for knowledge; intellectually curious

Eg: The teachers appreciated his inquisitiveness.

Duo (noun) - a pair of people or things, especially in music or entertainment.

Eg: The father-son duo were spotted at the beach.

magnanimous (phrase) - generous or forgiving, especially towards a rival or less powerful person.

Eg: She liked her elder brother because he was magnanimous.

estranged (adj) - (of a person) no longer close or affectionate to someone; alienated.

Eg: Tom felt estranged from his sister.

wisdom (noun) - the quality of having experience, knowledge, and good judgement; the quality of being wise.

Eg: The saint's words of wisdom comforted him.



91. Describe a person you are happy to know

You should say:

- who this person is
- how long have you known this person
- what you usually do with this person
- and explain why you are happy to know this person

Sample Answer

A few months ago, my mom fell down the stairs and hurt her hand. We rushed to the hospital and found that it was a minor fracture. So she was advised a plaster cast for immobilization and some painkillers.

(who this person is) (how long have you known this person) (what you usually do with this person) Later when the cast was placed, a nurse came to instruct the do's and don'ts. She had a pleasant countenance and spoke in a low firm voice. Her instructions were very clear. My mother was writhing in pain, but she comforted my mother with her sweet words. She was continually asking my mother if she had any discomfort with the cast. I could sense that my mom felt better when she was around. I requested her to visit us often to which she readily agreed. Whenever she came into our room, she would greet us with a broad smile and inquire if my mom had taken the pills. My mom would have asked her the same doubt a hundred times, but she replied patiently every time.

(and explain why you are happy to know this person) The fracture healed slowly and whenever we visited the hospital, I would look for the nurse. She would sit beside my mom and examine her hand. She felt very happy that my mother was getting better. After the fracture healed completely, I gave her a bouquet of roses and a card penning a thank you note. She was pleased to receive it. Infact, my mom and I took a photo with her and I'm glad that I met such a dutiful nurse.

Vocabulary

immobilization (noun) - to make immobile: such as. a : to reduce or eliminate motion of (the body or a part) by mechanical means or by strict bed rest

Eg: Doctor was examining the method of immobilisation for her fracture.

Painkillers (noun) -a drug or a medicine for relieving pain.

Eg: "Don't get addicted to painkillers"



countenance (noun) - a person's face or facial expression.

Eg: Her countenance conveyed that she was worried about something

penning (verb) - write or compose.

Eg: Ravi penned a thought provoking letter for his sister.

dutiful (adj) - conscientiously or obediently fulfilling one's duty.

Eg: John was a doting and dutiful father.

Part 3

1 What do you think are some of the differences between adults' happiness and children's happiness?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Children are happy all the time and celebrate every moment of their life. On the contrary, adults are in search of happiness. Adults' happiness is determined by their achievements. They become happy only when they are successful in work and relationships. Also, they lack contentment which is why they cannot be happy all the time.

2 Would you prefer to do a job with a low salary but one that brings you lots of happiness, or a boring job but with a high salary?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) It varies depending on the individual. If money makes a person happy, he/she will tolerate a boring job because of the pay. If it is passion that makes a person happy, he/she will be happy to take up any job that interests them. In my opinion, I would choose job satisfaction over a high salary. It isn't very meaningful to accumulate wealth by working like a robot.

3 Can you suggest how a boss could make his or her employees happy (as happy as possible) at work?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Employees want recognition for their work and improvement in their lifestyle. A good boss should ensure both. Apart from this, he should also check that the work-life balance of employees is not disrupted. Further, he should make the employees feel they are progressing. Also, he must be impartial and radiate positivity. Such employees would feel happy and become more productive.

Vocabulary

contentment (noun) - a state of happiness and satisfaction.

Eg: Sita found contentment in her job as a painter.



tolerate (verb) - allow the existence, occurrence, or practice of (something that one dislikes or disagrees with) without interference.

Eg: " You should learn to tolerate criticism"

accumulate (verb) - gather together or acquire an increasing number or quantity of.

Eg: Sita never cleaned her vehicle and grease accumulated on it.

recognition (noun) - identification of someone or something or person from previous encounters or knowledge.

Eg: Artists crave for recognition.

impartial (adj) - treating all rivals or disputants equally.

Eg: The teacher was impartial.





92. Describe an occasion when you wasted your time

You should say:

- what you did
- how much time you spent doing it
- why you did it
- and explain why you think it was a waste of time

Sample Answer

Everyone knows that time flies. We've to be wise enough to make use of it in the right manner. Though I'm a time-conscious person, there did occur a moment in my life when I wasted time.

A few months ago, I purchased a new vacuum cleaner. I had ordered it online, and the shipment was about to be delivered on Saturday. To my ill luck, I had some pending task to be completed which I thought I would do on Saturday after the delivery was made. Infact, I had promised my manager that the target would be met on Saturday.

(what you did) (how much time you spent doing it) (why you did it) On Saturday, the vacuum cleaner arrived. I had asked for a demonstration, as well. But when I phoned the store about it, they said the person in charge had gone out on priority work and would come only by evening. I could not control my enthusiasm, so I searched for information on the internet and youtube. I found some videos on youtube about how to unpack and assemble, but they were for a different product code. I searched vigorously for a demonstration of my product, but in vain.

When I looked at the clock, it was 2:00 PM. I decided to try my hands on it. I tried to fit the equipment on my own and tried very hard to suck the dust from my carpet. It never worked. Frustrated, I looked at the clock. It was 4:30 PM. I recalled the promise made to my boss.

(and explain why you think it was a waste of time) The doorbell rang, and it was the demonstration personnel. I threw the vacuum cleaner on the floor and cursed myself for wasting my time. Had I waited for him to come, I could have completed my deliverable on time.

Vocabulary

Time flies (idiom) - Time passes extremely quickly



Eg: "Time flies. It seemed that we just started sowing seeds. But now the plants are ready for harvest."

conscious (adj) - having knowledge of something.

Eg: She is very beauty conscious.

Vacuum cleaner (noun) - an electrical apparatus that by means of suction collects dust and small particles from floors and other surfaces.

Eg: She sucked the dust from her carpet with the help of a vacuum cleaner.

demonstration (noun) - a practical exhibition and explanation of how something works or is performed.

Eg: She was searching for a demonstration on the latest model refrigerators.

recall (verb) - bring (a fact, event, or situation) back into one's mind; remember.

Eg: The policeman was asking the witness to recall what happened at the time of murder.

Part 3

1 What are some typical examples of how people in your country waste time?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) People are addicted to Facebook, whatsapp and television. They post photos on instagram and wait for likes and followers. Some people waste time by gossiping. Others while away time by imagining and daydreaming. Children waste time by playing computer games, and older people waste time worrying about something or sleeping.

2 How do you think people can save time?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Firstly, people need to think ahead. **(Give an example)** For example, an office goer needs to plan his tasks for the entire week on Monday itself. Secondly, they should prioritize the activities. Thirdly, they should calculate the time taken for each task. This will enable them to plan better for the next week. People should also be careful not to spend too much time on social media.

3 Do you think pondering on something (= thinking deeply about something) is a waste of time?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) It depends on what the person is thinking about. If it is productive and positive, such as relating to his/her plans for a career or family, it is worth spending time thinking about it. If it is entirely negative such as thinking about a friend who deserted him/her or merely thinking about events in the past, then it is a criminal waste of time.



Vocabulary

Gossiping (verb) - engage in gossip. Gossip -> casual or unconstrained conversation or reports about other people, typically involving details that are not confirmed as being true.

Eg: The employees were gossiping about their boss

Daydreaming (verb) - indulge in a daydream. Day dream-> a series of pleasant thoughts that distract one's attention from the present.

Eg: Sita was found daydreaming in the class.

Prioritize (verb) - determine the order for dealing with (a series of items or tasks) according to their relative importance.

Eg: The manager wanted Tom to prioritize his activities.

Productive (adj) - producing or able to produce large amounts of goods, crops, or other commodities.

Eg: Jim was dismissed for not being productive at work.

deserted him to (idiom) - to leave someone for someone else; to leave something or some place for some other thing or place.

Eg: Tim deserted Tina for Rita.



